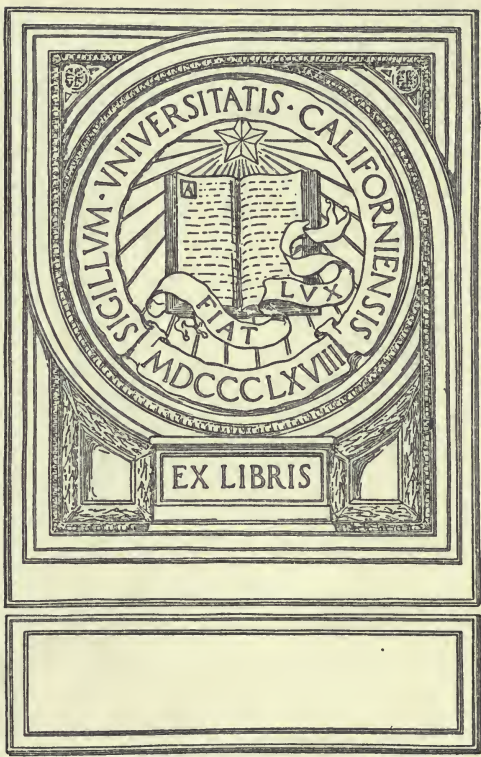


C-NRFP



B 311 354

# ITALIAN GRAMMAR FILES



EX LIBRIS





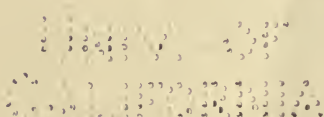


# AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

BY

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON  
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

PC1111  
PA

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY  
RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

225.5



**The Athenæum Press**  
GINN AND COMPANY • PROPRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

## PREFACE

What is new in this work is chiefly the division and arrangement of topics, though the Introduction assembles material upon pronunciation and versification not hitherto brought together in English, and there is some novelty in subject matter in the exercises for translation. The plan of the book has the merit of having grown directly out of the needs of the classroom. The arrangement is such, it is hoped, as will make the book equally serviceable for the classroom and for private study, and will give it certain of the advantages of both "first book" and reference grammar.

The beginning has been deliberately made very easy. Even the definite article, with which most Italian grammars naturally begin, has been deferred in favor of the indefinite, which, as it lacks a plural, has fewer forms itself and does not immediately require the plural of nouns. This leaves the attention free to center upon the single new principle of the "s impure." The definite article with its more complicated forms is not introduced until the fourth lesson, and the main body of rules governing its syntax not until the twenty-second. The plural of nouns is treated in its simpler aspects in the third lesson, and extensively in the thirtieth.

This method of breaking up the more difficult subjects and presenting them at first piecemeal, reserving more thorough-going treatment for a later chapter, has been followed throughout. The subjunctive, for example, is introduced one rule at a time, each illustrated by a sentence or two in all subsequent exercises, so that its use in a few standard cases at least will become automatic, and the student will not fall into the way of regarding it as an unusual, unnatural mood, reserved for special occasions. The subject is

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

treated as a whole in Lesson XXVIII. Many of the idiomatic uses of *da*, likewise, are introduced early, although the general treatment of prepositions, including a great number of idioms constructed by means of them, is one of the last in the book. The verbs *essere* and *avere*, except for the indispensable present indicative, are postponed until the regular verbs have been completely learned. The subject of conjunctive pronouns, sometimes presented in a single lesson, is here divided among four, not consecutive, while sentences in the intervening and subsequent exercises continue practice upon them.

In consequence of this method of introducing a working knowledge of many difficult principles early, while leaving their more complicated treatment for later chapters, the book can be divided rather easily, if desired, into first and second year work. Twenty-seven lessons, let us say, would introduce more or less fully all the more important principles, and cover completely the subject of conjunctive pronouns. These lessons, with the irregular verbs of the remaining lessons, might constitute the first year's work, leaving twelve lessons of more complicated questions of syntax for the second year.

It has not always seemed desirable to be entirely consistent in this breaking up of the more difficult subjects; logical arrangement has sometimes seemed to require, as in the case of the person in address, a complete treatment at first. Where this has been the case, the paragraphs dealing with the more subtle points are marked with a star, and may be assigned merely to be read over, or omitted altogether, as the exercises do not illustrate them. In any case the index makes scattered material readily available.

As to the exercises, the older custom has been observed of making them accompany the lessons they illustrate, in the belief that this arrangement keeps the student better in mind of all the work he has done and facilitates review. In designing the work which illustrates the new principles as they are introduced, the desirability of continuing practice on principles already acquired has been kept

## PREFACE

steadily in mind. If the instructor prefers fewer sentences for translation, the assignment may be limited to those which illustrate the current lesson. Where the vocabulary seems long, there will usually be found a large proportion of those words whose meaning can be guessed at a glance, and far more of them occur in the paragraphs of Italian reading matter than in the sentences for translation. The paragraphs of Italian on which the exercises for translation are based are in small part original, in large part borrowed or adapted from Italian school readers designed for the lower grades. So they furnish practice from the first in reading connected prose, offer a good practical vocabulary, and deal attractively with Italian home and school life, and the history of modern Italy. Thanks are due to Messrs. Bemporad e Figlio for permission to use selections from the readers *Il mondo nuovo* by Renato Fucini and two *Libri di lettura* by Neretti and Gironi, and to the Società Laziale Editrice of Rome for permission to make similar use of paragraphs from *La terza Italia* in Lessons XXVIII and XXIX. These last, it may to-day be necessary to add, were not selected with any idea of influencing American sentiment, but to show what topics were agitating the Italian mind in the last days before the Great War broke out.

The series of dialogues in the latter part of the book offers a little practice in familiar idiom; they are especially intended for travelers, as they include a good many words useful in the shops and hotels, on the railway, and so on. They are composed in a Tuscan too colloquial to form the basis of exercises, and may be entirely omitted at the pleasure of the instructor.

The third person as the person of address in ordinary intercourse, being the only one for which most travelers have occasion, is introduced very early, before the habit of the true second person is acquired. Accordingly, in the exercises it is the latter which is made to seem the unusual form.

Questions of pronunciation, accent, orthography, and the like are treated in the Introduction, along with an outline of the Italian

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

system of versification and some hints as to the reading of Italian poetry. As the pronunciation cannot be perfectly represented for English readers by any system of equivalent spellings, the instructor will find it necessary to supplement *viva voce* what is said here.

Of the many works that have been consulted in the preparation of this book, those which have been most closely followed are R. Fornaciari's *Grammatica italiana dell' uso moderno*, Parts I and II, and, especially for the Introduction, *Ortoepia e ortografia italiana moderna*, by G. Malagòli. The dictionaries of Edgren and Petrocchi have been constantly consulted; suggestions as to material and arrangement have been gained from the Italian work of Morandi and Cappuccini and from my American predecessors in this field, and for several hints as to Tuscan idiom I am indebted to the grammars of N. Orlandi and Alina Vannini. And I desire to thank Professor A. A. Livingston of Columbia University for kindly undertaking the laborious task of reading this book in proof, and for his very valuable suggestions on many points.

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	
Alphabet . . . . .	1
Pronunciation . . . . .	2
Syllabification . . . . .	15
Tonic Accent . . . . .	15
Graphic Accents . . . . .	19
Elision . . . . .	20
Apocopation . . . . .	22
Variant Forms of Words . . . . .	24
Capitalization . . . . .	25
Archaic and Poetic Forms . . . . .	26
Versification . . . . .	28
 <b>LESSONS</b>	
I. Indefinite Article . . . . .	33
II. Present of <i>avere</i> and <i>essere</i> . Pronouns in Address . . . . .	36
III. Plural of Nouns. Future Indicative . . . . .	39
IV. Definite Article. Past Absolute Indicative . . . . .	41
V. Contraction of Article. Past Future . . . . .	45
VI. Gender of Nouns . . . . .	48
VII. Adjectives and Adverbs . . . . .	51
VIII. Regular Verbs . . . . .	58
IX. Conjunctive Pronouns . . . . .	63
X. <i>Essere</i> . The Passive Voice . . . . .	67
XI. Conjunctives Continued. Auxiliaries with Intransitive Verbs . . . . .	71
XII. Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	76
XIII. Possessives . . . . .	81
XIV. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs. Relative Pronouns . . . . .	86
XV. The Comparative . . . . .	90
XVI. The Verb <i>avere</i> . . . . .	95



# AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

LESSONS	PAGE
XVII. Two Conjunctive Objects. Conjunctive Adverbs . . .	100
XVIII. Irregular Verbs . . . . .	103
XIX. <i>Dare, sapere, volere</i> . . . . .	107
XX. Disjunctives. <i>Venire</i> . . . . .	111
XXI. Tenses. Verb and Subject . . . . .	117
XXII. Definite Article. <i>Andare</i> . L'Arrivo . . . . .	126
XXIII. Cardinal Numerals. <i>Morire</i> . . . . .	135
XXIV. Ordinal Numerals, Collectives, etc. <i>Parere</i> . . .	142
XXV. Indefinite Article. <i>Fare</i> . Dialogue: L'Albergo .	149
XXVI. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Stare</i> . . . . .	155
XXVII. Conjunctive with Dependent Infinitive. <i>Potere</i> . Dia- logue: Dalla sarta . . . . .	160
XXVIII. The Subjunctive. <i>Dolere</i> . . . . .	164
XXIX. The Infinitive. <i>Dire</i> . . . . .	170
XXX. Number of Nouns. <i>Piacere</i> . . . . .	175
XXXI. Modal Auxiliaries. <i>Dovere</i> . Dialogue: Dal sarto .	184
XXXII. Relative, Demonstrative, and Interrogative Pro- nouns. <i>Udire</i> . . . . .	190
XXXIII. Participles. <i>Porre</i> . Dialogue: Dal calzolaio . .	196
XXXIV. Gender of Nouns. <i>Uscire</i> . . . . .	203
XXXV. Indefinites. <i>Scegliere</i> . L'Automobile . . . . .	209
XXXVI. Adverbs. <i>Valere</i> . . . . .	220
XXXVII. Prepositions. Dialogue: Dalla modista . . . .	232
XXXVIII. Augmentatives and Diminutives. Dialogue: Si fanno le compre . . . . .	246
XXXIX. Conjunctions and Interjections . . . . .	251
ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	261
ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	275
ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY . . . . .	301
INDEX . . . . .	323

# AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

## INTRODUCTION

### I. THE ALPHABET

1. The Italian alphabet is composed of twenty-one letters. Those whose names end in **-a** are of feminine, those in **-e** of common, and the others of masculine gender; but they all may be treated as feminine, to agree with **lettera** understood. They do not change for the plural. Their Italian names are—

LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIATION	LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIATION
a	a	(ah)	n	enne	(ennay)
b	bi	(bee)	o	o	(toll)
c	ci	(cheat)	p	pi	(pea)
d	di	(Dee)	q	cu	(coo)
e	e	(ale)	r	erre	(erray)
f	effe	(effay)	s	esse	(essay)
g	gi	(genius)	t	ti	(tea)
h	acca	(ahkkah)	u	u	(ooze)
i	i	(machine)	v	vu	(voodoo)
l	elle	(ellay)	z	zeta	(dzayta)
m	emme	(emmay)			

*a.* The letter **j** (**i lungo**) exists, but only as a diacritical mark used by some writers to indicate the use of **i** as semivowel (cf. 4): **giojelli**, **operajo**; or instead of **ii**: **desiderj**; or for the spelling of foreign words.

*b.* The following consonants also exist in Italian, for the spelling of foreign words: **k** (**cappa**), **w** (**doppio vu**), **y** (**ipilon** or **i gręco**), and **x** (**icse** or **ics**).

## II. PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS

**2. The Vowel Sounds.** There are seven vowel sounds in Italian, as follows :

<b>a</b> = ah	<b>fa</b>
<b>e</b> (close) = <i>ale</i>	<b>pepe</b>
<b>e</b> (open) = <i>men</i>	<b>bella</b>
<b>i</b> = <i>machine</i>	<b>Mimi</b>
<b>o</b> (close) = <i>low</i>	<b>sofo</b>
<b>o</b> (open) = <i>ought</i>	<b>so</b>
<b>u</b> = <i>moon</i>	<b>luna</b>

**a.** As the rules given (cf. **3**) for determining the close and open **e** and **o**, besides being difficult to remember, do not cover all cases, these vowels, when accented, will be marked in this book (as indicated above) when appearing in the text for the first time, in the special vocabularies, and in the complete vocabulary at the end of the volume.

**b.** People accustomed to speak English incline to mispronounce **a**, **i**, and **u** in certain combinations, slackening and dulling their quality by analogy with English ; this tendency is apparent in **a** when final, as in **Amērica**, and in **i** and **u** when followed by two or more consonants, or by **l** or **r** when accented in the antepenult. Thus **i** in **virtù** 'virtue,' **ninfa** 'nymph,' **mirra** 'myrrh,' **principe** 'prince,' is slackened to the *i* of 'virile'; **u** in **singulto** 'sob,' **Būlgaro** 'Bulgarian,' **giunto** 'arrived,' to the *u* of 'pull.' This tendency should be avoided, and the sound of these vowels kept identical in all combinations.

**3. Close and Open E and O.** A few rules apply alike to both, but there are numerous special rules for each.

**a.** Both are Close when followed by **gn**, **lm**, **mm**, **nn** (*except* **donna** 'woman,' **monna** 'Lady,' **nonno** 'grandfather').  
 EXAMPLES : **pegno** 'pledge,' **sogno** 'dream,' **elmo** 'helmet,' **olmo** 'elm,' **vendemmia** 'vintage,' **sommo** 'supreme,' **venni** 'I came.'

**b. Both are Open —**

1. When followed by **ns, q, str,** or (nearly always) a single consonant + two vowels. **EXAMPLES:** **p**enso 'I think,' **c**onsole 'consul,' **è**quo 'equal,' **n**ostro 'our,' **f**inestra 'window,' **V**enèzia 'Venice,' **comm**edia 'comedy,' **p**urgat<sup>o</sup>rio 'purgatory,' **coll**egio 'college.'

2. When preceded by a consonant + 1: **g**l<sup>o</sup>bo 'globe,' **spl**èndido 'splendid.'

3. *Contrary to rules,* in so-called 'learned' words, not in common use by the people at large: **pre**coce 'precocious,' **testim**one 'witness,' **alfab**eto 'alphabet,' **ditt**ongo 'diphthong,' **napole**onico 'Napoleonic,' **rec**ondito 'recondite,' **Calif**ornia.

**c. E is Close (Lat. ĭ, ē, oe > It. e) —**

1. In unaccented syllables: **P**etrucchio; **com**e 'like.'

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in **e**: **merc**e 'thanks to,' **r**e 'King.' **EXCEPTIONS:** **ch**e! 'what!' and other interjections; **è** 'is,' **r**e (musical note), **di**e 'he gave,' **pi**e 'foot,' and foreign nouns like **caff**e 'coffee,' **No**e 'Noah.'

3. In the endings **-ēfice, -eggio, -embro, -esco -a, -ese, -esimo** (in nouns), **-essa, -eto** (in collectives), **-etto -a** (cf. *d*, 6), **-ēvole, -mente,** and **-mento**. **EXAMPLES:** **or**ēfice 'goldsmith,' **pass**eggio 'walk,' **m**embro 'member,' **Franc**esco 'Francis,' **m**ese 'month,' **batt**esimo 'baptism,' **cont**essa 'countess,' **oliv**eto 'olive-grove,' **alleg**retto 'cheerful,' **onor**evole 'honorable,' **facil**mente 'easily,' **appart**amento 'apartment.'

4. Before **cc, ce, pp, zz** (*except* **è**cco 'here is,' **sp**ecchio 'mirror,' **v**ecchio 'old,' **Gi**useppe 'Joseph,' **s**eppe 'he knew,' **m**ezzo 'half,' **p**ezzo 'piece,' **pr**ezzo 'price,' and a few others). **EXAMPLES:** **z**ecca 'mint,' **or**ecchio 'ear,' **in**vece 'instead,' **c**ep<sup>pi</sup> 'fettters,' **ric**chezza 'richness.'

5. In the pronouns **m**e 'me,' **n**e 'of it,' **t**e 'thee,' **gli**e 'to her'; **è**gli, **è**i, 'he'; **q**esto 'this,' **q**uello 'that'; **s**tes<sup>so</sup>, **med**esimo, 'self.'

6. In the contracted prepositions **nello** 'in the,' **dello** 'of the,' etc.; in the conjunctions **e** 'and,' **che** 'that,' **finchè** 'as long as,' **mentre** 'while,' **perchè** 'why,' **se** 'if,' etc.; in the adverbs **dentro** 'within,' **meno** 'less,' **spesso** 'often'; in the numerals **tre** 'three,' **trēdici** 'thirteen,' **sēdici** 'sixteen,' **vēnti** 'twenty,' **trēnta** 'thirty.'

7. In verbs: whenever accented in the infinitive, past descriptive, future, past absolute, and past subjunctive; in the second plural of the present indicative and imperative; in the second singular and first and second plural of the past future, and in past absolutes and past participles in **-ēsi** and **-ēso -a**, except **chiēsi** 'I asked' and its compounds.

**d. E is Open** (*Lat. ě, ae > It. ie, e*) —

1. When preceded by **i**, or when **i** has been dropped from before it: **ciēco** 'blind,' **sēte** (for **siēte**) 'you are.'

2. In the endings **-ello -a** (*except capello* 'hair' and *stella* 'star'), **-ēma**, **-ēndo -a** (*except vendo* 'I sell,' *scendo* 'I descend'), **-ēnse**, **-ēnte -o -i -a**, **-lēnto**, **-ēnza**, **-ēro** (in nouns of more than two syllables), **-ēšimo** (in numerals). EXAMPLES: **bello** 'beautiful,' **problema** 'problem,' **bēnda** 'band,' **estēse** 'of Este,' **Benevēnto**, **vivēnte** 'living,' **sonnolēnto** 'somnolent,' **prudēnza** 'prudence,' **impero** 'empire,' **ventēšimo** 'twentieth.'

3. When followed by a single vowel: **sēi** 'six,' **ebreo** 'Hebrew.'

4. In foreign nouns, when final and accented: **Moišē** 'Moses,' **tē** 'tea.'

5. In the adverbs **bēne** 'well,' **certo** 'surely,' **mēglio** 'better,' **pēggio** 'worse,' **presso** 'near,' **sempre** 'always,' **verso** 'towards,' in the preposition **senza** 'without,' and in the numerals **terzo** 'third,' **sēsto** 'sixth,' **sētte** 'seven,' **sēttimo** 'seventh.'

6. In verbs: in past absolutes in **-ētti** and past participles in **-ēnto** and **-ētto**; in present participles in **-ēndo** and **-ēnte**; in the first and third singular and third plural of the past future; in **chiēsi** and its compounds, and **ēbbi** 'I had,' **ēbbe** 'he had,' **ēbbero**



'they had.' EXAMPLES: *credetti* 'I believed,' *attento* 'attentive,' *letto* 'read,' *potrei* 'I might,' *avrèbbe* 'he would have,' *saprèbbero* 'they would know.'

e. The following are a few of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the e is close or open :

<i>accetta</i> hatchet	<i>accetta</i> from <i>accettare</i> to accept
<i>dette</i> from <i>dire</i> to say	<i>dette</i> from <i>dare</i> to give
<i>legge</i> law	<i>legge</i> from <i>leggere</i> to read
<i>mèle</i> apples	<i>mèle</i> ( <i>mièle</i> ) honey
<i>mènte</i> memory	<i>mènte</i> from <i>mentire</i> to lie
<i>pescà</i> from <i>pescare</i> to fish	<i>pescà</i> peach
<i>pèste</i> footprints	<i>pèste</i> pest
<i>sète</i> thirst	<i>sète</i> ( <i>siète</i> ) you are
<i>tèma</i> from <i>temere</i> to fear	<i>tèma</i> theme

f. O is Close (*Lat.* ŭ, ō > *It.* o) —

1. In the endings *-oce*, *-doio*, *-soio*, *-toio*, *-one -o -a*, *-ore -a*, *-oso* (in adjectives). EXAMPLES: *feroce* 'ferocious,' *corridoio* 'corridor,' *vassòio* 'tray,' *scrittoio* 'writing-desk,' *portone* 'great gate,' *padrona* 'mistress,' *imperatore* 'emperor,' *stiratora* 'laundress,' *glorioso* 'glorious,' *sontuoso* 'sumptuous.'

2. Before *r + l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*; before *m* or *n* + any consonant except *s*; and before *l + c*, *f*, *p*, *s*, or *t* (*except* in the inflections of *cogliere* 'to pluck,' *sciogliere* 'to loosen,' *togliere* 'to take away,' *volgere* 'to turn': *colto*, *sciolsi*, *tolse*, *volta*, etc.). EXAMPLES: *orlo* 'margin,' *forma* 'form,' *forno* 'oven,' *torre* 'tower,' *torso* 'torso,' *Orsola* 'Ursula,' *ombra* 'shadow,' *compra* 'buys,' *gondola* 'gondola,' *tronco* 'trunk,' *contro* 'against,' *monte* 'mountain,' *biundo* 'blonde,' *bronzo* 'bronze,' *oppongo* 'I oppose,' *solco* 'furrow,' *dolce* 'sweet,' *golfo* 'gulf,' *volpe* 'fox,' *colto* 'cultivated.'

3. In past absolutes and past participles in *-osi*, *-oso* (*except* *esploso*, *esplosi*), *-osto*, *-otto*. EXAMPLES: *nascosi* 'I hid,' *roso* 'gnawed,' *opposto* 'opposed,' *rotto* 'broken.'

4. In the pronouns *lò* 'him,' *loro* 'their,' *coloro*, *costoro*, 'they,' *ogni* 'every'; in the numerals *dōdici* 'twelve,' *quattōrdici* 'fourteen,'; in *molto* 'much'; in the prepositions and conjunctions *come* 'like,' *dopo* 'after,' *dove* 'where,' *oltre* 'beyond,' *sopra* 'over,' *sotto* 'under'; in the negative *non*; and in the past subjunctive of *ēssere* 'to be': *fōssi* 'I might be' etc.

*g. O is Open (Lat. ō, au > It. uo, o) —*

1. After *u*, and in words from which a preceding *u* has been dropped. EXAMPLES: *fuoco* 'fire,' *novo* (for *nuovo*) 'new.' Cf. *f, 1*.

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in *o*, except *lò*. EXAMPLES: *ciò* 'that,' *andò* 'he went,' *farò* 'I shall do,' *Pò* the river, *dò* 'I give.'

3. When followed by a vowel (*except* in *noi*, *voi*, and the endings *-dōio*, *-sōio*, *-tōio*). EXAMPLES: *Savōia* 'Savoy,' *nōia* 'annoyance,' *erōe* 'hero,' *Balbōa*, *tuōi* 'thy.'

4. Before *b*, *d* (*except* *cōda* 'tail,' *dōdici* 'twelve,' *rōdo* 'I gnaw'), *f*, *ns*, *-cchi-*, *-rchi-*. EXAMPLES: *rōba* 'things,' *gōbbo* 'hunchback,' *brōdo* 'broth,' *stōffa* 'goods,' *respōnso* 'response,' *ginōcchio* 'knee,' *rimōrchio* 'towing.'

5. When accented in the antepenult before a single *t* or *s*, or any double consonant except *m* or *r*. EXAMPLES: *eșōtico* 'exotic,' *propōșito* 'resolution,' *zōccolo* 'wooden shoe,' *sōffoca* 'suffocates,' *viōttola* 'lane.'

6. In the endings *-ōccio*, *-ōlo*, *-ōntico*, *-ōto*, *-ōtto* (*except* past participles, cf. *f, 3*), *-ōzzo*. EXAMPLES: *carrōccio* 'cart,' *Tirōlo* 'Tyrol,' *anacreōntico* 'Anacreontic,' *ignōto* 'unknown,' *aquilōtto* 'eaglet,' *bōzzo* 'sketch.'

7. In the adverbs *oggi* 'to-day,' *poco* 'little,' *talvolta* 'sometimes,' *tōsto* 'soon,' *trōppo* 'too much'; the conjunctions *perō* 'however,' *perciō* 'on this account,' etc.; the negative *nò* 'no'; and the numerals *nōno* 'ninth,' *nōve* 'nine.'

8. In past absolutes in *-ōssi*, *-ōlsi*. EXAMPLES: *mōssi* 'I moved,' *sciōlse* 'he loosened.'



*h.* Some of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the *o* is close or open :

## CLOSE

*cogli* contracted *prep.* with the  
*collo* contracted *prep.* with the  
*fosse* from *ēssere* to be  
*roşa* from *rōdere* to gnaw  
*torre* tower  
*tosco* Tuscan (*poetic*)  
*vōlgo* ignorant class  
*vōlto* face

## OPEN

*cogli* from *cōgliere* to pluck  
*collo* neck  
*fosse* ditches  
*roşa* rose  
*torre* (*tōgliere*) to take away  
*tosco* poison  
*vōlgo* from *vōlgere* to turn  
*vōlto* from *vōlgere* to turn

**4. Semivowels and Diphthongs.** Any two vowels pronounced as one syllable constitute a diphthong. The vowels *i* and *u* before another vowel are usually pronounced respectively *y* and *w*, and are then called semivowels. (See below, 4, *d.*)

Diphthongs are of two kinds: *a. Rising* diphthongs, in which a "weak" vowel (*i* or *u*) precedes a "strong" vowel (*e*, *o*, or *a*) and the strong is stressed. EXAMPLES: *lieto* 'joyous,' *fuoco* 'fire,' *guardi* 'look,' *uomo* 'man,' *ieri* 'yesterday,' *qui*.

*b. Falling* diphthongs, in which a strong vowel precedes a weak, and still receives the stress. EXAMPLES: *noi* 'we,' *poichè* 'since,' *Europa* 'Europe,' *Laura*.

*i.* When two weak vowels combine, the second usually takes the stress. EXAMPLES: *guida* 'guide,' *giù* 'down.'

*c. Triphthongs.* A strong vowel between two weak ones, or a weak between two strong, may form a triphthong, which is really two diphthongs in one, a rising and a falling. EXAMPLES: *mièi* 'my,' *suoi* 'his,' *studiai* 'I studied,' *bestiuola* 'small creature.'

1. Four or even five vowels may be contiguous, and pronounced together; but usually the first of these stands after *g* or *c* merely to give it a special sound (cf. 5, *a*), and so only three, or four, are heard. EXAMPLES: *gioiello* 'jewel,' *merciaio* 'dry-goods merchant,' *bagagliaio* 'baggage room,' *Acciaiuolo*.

*d*. In many words, often compound or derivative, *i* and *u* are not semivowels but are pronounced as a separate syllable. In such case the combination is not a diphthong. EXAMPLES: *spi-a* 'spy,' *spi-are* 'to spy,' *signori-a* 'lordship,' *obli-o* 'oblivion,' *ri-esco* 'I succeed,' *ri-uscire* 'to succeed,' *pi-uolo* 'rung,' *tri-orno* 'triumph,' *vi-aggio* 'journey,' *sontu-oso* 'sumptuous,' *ambigu-o* 'ambiguous.'

5. Consonant Sounds. *a*. The following consonant sounds occur in Italian, all of them being pronounced more explosively than in English, except when standing alone between two vowels.

*b*, as in English.

*c*, *cc*, (hard) before *a*, *o*, *u*, = *k*: *caro* 'dear,' *con* 'with,' *cura* 'care.'

*c*, *cc*, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = *ch*: *Cina* 'China,' *centro* 'center.'

*ch* (used only before *i* or *e*), = *k*: *chi* 'who?' *che* 'which.'

*ci* before another vowel, = *ch*: *cięco* 'blind,' *ciuco* 'donkey,' *provincia* 'province.'

*d*, *t*, pronounced with tip of tongue farther forward than in English.

*f*, as in English.

*g* (hard) before *a*, *o*, *u*, = 'go': *Belga* 'Belgian,' *gola* 'throat,' *laguna* 'lagoon.'

*g*, *gg*, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = 'gin': *gente* 'people,' *gita* 'excursion.'

*gh* (used only before *i* or *e*), = 'go': *aghi* 'needles,' *botteghe* 'shops.'

*gi* before another vowel, = 'gin': *mangiare* 'to eat,' *Giovanni* 'John,' *giudice* 'judge.'

*gli* before *i*, = 'million': *gli* 'to him,' *figli* 'sons.' (But cf. 5, *c*.)

*gli* before another vowel, = 'million': *glię* 'to her,' *Bagliani*, *Pagliacci*.

*gn*, = 'canyon': *Bologna*.

*h*, silent.

**l** and **n**, pronounced with the tongue a little nearer the front teeth than in English.

**m, p, q**, as in English.

**n** before the hard sound of **c** or **g** or **q**, = *ng*: **franco** 'franc,' **fungo** 'mushroom,' **cinque** 'five.'

**r**, always rolled, especially when double.

**s**, = 'sir': **sę** 'if,' **sprone** 'spur.'

**ş**, = 'rose': **rõşa** 'rose,' **şmeraldo** 'emerald,' **şbaglio** 'mistake.'

**sc** before **i** or **e**, = *sh*: **scimmia** 'monkey,' **conõscere** 'to be acquainted with.'

**sci** before another vowel, = *sh*: **scià** 'shah,' **liscio** 'smooth,' **scięza** 'science.'

**v**, as in English.

**z**, = *ts*: **conversaziõne** 'conversation,' **pazzo** 'mad.'

**z**, = *dz*: **męzzo** 'half,' **dozzina** 'dozen,' **zẹro** 'zero.'

**b. Double Consonants.** Double consonants must be pronounced double, but without hiatus. Few single words (such as *unnatural, tailless*) present this phenomenon in English; but it is easily illustrated by combinations of two words, such as *mad dog, big gun, a mile long, room-mate, pine knot*, etc. Pronounce on this principle **bęllo** 'beautiful,' **tęrra** 'earth,' **Boccaccio**, **mõsso** 'moved.'

Note that **cci** and **ggi** sound not as **c-ci** and **g-gi** but as **t-ci** and **d-gi**; similarly **cc** and **gg** before **e**. Also that **zz, zz**, sound like **z, z**, not doubled.

This distinction between the single and double consonant should be carefully observed, as there are many words whose meaning, when spoken, would otherwise be mistaken. The following are some of these:

**aringa** herring  
**baco** silkworm  
**bęla** baa  
**camino** hearth  
**canõne** large dog

**aringa** harangue  
**Bacco** Bacchus  
**bęlla** beautiful  
**cammino** road  
**cannõne** cannon

<i>casa</i> house	<i>cassa</i> money-chest
<i>coppia</i> plenty	<i>coppia</i> couple
<i>dita</i> fingers	<i>ditta</i> firm
<i>Ino</i> Ino	<i>inno</i> hymn
<i>Luca</i> Luke	<i>Lucca</i> the city
<i>nonno</i> ninth	<i>nonno</i> grandfather
<i>risa</i> laughter	<i>rissa</i> quarrel
<i>sonetto</i> sonnet	<i>sonnetto</i> nap
<i>Trācia</i> Thrace	<i>trāccia</i> trace
<i>vano</i> vain	<i>vanno</i> they go

1. Similarly, **l, m, n, r**, in an accented syllable before another consonant, are prolonged, and pronounced as if double. **EXAMPLES:** *altro* (all-tro) 'other,' *quando* (quann-do) 'when,' *Dante* (dann-te), *novembre* (novemm-bre) 'November,' *porta* (porr-ta) 'door,' *anche* (ang-che) 'also,' *pongo* (pong-go) 'I put,' *stanco* (stang-co) 'tired,' *propinquo* (proping-quo) 'near.'

2. **Special Doublings.** A word ending in an accented vowel, or a monosyllable ending in a vowel, has in pronunciation the effect of doubling the initial consonant of the following word. Thus *Si*, *Signora* 'Yes, madam,' is actually pronounced *sissignora*; *ma ch !* 'what!' is pronounced *macch *; *va bene* 'all right,' *vabbene*; etc.

*a.* When compounds are made of words in such groups, the spelling follows the pronunciation. **EXAMPLES:** *pi * 'more' and *tosto* 'soon' combine in *piuttostto* 'rather'; *chi* 'who,' *che* 'that,' and *sia* 'be,' in *chicchessia* 'whoever.'

*b.* The following words, although not accented on the last syllable, double the initial consonant of the following word: *come* 'how,' *dove* 'where,' *qualche* 'some,' *sopra* 'upon.' **EXAMPLES:** *comemmai* (come mai) 'how in the world,' *dovevva?* (*dove va*) 'where does he go?' *qualchevolta* (*qualche volta*) 'sometimes,' and the compound *soprattutto* (*sopra tutto*) 'above all.'

*c.* The words *dio*, *d a*, *d i*, *d e*, 'god' and 'goddess,' singular and plural, double their initial consonant after any word ending in a vowel, as *b lladd a* (*bella dea*) 'beautiful goddess.'

*d.* Doubling does not take place where there is any break in the sense between the two words; after a conjunctive pronoun object (cf. 94), because, being proclitic, it never takes the accent; or after a word ending with an apostrophe, as *sta' quieto* 'be quiet,' unless the succeeding word be a conjunctive pronoun (see below).

*e.* But when the conjunctive object follows a form of the verb which is accented on the last syllable, even with the apostrophe, its initial consonant is doubled (cf. 100, *b*). EXAMPLES: *parlòmmi* (*parlò mi*) 'he spoke to me,' *dille* (*dì' le*) 'tell her,' *fallo* (*fa' lo*) 'do it.'

*c.* *Gli* keeps the hard sound of *g* when preceded by *n*, as *ganglio* 'ganglion,' and in the words *geroglifico* 'hieroglyphic,' *glicerina* 'glycerine,' *negligente* 'negligent,' and a few others.

*d.* **Tuscan Peculiarities.** In Tuscan speech a single *c* or *g* between vowels of which the second is *i* or *e*, whether in the same word or in a group of two words, is softened, the *c* almost to *sh* and the *g* almost to *zh* (*s* in *pleasure*). A slight touch of this softening is an elegance of pronunciation anywhere in Italy. EXAMPLES: *dieci* 'ten,' *bugia* 'lie,' *ricevere* 'to receive,' *diligente* 'diligent,' *la gente* 'the people,' *bella città* 'beautiful city.'

Likewise, a slight softening and aspirating of the hard *c* and *g*, and of *q*, to a sound approximating the German *ch*, is acceptable to the Tuscans, though the exaggeration of it heard among the lower classes is a vulgarism. This "attenuation" (which should not be adopted by foreigners without great discretion) occurs either at the beginning or in the middle of a word, if the consonant stands between two vowels, or is preceded by a vowel but followed by *r* or *l*. EXAMPLES: *nemico* 'enemy,' *equo* 'equal,' *lago* 'lake,' *questa cosa* 'this thing,' *democratico* 'democratic,' *agro* 'sour,' *la glotta* 'glottis,' *una classe* 'a class.'

*e.* **S and Z.** As with the close and open vowels, the rules cannot be made to fit all cases; accordingly in this



book **s** = *z* will be marked (in the vocabularies or when appearing for the first time in the text) **ş**, and **z** = *dz* will be marked **z**.

1. **S** is pronounced **s** :

*a.* When initial before a vowel, as in **santo** 'saint.'

*b.* When double, as in **rosso** 'red.'

*c.* When followed by **c, f, p, q, t**. EXAMPLES: **scala** 'stair,' **scherzo** 'joke,' **Schiavo** 'Slav,' **sfera** 'sphere,' **rispondere** 'to reply,' **squilla** 'bell,' **stanza** 'room.'

*d.* In words ending in **-eso -a -e -i** or **-oso -a -e -i**, with the vowel close (cf. 3, *c, 7*; *f, 1, 3*), and their derivatives. EXAMPLES: **atteso** 'awaited,' **impresa** 'enterprise,' **mese** 'month,' **presi** 'I took,' **generoso** 'generous,' **generosità** 'generosity,' **Tolosa** 'Toulouse,' **impose** 'he imposed,' **nascosi** 'I hid.'

EXCEPTIONS :

**cortese** kind

**francese** French

**leşi -o**, from **leşere** (*rare*) to damage

**marchese** marquis

**paese** country

**palese** evident

**toşo** shaven

2. **S** is pronounced **ş** :

*a.* When followed by **b, d, g, l, m, n, r, or v**. EXAMPLES: **şbaglio** 'mistake,' **şdegno** 'indignation,' **şgradevole** 'disagreeable,' **dişlacciare** 'to unlace,' **entuşiasmo** 'enthusiasm,' **şnodare** 'to untie,' **şradicare** 'to eradicate,' **şvernare** 'to winter.'

*b.* Between two vowels, as in **aşilo** 'asylum,' with the following important exceptions :

(1) Cf. 1, *d*, above.

(2) When a prefix is set before a word normally beginning with **s**. EXAMPLES: **di-serrare** 'to unlock' (but **dişereditare** 'to disinherit'), **pro-secuzione** 'prosecution,' **pre-servare** 'to preserve,' **ri-sorgimento** 'resurrection,' **tręnta-şei** 'thirty-six.'

## (3) And in the following words :

annusare to smell at	parasito parasite
āsino donkey	Pisa
casa house	pisello pea
Chiusi a town	pōsa, ripōso, repose
chiusi -o, <i>from</i> chiūdere to close	raso satin
çosa thing	Ricāsoli
così thus	rimasi I remained
desidērio desire	riso laugh
fuso spindle	susina plum

## 3. Z is pronounced z :

*a.* Before *ia, ie, io.* EXAMPLES : pazzia 'madness,' grāzie 'thank you,' nazione 'nation.'

*b.* In all words not listed under 4.

## 4. Z is pronounced z :

*a.* In verbs ending in *-izzare*, of more than four syllables in the infinitive ; as *organizzare* 'to organize.'

*b.* When single between two vowels, except as under 3, *a.* EXAMPLES : bizantino 'Byzantine,' Donizetti, ozono 'ozone.'

*c.* When initial, except in the following words :

zāchera mud stain	zāzzerā long hair	zittella spinster
zaffo bung	zēcca mint	zitto hush
zampa paw	zēcchino sequin	zōccolo wooden shoe
zampillo fountain	zēppa wedge	zōlfo sulphur
zampogna reed	zimbello decoy	zōppo lame
zana basket	zīngaro gipsy	zucca squash
zāngola charm	zinzino sip	zūcchero sugar
zanna tusk	zio uncle	zuffa fray
zappa mattock	zīpolo spigot	zūfolo whistle
zatta raft	zirlare to whistle	zuppa broth

*d.* In the following words :

aguzzino slave-driver	azzurro blue	bronzo bronze
amāzzone amazon	brezza breeze	donzella damsel



dozzina	dozen	orzo	barley
gazzella	gazelle	pettegolezzo	gossip
gazzetta	gazette	pranzo	dinner
ghiribizzo	caprice	razzo	spoke
Lāzzaro	Lazarus	ribrezzo	shiver
lazzaretto	pest-house	romanzo	novel
lezzo	unpleasant odor	ronzo	buzzing
magazzino	storehouse	scorza	bark
marzocco	lion of Florence	zanzara	mosquito
mezzo	half, middle	zēnzero	ginger
orizzonte	horizon		

And the following less common words, and others still more uncommon :

arzigōgolo	bōnzo	gazza	olezzo	suzzāchera
arzilla	bōzzima	ghezzo	pēnzolo	suzzato
āzzimo	bōzzo ('pool')	ghiuzzo	razza (fish)	şverişa
baragozzo	buzzo	gruzzo	rezzo	verzicare
barzelleŧta	calenzuolo	intirizzare	rozzo	verziere
bazza	eczema	lacchezzo	rubizzo	zizzānia
bazzana	Elzeviri	lazzeruola	ruzzo	zizzola
bazzōffia	frizzo	lazzo	scarza	zonzo
belzuino	frōnzolo	manzo	sfarzo	zozza
Belzebù	ganzo	Manzoni	şgabuzzino	
bizza	garza	mozzo ('hub')	sizza	
bizzēffe	garzo	Nazzareno	sozzo	

A few words differ in meaning according to whether the *z* is "voiced" (*z*) or "unvoiced" (*z*), among which are the following :

bōzzo	pool	bōzzo	sketch
mezzo	half, middle	mezzo	wet, ripe
mōzzo	hub	mōzzo	cabin-boy
razza	ray (fish)	razza	race, lineage

NOTE. In derived words, *s* or *z* keeps the sound that it has in the root word, even contrary to rule. EXAMPLES: sorriso 'smile' from *riso*, ronziō 'continued buzzing' from *ronzo*.

## III. SYLLABIFICATION

The division of words into syllables is very exact in Italian.

6. Nearly all syllables must end in a vowel, which may be preceded by as many as three consonants. EXAMPLES : *ca-sa, ta-sca, a-vrò, ri-u-sci-re, e-strę-mo, şbra-na-re, e-spri-me, mi-glio, va-ghe, tò-sto, Ti-şbe, fi-nę-stra, sfu-ma-re.*

7. But double consonants, and groups consisting of a liquid (l, r) or nasal (m, n) followed by a mute (b, c, d, g, p, t) or spirant (f, v, s, z), or of a liquid and a nasal, are divided. EXAMPLES : *qua-drę-ti, bę-lo, bus-se, al-lac-ciati, da-van-zale, sę-to, sel-cia-to, rim-bom-bo, mar-mo, scę-do, al-tro, sin-çę-ro, Ar-no, al-ma, stir-pe, or-gò-glio.*

8. Words to be divided at the end of a line of print or writing must be divided on these principles, and an apostrophe may never be left at the end of a line. For example, *tutt' altro, all' Italia*, must be divided *tut-t' altro, al-l' Italia*.

## IV. TONIC ACCENT

9. The distribution of the tonic accent, or the question on which syllable of a word to lay the stress, is one of the chief difficulties of Italian pronunciation for the foreigner. A few rules may be given, but there are many exceptions. The accentuation of a word, like its gender, should be learned along with its meaning. In this book, all stressed antepenults, and i when accented in the final groups *ia, ie, io, ii*, will be marked with a macron, thus : *gōndola, Signorīa*.

10. The majority of Italian words are accented on the penult, and are called *parole piane* : *vędo* 'I see,' *luna* 'moon,' *inveçe* 'instead,' *reverberare* 'reverberate,' *finiręte* 'you will finish.'

11. Words accented on the last syllable are called *parole tronche*: *poichè* 'since,' *virtù* 'virtue,' *curiosità* 'curiosity.'

12. Words accented on the antepenult are called *parole sdrucchiole*: *cēlebre* 'famous,' *ammīrano* 'they admire,' *organīz-zano* 'they organize.'

13. Those accented on the syllable preceding the antepenult are called *bisdrucchiole*: *andādosene* 'going away,' *cēlebrano* 'they celebrate.'

*a.* Most of these are the third persons plural of verbs having more than three syllables in the infinitive, of which the first person singular is accented on the antepenult; but it is not easy to be sure whether the first person singular is so accented in a given instance. However, if the verb be derived from a noun, the first person singular will follow the accent of the noun; and when the infinitive ends in *-borare*, *-iugare*, *-iuvare*, *-ipare*, *-minare* preceded by a single vowel, or *-erare* preceded by a liquid + a mute, or its ending is preceded by a mute + a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the antepenult. But if the infinitive ending is preceded by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the penult. EXAMPLES: *inganno* 'deceit,' *inganno* 'I deceive,' *ingānnano* 'they deceive'; *ōpera* 'work,' *ōpero* 'I work,' *ōperano* 'they work'; *integrare* 'to complete,' *integrano* 'they complete'; *corroborare* 'to corroborate,' *corrōboro*; *coniugare* 'to conjugate,' *cōniugano*; *dissipare* 'to dissipate,' *dissipo*; *seminare* 'to sow,' *sēmīno*; *illuminare* 'to illuminate,' *illūminano*; *camminare* 'to walk,' *cammino*.

NOTE. In verbs of Latin derivation, the quantity of the vowel in the penult of the first person singular of the root verb is a fairly safe guide to the tonic accent in the Italian derivative. EXAMPLES: *indīco* > *indico*, *īmītor* > *imīto* or *īmito*, *conjūro* > *congiūro*.

14. The syllable that receives the tonic accent is usually a few tones higher in pitch than the others, particularly in the important

word of the sentence. The failure to observe this difference will make even well-pronounced Italian sound foreign. Sometimes, as in calling to a distant person, the tonic accent will be an octave above :

Su, Corrado,  
Vieni a veder che Dio per grazia volse.

(Oh, Corrado, come and see what God has willed!)

In exclamations, or in questions expressing amazement or incredulity, and to some extent in all speech, the whole sentence takes a kind of tonic accent. This falls sometimes on the first syllable of the sentence. A comparison of the sentences "Are you going to-day?" "Are you *going* to-day?" "Are you going *to-day*?" will illustrate this, but in Italian such variety is not reserved exclusively for particular rhetorical effects. English as spoken in England presents a closer analogy than American speech to this peculiarity of Italian.

15. Many words are distinguished in meaning from their homonyms only by the tonic accent. The following are a few of these :

ancōra still  
capitāno captain  
compīto *from* compire to fulfill  
Cupīdo Cupid  
impāri *from* imparare to learn  
pagāno pagan  
perđōno pardon  
princīpī beginnings, principles  
rubīno ruby

āncora anchor  
cāpitano *from* capitare to fall  
cōmpito task  
cūpido eager  
īmpari uneven  
pāgano *from* pagare to pay  
pērdono *from* perdere to lose  
prīncipi princes  
rūbino *from* rubare to rob

## V. WORDS FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

## 16. For practice on the consonants :

pazzo	svisceratezza	sgattigliare	santo
scianto	ella	lascio	sguaglianza
macchia	Bręscia	sonno	giungeva
Guglielmo	stortigliatura	montagna	glauche
floşcio	stagno	sfoglia	negli
sragionevole	staiuolo	scroşcio	somigliano
segni	fatto	bagagli	occhio
vecchio	malizia	somiglianza	chicche
sgagliardare	ingegno	luoghi	sciogliere
curiosa	guai	srugginire	svolazzato
allo	luşinghięro	ghiacciai	sferza
lasciare	pioggia	secco	azzurro
scricchiolare	slanciamęto	sdraiare	sfilacciatura
sfregiare	svogliatamente	seccia	accostandoglisi
attesa	Russia	uscio	sceglie
seche	sbirracchiolo	figliocchia	gloriose
ginocchi	sloggiare	secchita	chiacchierare
sfregacciare	bianche	smemorataccio	sasso
tedeschi	roccia	stovigliaio	villaggio
dramma	disse	sciente	svegliamento
gloria	scheggetta	qualche	scusa
sghimbęscio	smagio	bisbiglio	sguardo
scricchiolano	tacque	stanche	giudizio
gigli	zero	vizio	fertilizzare

## 17. For practice on close and open vowels :

allora	Londra	Siena	dolce
forestiere	settembre	elemosina	parente
solenne	senza	bronzo	borchia
luogo	legno	togliere	buono
rotondo	dormitorio	Maremma	moda
membro	deplora	inchiostro	donna
fuori	prendo	Orfeo	femmina
milanese	colmo	contento	insolenza



cielo	nōcciolo	Raffaello	Po
silenzio	piega	ecco	Pietro
talvolta	penitenza	ponte	Spezzia
allegrezza	faticoso	chieso	atteso

## VI. GRAPHIC ACCENTS

18. Three graphic accents are used in Italian: the grave ( ` ), the most common; the circumflex ( ^ ), used in a few cases; and the acute ( ´ ), which is rare in Italian.

19. The grave accent is used —

a. On final accented vowels of words of more than one syllable.

EXAMPLES: virtù 'virtue,' città 'city.'

b. On final vowels of monosyllables to indicate a diphthong.

EXAMPLES: può 'he can,' più 'more.'

c. On the truncated forms (cf. 31, a; 48, c) of the poetic past absolutes in -aro, -iro, -ero, to distinguish them from the truncated infinitives of the same verbs. Thus, amàr = amaro (amārono), not amare.

d. On monosyllables that have been combined with some other word or prefix, in order to keep the tonic accent in the same place.

EXAMPLES: fa 'makes,' rifà 'remakes'; re 'king,' vicerè 'viceroi.'

e. On certain monosyllables in common use, to distinguish them from others identical in spelling but of different meaning.

chè that	chè because	la, li, articles	là, lì, there
da from	dà gives	ne of it, of them	ne neither
di of	dì day	se if	se himself
e and	è is	si himself	si so, yes
fe' he did	fè faith	te thee	tè tea

20. The circumflex is used on certain shortened forms such as tôrre (tōgliere) 'to take away,' and often over final i when it represents ii. EXAMPLE: desidèrio 'desire,' pl. desidèri (written also desidèrii, desidèrj).

## 21. The acute accent is used —

*a.* To indicate that a certain word with close *e* or *o* is meant, and not its homonym with open vowel; as *tòsco*, indicating the poetic word for Tuscan, instead of *tosco* 'poison.'

*b.* In poetry, when the tonic accent is altered to suit the rhythm.

*c.* In dictionaries it serves to indicate the close vowels, and the grave the open.

*d.* The tendency is increasing among grammarians to encourage the use of the acute accent over final *i* and *u*, and final close *e* and *o*, when these are accented.

## VII. ELISION

22. Elision is the omission of the final vowel of one word before the initial vowel of the following word. It takes place only between two words closely bound together in sense, as verb and subject or object, preposition and object, adjective or article and noun; and any pause or punctuation mark prevents its use. It is indicated by the apostrophe. EXAMPLES: *l' uòmo* 'the man,' *nell' aria* 'in the air,' *tutt' altro* (cf. 8). It may occur in the following cases, but is most usual with the articles.

23. In the articles *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, alone or when contracted with prepositions (cf. 75). *Gli* is elided only before *i*; *le* only before *e*, and then not if the word is unchanged in the plural. EXAMPLES: *l(o)' amico* 'the friend,' *l(a)' anima* 'the soul,' *dell(o)' amore* 'of love,' *all(a)' amica* 'to the friend' (f.), *l(e)' erbe* 'the herbs,' *gl(i)' Inglesi* 'the English,' *le età* 'the ages,' *gli uòmini* 'the men.'

24. In the singular feminine form of the indefinite article: *un(a)' ora* 'an hour.'



25. In the pronoun objects *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *vi*, *ne*, *lo*; and *ci* before *i* or *e*. EXAMPLES: *m' abītuō* 'I accustom myself,' *t' inseqna* 'he teaches thee,' *s' intēde* 'that is understood,' *n' ha parlato* 'he has spoken of it,' *l' aspētto* 'I await him,' *c' imita* 'he imitates us,' *c' ērano* 'there were.'

26. In the pronouns *ogni*, *questo*, *quello*, *codesto*, *altro*, *nulla*, *niēte*; the adverbs *poco*, *tanto*, *quanto*; the prepositions *di*, *da*, *oltre*, *presso*, and *senza*, in certain adverbial expressions; the adjectives *santo*, *bello*, and *buono*, when immediately followed by their substantives; the conjunctions *anche*, *che*, *dove*, *onde*, *come*, and *se* before *e*; and the numerals *secondo*, *terzo*, *quarto*, *quattro*, *cinque*, *décimo*, etc., *venti*, *trēta*, *cēto*, *mille*, *mezzo*.

EXAMPLES: *ogn' altro* 'every other,' *quest' animale* 'this animal,' *quell' amico* 'that friend,' *codest' uōmo* 'that man,' *altr' ieri* 'day before yesterday,' *null' uōmo* 'no man,' *niēnt' affatto* 'nothing at all,' *poc' altro* 'little else,' *tant' è* 'so it is,' *quant' oro* 'how much gold,' *tazza d(i)' acqua* 'cup of water,' *oltr' Arno* 'beyond the Arno,' *press' a poco* 'nearabout,' *senz' altro* 'without delay,' *d(a)' allōra* 'from then,' *Sant' Ōrsola* 'Saint Ursula,' *bell' aria* 'beautiful air,' *buon' anima* 'good soul,' *dov' è* 'where is it?' *anch' io* 'I too,' *com' è* 'how is it?' *ond' andò* 'whence he went,' *ch' hanno* 'that they have,' *s' è vero* 'if it is true,' *second' anno* 'second year,' *terz' ūltimo* 'third from the last,' *quattr' arance* 'four oranges,' *vent' anni* 'twenty years,' *mill' anni* 'a thousand years,' *mezz' ora* 'a half-hour.'

27. In the first and third persons singular of verbs before a pronoun subject, and in the third person singular of the past future before a word beginning with *e*. EXAMPLES: *diss' io* 'said I,' *dic' egli* 'says he,' *potrēbb' ēssere* 'it might be.'

28. In the following contracted forms:

*a' for ai* to the  
*bē' for bene* well

*mō' for mōdo* manner  
*nē' for nēi* in the

*cò' for còi* with the  
*da' for dai* from the  
*de' for dei* of the  
*di' for dici* say  
*e' for ei* he  
*fe' for fece* he did  
*fra' for frai* among the  
*gua' for guarda* look  
*ma' for mali* evils  
*me' for meglio* better

*pe' for pei* for the  
*pò' for poco* little  
*pro' for prode* brave  
*què' for quei* those  
*su' for sui* on the  
*te' for tieni* hold  
*tò' for togli* take away  
*tra' for trai* among the  
*ve' for vedi* see  
*vo' for voglio* I will

NOTE. All these contractions are used in speech with the greatest frequency, but their use in the written language depends upon the discretion and taste of the author. The forms *be'*, *di'*, *gua'*, *te'*, are Tuscan popular forms; *ma'*, *me'*, *pro'*, are poetic forms; the others are admissible in prose.

## VIII. APOCOPATION

**29.** Apocopation (*troncamento*) is the dropping of the final unaccented vowel or sometimes syllable of a word under certain conditions, as *amor* for *amore*, *val* for *valle*, *caval* for *cavallo*.

**30.** It takes place only under the following conditions:

- a.* In a word of more than one syllable, not accented on the last.
- b.* When the final vowel (as a rule not *a*, cf. **32**) is immediately preceded by *l*, *n*, *r*, rarely *m*.
- c.* When the word to be apocopated is not followed by one beginning with two consonants or (generally speaking) a vowel, and is not (in prose) a plural substantive.
- d.* When the two words are closely bound together without pause or break in the sense. EXAMPLES: *andar(e) via* 'to go away,' *nobil(e) donna* 'noble lady,' *bèn(e) fatto* 'well done,' *ci siam(o) tutti* 'we are all here,' *caval(lo) di battaglia* 'war horse,' *un(o) bel(lo) giorno* 'a fine day.'

## 31. Words regularly apocopated are —

a. Those ending in *-le*, *-lo*, *-llo*, *-ano*, *-eno*, *-ino*, *-ono*, *-nno*, *-ne*, *-re*, *-ero*. EXAMPLES: *cattedral(e)* 'cathedral,' *vuql(e)* 'he will,' *figliuql(o)* 'son,' *castel(lo)* 'castle,' *man(o)* 'hand,' *fren(o)* 'check,' *fin(o)* 'till,' *fan(no)* 'they do,' *diran(no)* 'they will say,' *buqn(o)* 'good,' *viqn(e)* 'comes,' *mar(e)* 'sea,' *par(e)* 'appears,' *pensiqr(o)* 'thought.'

b. The words *uqm(o)* 'man,' *insiqm(e)* 'together,' *un(o)* 'one' and its compounds, *doman(i)* 'to-morrow,' *fuqr(i)* 'outside,' *iqr(i)* 'yesterday,' *pqrver(o)* (only before a vowel) 'poor,' *par(o)* 'pair'; the first person plural of verbs in *-mo* (not *-mmo*), as *sarqm* 'we shall be,' *andavam* 'we were going'; and the third person plural in *-ro*, as *sqrpper(o)* 'they knew,' *potrqrbb(er)o* 'they might,' *fqrss(er)o* 'they would be.'

c. Titles before proper names, or one proper name before another. EXAMPLES: *dottqr(e) Antqnio* 'Doctor Anthony,' *siqnqr(e) Bondi* 'Mr. Bondi,' *Giovan(ni) Battista* 'John the Baptist,' *Val(le) di Chiana* 'Valley of the Chiana,' *Antqn(io) Piqrto* 'Anthony Peter,' *Piqr(o) Antqnio* 'Peter Anthony.'

d. In poetry: plurals in *-ni*, *-ri*; nouns in *-iro*, *-oro*, nouns and adjectives in *-aro*, *-uro*, and adjectives in *-ero*; *parql(e) sdruciole* in *-re*; and *van(o)* 'vain,' *san(o)* 'sane,' *vqr(o)* 'true,' *color(o)*, *costqr(o)*, 'those.' EXAMPLES: *can(i)* 'dogs,' *pensiqr(i)* 'thoughts,' *acciar(o)* 'steel,' *sicur(o)* 'sure,' *dur(o)* 'hard,' *gir(o)* 'circle,' *lavqr(o)* 'labor,' *fiqr(o)* 'proud.'

32. Irregular apocopations are *qr(a)* 'hour' and its compounds, *suqr(a)* 'Sister' (a nun), *fra(te)* 'Brother' (a friar), *sqr(a)* 'only,' *san(to)* 'Saint,' and *gran(de)* 'large' (cf. 85). EXAMPLES: *qr ora* 'just now,' *finqr* 'until now,' *suqr Maria* 'Sister Mary,' *fra Girqlamo* 'Brother Jerome,' *una sqr vqlta* 'just once,' *san Luigi* 'Saint Louis,' *gran caso* 'important circumstance.'

33. Apocopation does not affect the tonic accent. As it may be used in poetry before a pause or at the end of a line, apocopation provides "masculine endings" which otherwise could scarcely occur in Italian verse.

## IX. VARIANT FORMS OF WORDS

34. For a good many words there are two different, equally correct forms, though one will be generally preferred, and the other often confined in its use to Tuscany. Compare English *crawfish*, *crayfish*; *toward*, *towards*; *special*, *especial*. Among such variable words are —

altèro, altièro, 'haughty'; àngelo, àngiolo, 'angel'; castigo, gastingo, 'punishment'; ceppo, cippo, 'log'; ciliègia, ciriègia, 'cherry'; crōnaca, crōnica, 'chronicle'; decembre, dicembre, 'December'; denaro, danaro, 'money'; domani, dimani, 'to-morrow'; forestière, forestièro, 'foreigner'; nativo, natìo, 'native'; nèrvo, nèrbo, 'nerve'; nuovo, nõvo, 'new'; Pancrazio, Brancazio, 'Pancras'; pellegrino, peregrino, 'pilgrim'; rinunziare, rinunciare, 'to renounce'; riva, ripa, 'bank'; sciròcco, siròcco, 'sirocco.'

In addition to such sporadic divergences, there are certain principles of variation, as follows:

35. **Aphesis.** The first syllable is sometimes dropped, as in *evangèlo*, *vangèlo*, 'gospel'; *arèna*, *rèna*, 'sand.'

36. **Syncope.** The middle syllable is sometimes dropped. **EXAMPLES:** *òpera*, *òpra*, 'work'; *anderò*, *andrò*, 'I shall go'; *tògliere*, *tòrre*, 'to take away'; *onorèvole*, *orrèvole*, 'honorable.'

37. **Apocope.** The last syllable may be dropped, as in *fède*, *fè*, 'faith'; *piède*, *piè*, 'foot'; *umiltade*, *umiltà*, 'humility'; *su* and *giù* 'up' and 'down' for *suso* and *giuso* (now current.



only in poetry); and (in poetry only) *amaro*, *finiro*, *temëro* (cf. 48, c), etc., for *amārono*, *finīrono*, *temērono*, 'they loved,' 'they finished,' 'they feared.'

**38. Prefixion of *i*.** When a word ending in a consonant is followed by one beginning with *s impure* (cf. 59, a, 1), an *i* is prefixed to the latter to prevent the juxtaposition of too many consonants. This is more common in speaking than in writing. **EXAMPLES:** *in i-stiva* 'in the hold,' *per i-scherzo* 'in jest.'

**39.** Conversely, the words *a* 'to,' *e* 'and,' *o* 'or,' and *su* 'on,' may become respectively *ad*, *ed*, *od*, *sur* before a word beginning with a vowel, especially if it is the same one. **EXAMPLES:** *ad esempio* 'for example,' *ad Anna* 'to Anna,' *ed ebbe* 'and he had,' *o ferro od oro* 'either iron or gold,' *sur una tāvola* 'on a table.'

**40. Metathesis.** Letters may be reversed, as in *sūcido* for *sūdicio* 'dirty.'

## X. CAPITALIZATION

**41.** Italian capitalization is in general governed according to the same rules as English, but presents the following differences of usage:

**42.** Capitals are usually omitted, contrary to English usage,

*a.* From all but the first word of book titles, unless the title consist of but one word and that a noun. **EXAMPLES:** *Alcune relazioni del Fōscolo con la letteratura tedesca* 'Certain Relations between Foscolo and German Literature,' *Il Santo* 'The Saint.'

*b.* From proper adjectives, sometimes even used substantively. **EXAMPLES:** *il pōpulo toscano* 'the Tuscan people,' *le guerre napoleōniche* 'the Napoleonic wars,' *il linguaggio manzōniano* 'the language of Manzōni,' *i Tedeschi* 'the Germans.'



*c.* From titles, when followed by a proper name. **EXAMPLES:** *don Carlo* 'Don Carlos,' *dottor Antonio* 'Doctor Anthony,' *il principe Umberto* 'Prince Humbert,' *il signor Martini* 'Mr. Martini.'

*d.* From the names of the days and the months. **EXAMPLES:** *venerdì* 'Friday,' *luglio* 'July.'

*e.* In most contemporary poetry, from the first word of each line, unless the rules of prose would call for it.

**NOTE.** Usage in Italian books will often be found to vary considerably from these rules, which have, however, the support of the best authorities.

**43.** Capitals are used, though not invariably, for the more formal pronoun of address which is borrowed from the third person (cf. 65, *a*). **EXAMPLES:** *Lèi, Ella, Loro* 'you' (singular and plural), *Suo* 'your,' *Lè* 'to you.'

## XI. ARCHAIC AND POETIC FORMS

**44.** In Italian poetry and old Italian occur many forms unfamiliar to the student of modern Italian prose. The following are the most important of such variations:

**45.** In general, open *e* and *o* often replace respectively *ie* and *uo*: *tèn* for *tiene*, *lòco* for *luogo*, etc.; and *e* is often added to a final vowel, as in *èe* for *è*, *tue* for *tu*, etc.

**46. Nouns.** Nouns in *-allo*, *-ello*, often form their plural in *-ai*, *-agli*, *-èi*, *-egli*: *cavallo*, *pl. cavai*, *cavagli*; *fratello*, *pl. fratèi*, *fratègli*.

**47. Pronouns.** The forms *mèl*, *tèl*, *sèl*, etc. are very common substitutes for *mè lo*, *tè lo*, *sè lo*, etc.; *mèn*, *tèn*, etc., for *mè ne*, *tè ne*, etc.; and *nòl* for *nòn lo*.

**48. Verb-Endings in Particular Tenses.**

*a.* Present Indicative: in the first person plural, **-iemo, -emo, -imo**, for **-iamo**.

*b.* Past Descriptive: in the first and third persons singular of the second and third conjugations, **v** is often dropped: **temea** for **temeva**, **segua** for **seguiva**.

*c.* Past Absolute: in the third singular, **temeo**, **finio**, for **temè**, **finì**; in the third plural, **trovaro**, **trovar**, **trovarno**, **trovōrono**, **trovōnno**, for **trovārono**; **colpiro**, **colpir**, **colpinno**, for **colpirono**; **temero**, **temer**, **temēnno**, for **temērono**.

*d.* Future: in the first person singular, **-aggio**, **-abbo**, for **-o**; in the third plural, **-āggiono**, **-ābbono**, for **-anno**: **troveraggio**, **troverabbo**, for **troverò**; **finirāggiono**, **finirābbono**, for **finiranno**, etc.

*e.* Past Future: in the first and third singular, **-ia** for **-ei**, **-ebbe**; **troveria** for **troverei**, **troverebbe**, etc.; in the third plural, **-iano**, **-ēbbono**, for **-ēbbero**: **finiriano**, **finirēbbono**, for **finirēbbero**, etc.

*f.* Present Subjunctive: in the singular, **e** for **i** in the first conjugation, **i** for **a** in the second and third: **trove**, **finischi**, **temi**, for **trovi**, **finisca**, **tema**.

*g.* Past Subjunctive: in the first person singular, **e** for **i**: **trovasse**, **finisse**, **temesse**, for **trovassi**, **finissi**, **temessi**. In the third plural, **-āssino**, **-āsseno**, **-āssono**, for **-āssero**; **-ēssino**, **-ēsseno**, **-ēssono**, for **-ēssero**; and **-īssino**, **-īsseno**, **-īssono** for **-īssero**: **trovāssino** etc., **finīssino** etc., **temēssino** etc.

*h.* Past Participle: in the first conjugation **-at-** is omitted, leaving such forms as **acconcio** for **acconciato**, **cārico** for **caricato**.

**49. Special Forms of Particular Verbs:**

*a.* **Avere**: **aggio**, **abbo**, **avo**, **aio**, for **hō**; **aggia**, **aia**, for **abbia**; **ei**, **ēbbimo**, for **ēbbi**, **avemmo**; **arò** etc. for **avrò** etc., and similar forms in the conditional.

*b.* **Dare**: **diè** for **diède**; **dièr**, **dièro**, **dièrono**, for **dièdero**.

*c. Dovere* : present indicative *deò, deì, deè, dovemo, dovete, deono* or *denno*.

*d. Èssere* : *eramo, erate*, for *eravamo, eravate*; *sem, sete*, for *siamo, siete*; *enno, en*, for *sono* (pl.); *sie, sieno*, for *sia, siano*; *u* for *o* in the past absolute and past subjunctive; *furo, fero*, for *fūrono*, and *fue* for *fu*; *fia, fiano* or *fieno*, for *sarà, saranno*; *fora, fōrano*, for *sarèi, sarèbbe, sarèbbero*; *sendo* for *essendo*; *suto, essuto, issuto*, for *stato*.

*e. Fare* : *faci, face*, for *fai, fa*; a past descriptive *fea* etc.; a past absolute *fei, festi, fè* or *feo, femmo, feste, fèrono, fer, fenno*.

*f. Potere* : a past future *poria* etc.; *puete, pønno*, for *può, pōssono*.

*g. Volere* : *vuogli* or *vuoli* for *vuoi*; *volsi, volse, vōlsero*, for *vōlli, vōlle, vōllero*.

## XII. VERSIFICATION

50. Italian versification is reckoned not in feet but in syllables. These are grouped and divided by the "rhythmic accent," which falls at least twice in every line, on the penultimate syllable and at least one other.

Nel mezzo del cammin di nostra vita.

51. An Italian verse or line, like an Italian word, is either *piano*, *tronco*, or *şdrūcciolo*, according as the closing accent falls on the penultimate, ultimate, or antepenultimate syllable. But all lines are counted as *piani*, since if represented in musical notation the time would be the same; that is, the accented ultimate of a *verso tronco* would equal the two syllables of a *verso piano*, while the last two short syllables of a *verso şdrūcciolo* would be no longer than the final unaccented one of a *verso piano*. For example, in the following stanza each line is counted as having seven syllables :

Tu che, da tanti sēcoli,  
 Soffri, combatti e prēghi;  
 Che le tue tēde spiēghi  
 Dall' uno all' altro mar.

52. **Elision** always occurs when a word ending in a vowel is followed by a word beginning with one, and the two syllables are counted, not pronounced, as one. There are two in the above selection, *combatti e* and *uno all'*, and it would be difficult to find a stanza in which there was no example of elision.

53. **Diphthongs** are counted as two syllables at the end of a verse, and usually as one in the middle. But those which begin with *i* are often, and others sometimes, counted as two in the middle of a verse, and are then marked with a diæresis.

Di tal superbia qui si paga il fio.  
 Se buḡna oraziḡn lui non aīta.

a. **Triphthongs** are counted usually as one syllable.

E cōme già sēi de' miēi rari amici.

54. **Number of Syllables.** Italian verses are classified as either even-numbered (*parisillabi*) or odd-numbered (*imparisillabi*) according as the number of syllables is even or odd. The *parisillabi* are often *tronchi* but rarely *sdrūccioli*; the *imparisillabi* may be either. There are four varieties of each:

a. **Parisillabi:**

The four-syllabled verse (*quaternārio*) and the eight-syllabled (*ottonārio*) give the effect of trochaic meter.

Bēn è vēr, quando è giocondo  
 Ride il mondo,  
 Ride il ciēl quando è gioiōso;  
 Bēn è vēr; ma non san pōi  
 Cōme vōi  
 Fare un riso grazīoso.

1. The six-syllabled verse (*senārio*) is amphibrachic :

Stringiamci a coorte,  
Siam pronti alla morte :  
Italia chiamò !

2. The ten-syllabled verse (*decasillabo*) is anapæstic :

Oh giornate del nostro riscatto !  
Oh dolente per sempre colui  
Che da lunge, dal labbro d' altrui,  
Come un uomo straniero, le udrà.

### b. Imparisillabi :

1. The seven-syllabled (*settenārio*) and eleven-syllabled (*endecasillabo*) verses are the most employed of all : the latter is iambic in effect ; the former, either iambic or anapæstic. The two are often combined :

Non è questo un morire,  
Immortal Margherita,  
Ma un passar anzi tempo a l' altra vita.

Benigne stelle che compagne fêse  
Al fortunato fianco  
Quando 'l bel parto giù nel mondo scorse !

2. The *endecasillabo*, or heroic measure (*verso erōico*), when *tronco*, corresponds exactly to a line of English blank verse ; when normally *piano*, to one of feminine ending. It may also be *sdrucchiolo*.

O folla Aragne, sì vedea io te  
Già mezza aragna, trista in su gli stracci  
Dell' òpera che mal per te si fè'.

Innanzi assai ch' all' òpra inconsumabile  
Fosse la gente di Nembròt attenta.

3. The five-syllabled verse (*quinārio*), when accented on the first syllable, gives the effect of a dactyl plus a spondee ; when



accented on the second, of an iamb plus an amphibrach. It is sometimes combined with the *endecasillabo*.

Oh bell' andare  
Per barca in mare  
Verso la sera  
Di primavera!

Chièser mercè de l'alta stërpe e de la  
Gloria di Rôma.

4. The nine-syllabled verse (*novenario*) is variously accented, but never very effective or musical.

Fu sposa, fu madre felice.  
Quel rubino ch'è il mio tesoro.  
A duro stral di ria ventura.

**55. Rhyme.** The rhyme-word is *piano* or *tronco*, rarely *sdrucchiolo*. Close and open vowels may rhyme with each other, and the voiced and unvoiced *ş* and *s*; but not *z* and *z*. The same word may be used as rhyme-word, if taken in a different meaning. Thus *chièsa* may rhyme with *impresa*, *roşa* with *gloriosa*, *pure* 'pure' with *pure* 'however,' but not *mezza* with *tenerèzza*.

**56. Blank Verse** is written in unrhymed *endecasillabi*, and is called *verso sciolto*.

**57. Strophes.** Strophes are formed of lines combined in a certain pattern. They are often grouped in pairs, their final verses rhyming on a word that is *tronco*, which makes a ringing sonorous effect among the more numerous feminine endings. The following are the commoner forms of strophe:

**Tërza rima**, the measure of the "Divina Commedia," is made up of *endecasillabi* grouped in threes, and rhyming *aba bcb cdc*.

The **quartina** consists of four lines rhyming *abab* or *abba*.

The **sestina** consists of six lines, rhyming **abbacc** or **ababcc**.

**Ottava rima** consists of eight *endecasillabi*, rhyming **abababcc**.

The sonnet is the sonnet of English poetry, composed of *endecasillabi*. The octave must have but two rhyme-sounds, rhyming either **abba** on the Petrarchan or **abab** on the Shakespearean model.

The Petrarchan strophe is an extremely complicated arrangement of *endecasillabi* and *settenari*, in usually from nine to twenty lines. It is divided into two parts: the first, of six or eight lines, with intricate rhyme-scheme; the second an arrangement of tercets and couplets, connected with the first by a line (called the **chiave**, 'key') which rhymes with the one preceding it.

The old **sestina** is a form composed of six stanzas of six lines each, and a seventh stanza of three lines. These are unrhymed, but the end words of the first stanza are repeated in all the others, after a fixed order, the last word in the first line of each stanza being identical with that of the last line of the one preceding. The seventh stanza has one of these words at the end, and one in the middle, of each of its three lines.

## LESSON I

### INDEFINITE ARTICLE

#### 58. Indefinite Article.

##### MASCULINE SINGULAR

un  
uno

##### FEMININE SINGULAR

una  
un'

59. **Masculine.** *a.* **Un** is used before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel, or with any consonant except *s impure* or *z*.

**Un** padre  
**Un** uomo

A father  
A man

1. The *s impure* is *s* followed by another consonant.

*b.* **Uno** is used before a masculine noun beginning with *s impure* or *z*.

**Uno** schioppo  
**Uno** zio

A gun  
An uncle

60. **Feminine.** **Una** is used before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.

*a.* **Una** becomes **un'** before a vowel.

**Una** madre  
**Un'** ora

A mother  
An hour

61. The article in Italian, whether definite or indefinite, must be repeated before each noun.

Un ragazzo e **una** ragazza

A boy and girl

**62. Interrogative sentences.** *a.* The interrogative is commonly expressed merely by the inflection of the voice and the use of the interrogation point.

**La donna** parla a un ragazzo            The woman speaks to a boy  
**La donna** parla a un ragazzo?        Does the woman speak to a boy?

*b.* The order may be inverted, the subject being thrown at the very end of the sentence.

Parla a un ragazzo **la donna**?        Does the woman speak to a boy?  
 Torna a mezzogiorno **il padre**?        Does the father return at noon?

1. 'Do' or 'does,' used as auxiliary, does not exist in Italian.

### 63. Present Indicative of the Three Conjugations.

'I find,' 'am finding,' etc. 'I lose,' 'am losing,' etc. 'I understand,' etc.

trovo	troviamo	perdo	perdiamo	capisco	capiamo
trovi	trovate	perdi	perdete	capisci	capite
trova	trovano	perde	perdono	capisce	capiscono

*a.* Subject pronouns are usually omitted, except when required for clearness or emphasis.

### VOCABULARY

<b>un bambino</b> a child, little boy	<b>una bambina</b> a child, little girl
<b>un libro</b> a book	<b>una madre</b> a mother
<b>un padre</b> a father	<b>una scuola</b> a school
<b>un panchetto</b> a stool, footstool	<b>a, ad</b> ( <i>cf.</i> 39) to, at
<b>uno schioppo</b> a gun	<b>dice</b> ( <i>fr.</i> <i>dire</i> , <i>irr.</i> ) says
<b>uno scolare</b> a pupil	<b>dicono</b> (they) say
<b>parlare</b> speak	<b>dopo</b> after
<b>tornare</b> return	<b>mezzogiorno</b> noon
<b>finire</b> finish	<b>Buon giorno!</b> Good morning!
<b>rispondere</b> reply	<b>Buona sera!</b> Good evening!
<b>ecco</b> here is, here are	<b>e, ed</b> ( <i>cf.</i> 39) and
<b>il</b> the ( <i>m.</i> )	<b>la</b> the ( <i>f.</i> )
<b>tutti</b> all, everybody ( <i>pl. verb</i> )	

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

Buon giorno! — dice un bambino. — Buon giorno! — rispondono il padre e la madre. — Buon giorno! — dicono tutti. Il bambino torna a scuola e dice — Buon giorno! — ad uno scolare. Dopo mezzogiorno tutti dicono — Buona sera!

## II

1. Finisco; torna; perdiamo; rispondete; trovano; capiscono; finisci. 2. Ecco un libro ed un panchetto. 3. Ecco un bambino ed una bambina. 4. Finiamo un libro. 5. Parla ad uno scolare. 6. Risponde — Buona sera! 7. Un padre e una madre parlano. 8. Ecco uno scolare. 9. Uno scolare finisce un libro. 10. Trovate uno schioppo. 11. Perde un libro. 12. Rispondono un bambino e una bambina.

## III

1. Here is a little girl. 2. Here are a book and a gun. 3. I finish, you (*pl.*) understand; thou repliest; they lose, he speaks; thou speakest, he understands, we are returning, we understand. 4. The mother speaks to a little boy. 5. They are replying "Good evening!" 6. A pupil is returning to school. 7. I lose a gun. 8. A mother and a little boy are speaking. 9. They are speaking to a pupil. 10. We are returning to school. 11. Are you finishing a book? 12. The little girl finds the footstool.



## LESSON II

PRESENT OF *AVERE* AND *ESSERE*64. Present Indicative of *avere* 'have' and *essere* 'be.'

I have, etc.		I am, etc.	
ho	abbiamo	sono	siamo
hai	avete	sei	siete
ha	hanno	è	sono

## 65. Personal Pronouns, Nominative Forms (cf. 63, a).

io I	noi we
tu thou	voi you
egli, ei, he	ègolino, <i>oftener</i> essi, they ( <i>m.</i> )
ella she	èlleno, <i>oftener</i> esse, they ( <i>f.</i> )
esso, essa, he, she, it	essi, esse, they

a. The third person is the one commonly used in address in Italian, to persons not members of one's family; the singular for one person, the plural for more than one.

**Ha** finito il libro?

Have you (*sg.*) finished the book?

**Hanno** comprato la casa?

Have you (*pl.*) bought the house?

\***I.** The pronoun is the feminine **Èlla**, or more familiarly **Lèi** (pl. **Loro**; usually written with capitals), even when a man is addressed. It stands for some feminine noun like **Vossignoria** 'Your Lordship,' formerly used in respectful address.

Lèi è ammalato, Signore?

Are you ill, sir?

**b.** The second singular is used to a member of one's family, to the Deity, to a small child, to a woman house-servant, or to animals. Its plural is **voi**.

\***c.** The second plural is used to a manservant, a peasant, a cabman, or a porter; but in the south of Italy it is the form in general use except for especial formality.

\**d.* The second person, singular or plural, is used by the author to his reader.

*e.* In these exercises use the third person in address, unless it is indicated that the person spoken to is a small child or a member of the speaker's family.

Buon giorno, Signore! Come *sta*? Good morning, sir. How do you do?

Hai il libro, Giovannino? Have you the book, Johnny?

Mamma, vieni qua Mother, come here

Tōrnano a mezzogiorno, Signori? Do you return at noon, gentlemen?

*f.* 'It is' with a personal pronoun ('It is I,' 'It is you,' etc.) is rendered by a form agreeing in person with the pronoun.

È Lei? Is it you?

Sei tu? Is it thou?

Siamo noi It is we

Chi è là? Sono io Who is there? It is I

**66. Omission of the Indefinite Article.** The indefinite article is omitted in the predicate after *èssere* (and *fare*, *diventare*) before an unmodified noun of rank, profession, or nationality, except in answer to 'Who is he?'

Chi è questa signora? Who is this lady?

È una contessa She is a countess

Questa signora è contessa This lady is a countess

Questo signore è un mēdico inglese This gentleman is an English physician

NOTE. For the syntax of the indefinite article, cf. Lesson XXV.

## VOCABULARY

un Americano	an American ( <i>m.</i> )	italiano	Italian
un' Americana	an American ( <i>f.</i> )	americano	American
un cognato	a brother-in-law	di	of
una cognata	a sister-in-law	questo	this ( <i>before masc. noun</i> )
una contessa	a countess	questa	this ( <i>before fem. noun</i> )
un fratello	a brother	no	no
un Italiano	an Italian ( <i>m.</i> )	non	not ( <i>precedes the verb</i> )
un' Italiana	an Italian ( <i>f.</i> )	sì	yes
un professore	a professor	chi?	who?
una signora	a lady, a married woman	o	( <i>cf. 39</i> ) or
Signora	used in address	amare	love
una signorina	a young lady, an unmarried woman	avere paura (di)	be afraid (of)
Signorina	used in address	portare	carry
un signore	a gentleman	preferire	prefer
Signore	used in address	temere	fear
una sorella	a sister		
uno zio	an uncle		
una zia	an aunt		

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Chi è questo signore? 2. È un professore. 3. Ha una sorella? 4. No, ha un fratello e una cognata. 5. Finisce il libro, Signora? 6. Il bambino ha il padre, la madre, e uno zio. 7. Il bambino e la bambina sono a scuola. 8. Siamo a scuola? 9. No, non siamo a scuola. 10. Il signore e la signora amano il bambino. 11. Tornano a mezzogiorno, Signore? No, non torniamo. 12. La bambina capisce. 13. È Americana, Signorina? 14. No, non sono Americana, sono Italiana. 15. Ecco uno scolare. 16. Chi è? Sono io. 17. Ecco un signore. È professore? Sì, è un professore americano. 18. Tutti parlano a questa bambina. 19. Preferiamo il libro. 20. Non hanno paura.

## II

1. Are you an Italian, Madam? 2. No, I am an American.  
 3. This little girl is afraid of a gun. 4. Are they at school? 5. No, they are not at school. 6. Have you (*pl.*) a brother? 7. No, we have a brother-in-law and a sister-in-law. 8. Are you speaking to a professor? 9. Yes, I am speaking to a professor. 10. Who is this lady? She is an Italian. 11. Is she a countess? 12. Yes, she is an Italian countess. 13. Does the professor prefer a gun or a book? 14. The lady has an uncle.

## LESSON III

## PLURAL OF NOUNS

**67. Plural of Nouns.** *a.* Nouns ending in *o* or *e* in the singular change *o* or *e* to *i* in the plural.

Un ragazzo, due ragazzi	A boy, two boys
Un inglese, dieci inglesi	An Englishman, ten Englishmen
Una lezione, tre lezioni	One lesson, three lessons

*b.* Feminine nouns ending in *a* in the singular change *a* to *e* in the plural.

Una finestra, nove finestre	A window, nine windows
-----------------------------	------------------------

1. Masculine nouns in *a* take *i* in the plural.

Un socialista, quattro socialisti	A socialist, four socialists
-----------------------------------	------------------------------

NOTE. For full treatment of plural of nouns, see Lesson XXX.

**68. Compound Tenses.** *a.* The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are formed by means of *avere* (cf. 120). Certain others take *essere* (cf. 96, 98).

*b.* The past participle of verbs of the first conjugation ends in *-ato*, of the second in *-uto*, and of the third in *-ito*,

these terminations being substituted respectively for the infinitive endings **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire**.

Ho finito il libro	I have finished the book
Abbiamo visitato la famiglia	We have visited the family
Hanno creduto la storia	They have believed the story
Il padre è tornato	The father has returned

### 69. Future Indicative of Model Verbs: 'I shall find,' etc.

troverò	troveremo	perderò	perderemo	capirò	capiremo
troverai	troverete	perderai	perderete	capirai	capirete
troverà	troveranno	perderà	perderanno	capirà	capiranno

### VOCABULARY

un bicchiere	a glass	aiutare	help ( <i>takes a before infinitive</i> )
un coltello	a knife	apparecchiare	set table
un cucchiaio ( <i>pl. cucchiari</i> )	a spoon	consistere ( <i>in</i> )	consist ( <i>of</i> )
una forchetta	a fork	distendere ( <i>irr. p. abs. and p. p.</i> )	spread
un piatto	a plate, dish	mettere ( <i>irr. p. abs. and p. p.</i> )	put, put on
una posata	knife, fork, and spoon, a place at table	prima di	before ( <i>time</i> )
una tavola	a table	domani	to-morrow
una tovaglia	a tablecloth	oggi	to-day
un uomo ( <i>pl. uomini</i> )	a man	in in, into	
ma	but	su ( <i>cf. 39</i> )	on
due	two		
quattro	four		

### EXERCISE

#### I

1. La Flora è una buona (*good*) bambina. 2. Aiuterà la mamma ad apparecchiare. 3. Apparecchia prima di mezzogiorno. 4. Domani torneranno due uomini e un bambino. 5. Distende la tovaglia, mette quattro piatti, quattro bicchieri, e quattro posate. 6. Una posata consiste in un coltello, una forchetta, e un cucchiaio. 7. Un



bambino e una bambina distenderanno la tovaglia. 8. Metterò uno schioppo sur una tavola. 9. Troveremo il libro prima di domani. 10. Bambini, apparecchierete a mezzogiorno.

## II

1. One mother, two mothers; a glass, four glasses; a pupil, four pupils. 2. I shall understand, thou wilt put, they will reply, we shall return. 3. They will return to-morrow. 4. We shall set the table before noon. 5. Children, you will lay the cloth. 6. I shall put on four knives, two forks, two glasses, and one spoon. 7. Shall you return before to-morrow, sir? 8. Uncle, shall you bring a gun and a knife? 9. They will return to school and finish the book. 10. Two men are speaking to a pupil. 11. They have set the table, but we have lost two knives. 12. They will help Maria to find the fork.

## LESSON IV

## DEFINITE ARTICLE

## 70. The Definite Article. Forms :

MASC. SING.	MASC. PLUR.	FEM. SING.	FEM. PLUR.
il	i	la	le
lo	gli		
l'	{ gli gl'	l'	{ le l'

71. **Masculine.** *a.* Il, i, are used before masculine nouns beginning with any consonant except *s impure*, *z*, or *gn*.

Il letto, i letti

The bed, the beds

*b.* Lo, gli, are used before masculine nouns beginning with *s impure*, *z*, or *gn*.

Lo Spagnuolo, gli Spagnuoli

The Spaniard, the Spaniards

Lo zio, gli zii

The uncle, the uncles

Lo gnocco, gli gnocchi

The dumpling, the dumplings

\*1. For **gli** is often substituted **li** before words in which the syllable **gli** occurs.

Lo scoglio, **li** scogli                      The reef, the reefs

\*2. For **i** is substituted **gli** before the plural of **dio**.

Il dio, **gli** dei (cf. § 179, c)              The god, the gods

**c. L', gli**, are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' autore, **gli** autori                      The author, the authors

1. **Gli** becomes **gl'** when the vowel is **i**.

L' imperatore, **gl'** imperatori              The emperor, the emperors

\***d.** The form **li** often occurs in dates.

Li 8 dicembre                              The eighth of December

**72. Feminine. a. La, le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant.

La seggiola, **le** seggiole                      The chair, the chairs

La stanza, **le** stanze                      The room, the rooms

**b. L', le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' ora, **le** ore                              The hour, the hours

1. **Le** becomes **l'** when the vowel is **e** unless the plural is identical with the singular.

L' era, **l'** ere                              The era, the eras

L' età, **le** età                              The age, the ages

**73. Uses of the Definite Article. a.** The definite article is required, contrary to English usage, before an abstract noun, or a noun taken in a general sense as representative of its class.

La vita è breve                              Life is short

I cavalli sono intelligenti              Horses are intelligent

La pazienza è una virtù              Patience is a virtue

La vita dell' ape                              The life of the bee

*b.* The definite article is used before the surnames of men ; and familiarly before the given names of women.

L' Ariosto fu un grande scrittore      Ariosto was a great author

La Pietrina chiama la Signora B.      Pietrina is calling Mrs. B.

NOTE. For the syntax of the definite article, see Lesson XXII.

#### 74. Past Absolute Indicative of Model Verbs: 'I found,' etc.

trovai	trovammo	perdei	perdemmo	capii	capimmo
trovasti	trovaste	perdesti	perdeste	capisti	capiste
trovò	trovãrono	perdè	perdèrono	capì	capìrono

#### VOCABULARY

l' amico ( <i>m.</i> ) friend	l' occasione ( <i>f.</i> ) opportunity
l' avvocato ( <i>m.</i> ) lawyer	la pazienza patience
la battaglia battle	la salute health
la bellezza beauty	la scommessa wager
la bussola compass, bearings	il sonno sleep
il cervello brain, mind	lo speculatore speculator
il colmo summit	la sventura misfortune
il coraggio courage	il tempo time
il denaro money	il tiranno tyrant
la forza force	la vita life
il generale general	ieri yesterday
la gioventù youth	finalmente finally
la gloria glory	stamane this morning
l' imprudente ( <i>m.</i> ) imprudent man	per for; <i>with infinitive</i> in order
l' ingrato ( <i>m.</i> ) ingrate	to
la lite lawsuit	tre three
la memoria memory	cinque five
il mondo world	tutto all, everything

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

L' uomo perde tutto in questo mondo : perde la bellezza, la gioventù, le forze, gli amici, la pazienza, il tempo, il coraggio, la gloria, l' occasione, la bussola, le scommesse, il cervello, e finalmente, per colmo di sventura, perde la vita. Gl' imprudenti perdono la salute, gli avvocati perdono le liti, i generali perdono le battaglie, i tiranni perdono il sonno, gl' ingrati la memoria e gli speculatori il denaro.

## II

1. Lo speculatore perde la scommessa. 2. Il generale, per colmo di sventura, perde l' occasione. 3. Apparecchieranno, tornarono ; consiste, distendesti, finiste, capì ; tememmo, risponderemo ; aiutò, parlano, portai, aiuterò, parlerai, temerono. 4. L' avvocato parlò ad un amico. 5. Gli scolari finirono il libro. 6. I generali perderono la battaglia.

## III

1. Did you understand the lesson yesterday, children? 2. The men lost the gun, and returned. 3. Speculators lose sleep. 4. Did you return yesterday, sir? 5. The lawyers will lose the case. 6. We have the opportunities in this world, but we lose time. 7. The pupil carried the books to school. 8. We laid the cloth and helped our mother [*la mamma*]. 9. The imprudent (men) talked to a speculator. 10. Thou returnest, he spoke, we finished ; I shall put, they carried, he will aid ; thou spokest, you returned, they feared, I found ; we are afraid.

## LESSON V

## CONTRACTION OF ARTICLE

75. **Contraction.** The prepositions *a*, *con*, *da*, *di*, *in*, *per*, and *su*, when followed by the definite article, are contracted with it to form one word as follows :

	il	i	lo	gli	la	le	l'
a to, at	al	ai <i>or</i> a'	allo	agli	alla	alle	all'
con with	col	coi <i>or</i> co'	collo	cogli	colla	colle	coll'
da by, from	dal	dai <i>or</i> da'	dallo	dagli	dalla	dalle	dall'
di of	dèl	dèi <i>or</i> dè'	dello	dègli	dèlla	dèlle	dèll'
in in, into	nèl	nèi <i>or</i> nè'	nello	nègli	nèlla	nèlle	nèll'
per for	pèl	pèi <i>or</i> pè'	pèr lo	pèr gli	pèr la	pèr le	pèr l'
su on	sul	sui <i>or</i> su'	sullo	sugli	sulla	sulle	sull'

76. The preposition must be repeated before each noun.

Parlò *allo* Spagnuolo e *al* Francese     He spoke to the Spaniard and the Frenchman

77. **The Partitive.** The partitive idea, of something less than the whole or fewer than all, expressed in English, if at all, by 'some' or 'any,' is expressed in Italian by *di* plus the definite article. It is sometimes omitted, but in good Tuscan usage is oftener expressed. (For 'some,' 'any,' used as pronouns, cf. 94, 124. Here, they are adjectives.)

Hò *dèl* pane     I have bread, I have some bread  
Ci sòno *dèi* libri sullo scaffale     There are books on the shelf

*a*. This sign of the partitive is omitted in the negative, unless the noun is modified by an adjective.

Non hò *pane*     I have no bread, I haven't any bread  
Non hò *dèl pane* bianco     I have no white bread



## b. And in enumerations.

Garibaldi non offrì ai suoi soldati  
che fame, sete, marce forzate,  
battaglie e morte

Garibaldi offered his soldiers noth-  
ing but hunger, thirst, forced  
marches, battles, and death

**78. The Possessive.** The possessive in Italian is always expressed by *di* before a noun.

La casa *di* mio padre

My father's house

L'orologio *di* Giovanni

John's watch

Ecco un quaderno; è *dello* scolare?

Here is an exercise book; is it  
the pupil's?

**79. Past Future ('should,' 'would') of Model Verbs.**

troverei

troveremmo

perderei

perderemmo

troveresti

trovereste

perderesti

perdereste

troverèbbero

troverèbbero

perderèbbero

perderèbbero

capirei

capiremmo

capiresti

capireste

capirebbero

capirebbero

## VOCABULARY

*l'acqua* (*f.*) water

*il fiore* flower

*il giardino* garden

*la mattina* morning

*il mughetto* lily-of-the-valley

*la pianta* plant, tree

*la rosa* rose

*lo scaffale* shelf

*la tazza* cup

*bella* beautiful

*fiorito* in bloom

*molto* much

*ogni* every

*annaffiare* water

*appassire* wither

*fiorire* bloom

*alzare* raise

*scendere* (*p. abs. and p. p. irr.*) de-  
scend, go down

*alle sei* at six o'clock

*ci sono* there are

*senza* without

*sette* seven

*si* (*third person refl.*) himself, her-  
self, itself, themselves

*si alza* (*refl. use of alzare*) rises

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

La Luigina ha un bel giardino tutto fiorito. Nel giardino ci sono rose e mughetti. La Luigina ama molto i fiori. Ogni mattina si alza alle sei, scende nel giardino e annaffia le piante. Le piante appassirebbero senz' acqua.

## II

1. Il padre della bambina aiutò la famiglia dello zio. 2. Mettere i coltelli colle forchette sulla tavola. 3. Ci sono dei fiori nel giardino dell' amico? 4. Portano dei libri dalla scuola. 5. Non troveremo il libro sullo scaffale? 6. I bambini non apparecchierebbero senza la mamma.

## III

1. Are there some roses on the table? 2. There are roses and lilies-of-the-valley in the garden. 3. Would the plants bloom without water? No, they would wither. 4. The little boys carried a gun from the table to the shelf. 5. By the men, to the pupils, for the little boys, for the mother, of the books, with the friend, on the footstool, in the cup. 6. Would you speak to the speculator and the lawyer? 7. We should not put the flowers with the books. 8. The uncles would go down into the lawyer's garden. 9. The pupils' mother will lay the cloth. 10. They will put the table in the garden.

## LESSON VI

## GENDER OF NOUNS

80. Gender of Nouns. *a.* Names of males are masculine ; names of females are feminine.

Il nonno	The grandfather
La donna	The woman

1. EXCEPTIONS: *guida* 'guide,' *guàrdia* 'guard,' 'policeman,' *persōna* 'person,' *recluta* 'recruit,' *sentinella* 'sentinel,' *spia* 'spy,' and *vedetta* 'sentinel,' which are feminine, although usually referring to men.

*b.* Names of objects without sex are either masculine or feminine, there being no neuter in Italian.

1. Nouns ending in *a* are feminine.

La lāmpada	The lamp
------------	----------

EXCEPTIONS: *duca* 'duke,' *monarca* 'monarch,' *poeta* 'poet,' and other words listed under Lesson XXXIV ; and words ending in *-ista*, like *artista* 'artist' and *pianista* 'pianist,' when referring to men.

2. Nouns ending in *-giōne*, *-ziōne*, and *-ūdine* are feminine.

la ragiōne	reason	la solitūdine	solitude
la conversaziōne	conversation		

3. Nouns ending in *o* are masculine.

il ginōcchio

EXCEPTIONS: *l'ēco* (of common gender) 'echo,' and *la mano* 'hand.'

4. Nouns ending in *u* are feminine.

la virtù

EXCEPTIONS: a few foreign words, like **il bambù** 'bamboo'; and some other parts of speech used substantively, as **il più** 'the most,' **per lo più** 'for the most part.'

NOTE. For further treatment of the gender of nouns, see Lesson XXXIV.

### 81. Four Tenses of *ēssere* 'be.'

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

**sono** I am  
**sei** thou art  
**è** he, she, it is  
**siamo** we are  
**siete** you are  
**sono** they are

#### PAST FUTURE

**sarei** I should be  
**saresti** thou wouldst be  
**sarebbe** he *etc.* would be  
**saremmo** we should be  
**sareste** you would be  
**sarebbero** they would be

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

**sarò** I shall be  
**sarai** thou wilt be  
**sarà** he, she, it will be  
**saremo** we shall be  
**sarete** you will be  
**saranno** they will be

#### PAST ABSOLUTE

**fui** I was  
**fosti** thou wast  
**fu** he *etc.* was  
**fummo** we were  
**foste** you were  
**furono** they were

### VOCABULARY

**la casa** house  
**a casa** home, homeward  
**il duca** duke (*pl. duchi*)  
**la festa** festival  
**la fine** end  
**la guida** guide  
**la lezione** lesson  
**la mano** hand *de mano*  
**il monarca** monarch  
**la persona** person  
**il poeta** poet  
**la porta** door

**la sentinella** sentinel  
**la settimana** week  
**la vacanza** vacation  
**la vedetta** scout  
**la volontà** will, willingness  
**battere** beat, clap  
**bisognare** (*impers.*) be necessary  
**cominciare** begin (*takes a before*  
*infin.*)  
**continuare** continue  
**imparare** learn  
**avrò** I shall have

anche also, even	quel che what, that which
bene well	otto eight
che who, which ( <i>rel.</i> )	dieci ten
come how, as	starò ( <i>from stare, irr.</i> ) I shall be
quanti, -e how many?	voglio ( <i>from volere, irr.</i> ) I wish
andremo we shall go	non è necessario it is not necessary

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

Il bambino dice :

**Lunedì.** — Voglio cominciare bene la settimana ; starò attento alle lezioni, e sarò buono.

**Martedì.** — Bisogna continuare quel che abbiamo ben cominciato. Anche oggi sarò buono.

**Mercoledì.** — Come sono contento ! Domani è giovedì, e avrò vacanza !

**Giovedì.** — Abbiamo vacanza ! Battiamo le mani !

**Venerdì.** — Oggi tornerò a scuola con molta volontà.

**Sābato.** — È la fine della settimana.

**Domēnica.** — La domenica è giorno di festa !

## II

1. Quanti giorni ci sono nella settimana ? 2. Nella settimana ci sono sette giorni. 3. Domani è lunedì ; bisognerà tornare a scuola. 4. Chi sono arrivati lunedì ? Un poeta e una sentinella. 5. I bambini imparerebbero le lezioni. 6. Saremo, sarebbero, siete, fui, sono, siamo, saranno. 7. Abbiamo vacanza il giovedì. 8. Comincerò a imparare le lezioni.

## III

1. To-morrow is Friday, and I shall learn the four lessons. 2. He would be at the door of the school at noon. 3. We shall go to school Monday, but at the end of the week we shall return home. 4. It is necessary to set the table before noon, and the



children will put on the cups with the glasses. 5. How many cups are there on the shelf? 6. Dante was an Italian poet. 7. Who are the men in the garden? They are a guide and a scout; they are speaking to the duke. 8. The children will clap their (the) hands at the end of the week. 9. The lady's flowers are in the glass; I shall put some water in the glass. 10. On Sunday it is not necessary to learn lessons.

## LESSON VII

## ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

**82.** Most adjectives end in either *o* or *e*, masc. sing.

*a.* Adjectives in *o* have the forms of the nouns in *o* and *a*: *rosso, rossi, rossa, rosse*, 'red.'

Il libro rosso

The red book

Le rose rosse

The red roses

*b.* Adjectives in *e* take *i* in the plural, but do not change for gender.

La camera grande, le camere grandi

The large room, the large rooms

Un contadino semplice, dei contadini semplici

A simple peasant, simple peasants

**83. Agreement of Adjectives.** *a.* An adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number.

Il cappello nero

The black hat

Le piccole mani

The small hands

La rosa e la mammola belle

The beautiful rose and violet

*\*b.* An adjective modifying two or more nouns of different gender is either masculine plural or in agreement with the noun nearest it.

Prati e selve vastissime

Very vast meadows and woods

1. But when referring to persons it must be in the masculine plural.

I signōri e le signōre sono partiti      The gentlemen and ladies are gone

\*c. A plural noun may take two or more adjectives in the singular instead of being repeated in the singular before each adjective.

I govērni inglese e tedesco      The English and German governments

**84. Position of Adjectives.** a. Most adjectives of size or quantity, numerals and pronominal adjectives, and usually bello, buono, solo, ūltimo, and ūnico, precede the noun.

Una pīcola scātola	A small box
Hō poco denaro	I have little money
Il primo capītolo	The first chapter
Quegli uōmini sono franceși	Those men are French

1. Numerals may follow when emphatic.

Lire 20

20 lire

b. Adjectives of shape, color, nationality, and descriptive qualities generally, participles used as adjectives, adjectives longer than their nouns, and adjectives modified by an adverb or a suffix, usually follow.

La stampa inglese	The English press
Il vestito celeste	The blue dress
La cioccolata svizzera	Swiss chocolate
La notte oscura	The dark night
Il risultato voluto	The desired result
Una persona rispettabile	A respectable person
Una bella signōra, una signōra piū bella, una signorina bellina	A beautiful lady, a more beautiful lady, a pretty young lady

1. Adjectives of characteristic may precede, when the characteristic is peculiarly intimate or usual.

La bianca neve

The white snow

\*c. When two or more adjectives modify the same noun, either both follow, or one precedes and the other follows, the less emphatic preceding.

Un palazzo antico e bello	} A beautiful ancient palace
Un bel palazzo antico	

\*d. Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow their noun. The unusual position often indicates the literal, and the usual position a more metaphorical, meaning.

Un uomo grande	A large man
Un grand' uomo	A great man
Una cara figlia	A dear daughter
Una collana cara	A costly necklace
La chiesa di santo Stēfano	The church of St. Stephen
È un uomo santo	He is a saintly man

\*e. The adjective may also be placed in the unusual position for emphasis.

85. Some Irregular Adjectives. a. The adjectives buono 'good,' bello 'beautiful,' santo 'saint,' 'saintly,' and grande 'large,' vary in the masculine on the same principle as do the articles. The forms are —

1. Before any consonant except *s impure*, sg. buon, bel, san, gran; pl. buoni, bei, santi, grandi. (Gran may also be used in the feminine singular and the masculine plural.)

Un buon soldato	A good soldier
Un bel cavallo, dei bei cavalli	A handsome horse, handsome horses
San Pāolo	Saint Paul
Una gran sala	A large hall

2. Before a vowel, sg. (m. and f.) **buon, bell', sant', grand'**; pl. (m.) **buoni, begli, santi, grandi**.

Un <b>buon</b> amico	A good friend
Un <b>bell'</b> uomo	A handsome man
<b>Sant'</b> Agostino	Saint Augustine
<b>Begli</b> uccelli	Beautiful birds
La <b>bell'</b> aria	The beautiful aria

3. Before *s impure*, in the predicate, or when placed after their noun, the full forms: sg. **buono, bello, santo, grande**; pl. **buoni, belli, santi, grandi**; **begli** with *s impure*.

<b>Buon</b> pane	Good bread
Questo pane è <b>buono</b>	This bread is good
Un <b>bello</b> spettacolo	A fine spectacle
<b>Santo</b> Stęfano	Saint Stephen
I <b>buoni</b> stivali	Good boots
<b>Begli</b> uomini	Handsome men
Gli uomini sono <b>belli</b>	The men are handsome

*b.* The following adjectives are invariable: **fu** 'the late,' 'formerly,' **pari** 'equal,' 'even,' **impari** 'unequal,' 'odd,' **più** 'many,' 'most,' and **ogni** 'every' (with no plural).

La <b>fu</b> Signora Bianchi	The late Mrs. White
Il numero <b>pari</b>	The even number
I numeri <b>impari</b>	Uneven numbers
Sono andato <b>più</b> volte a Parigi	I have been to Paris several times
Il pane di <b>ogni</b> giorno	Daily bread

## 86. The Demonstrative Adjective. (Cf. 190.)

*a.* Questo 'this.'

SINGULAR	PLURAL
questo, quest' ( <i>m.</i> )	questi ( <i>m.</i> )
questa ( <i>f.</i> )	queste ( <i>f.</i> )

**b. Quello** 'that.'

## SINGULAR

quel, quello, quell' (*m.*)  
quella, quell' (*f.*)

## PLURAL

quelli, quei, quegli  
quelle

1. **Quello** is inflected like **bello**. (Cf. 85, a.)

**87. The Interrogative Adjective.** (Cf. 191.)

a. **Quanto, quanta?** 'how much?'

**Quanti, quante?** 'how many?'

b. **Quale, quali?** 'which, which one?' 'which ones?'

c. **Che?** 'what?'

**88. Any adjective may be used substantively.**

Il **pōvero**

The poor man

a. Proper adjectives are not capitalized unless used substantively, and not invariably even then.

- La lingua **franceſe**

The French language

Ecco due **Ingleſi** (**ingleſi**)

There are two Englishmen

\*b. The substantive is understood after the adjective in a good many familiar phrases.

Per la piū **breve** (strada)

By the shortest route

Alla **deſtra** (mano)

To the right

Averla (ſorte) **peggio**

To have a worse lot

Nel (territorio) **fiorentino**

In the Florentine territory

Alla **buona** (manięra)

Familiarly, in everyday fashion

Alla (manięra) **franceſe**

In the French mode

**89. Adverbs.** (See Lesson XXXVI.)

a. Adverbs are most commonly formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine form of the adjective.

Sincero, sinceramente

Sincere, sincerely

Prudente, prudentemente

Prudent, prudently



*b.* The words **molto** 'much,' **poco** 'little,' **troppo** 'too much,' **tanto** 'so much,' and **quanto** 'as much' or 'how much,' are either adverbs or adjectives. As adjectives they have the forms of adjectives in *o*; as adverbs they are invariable.

**Molti** uōmini sono **molto** infelici

Lei è **tanto** buono, Signore

**Tanti** saluti a casa

Ho **pochi** libri; sono **troppo** cari

Ci sono **troppe** persone nella stanza

Many men are very unhappy

You are so kind, sir

Many kind regards to your family

I have few books; they are too dear

There are too many persons in the room

#### VOCABULARY

l' **āngolo** (*m.*) corner

l' **appartamento** (*m.*) apartment

la **cāmera da letto** (*m.*) bedroom

la **chiesa** church

la **cucina** kitchen, cooking

l' **invēno** (*m.*) winter

il **palazzo** palace

il **panorama** view

il **ponte** bridge

la **riva** bank, wharf

la **sala da pranzo** (*m.*) dining-room

il **salōne** parlor

la **stanza** room

la **terrazza** balcony

la **torre** tower

la **via** street

**Firenze** Florence

**Le Cascine** 'the Dairies,' public gardens of Florence

lo **Schiavone** Slav

la **piazza** square

**bello** fine, beautiful

**buono** good

**famoso** famous

**grande** large

**largo** (*pl.* larghi, larghe) wide

**lungo** (*pl.* lunghi, lunghe) long

**santo** saint, saintly

**vecchio** (*pl.* vecchi) old

**abitare** dwell, live

**guardare** look at

**passare** pass, spend

**sedere** (*irr.*) sit

**accanto** next, next door

**dinanzi a** in front of

**dove** where

**fa** makes, does (*from fare, irr.*)

**fa āngolo con** is at the corner of

**perchē** because, why

**sempre** always

**vediamo** we see

**vicino a** near

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Passiamo quest' inverno a Firenze. 2. Abbiamo un bell' appartamento vicino alle Cascine. 3. Il signore che abita nella casa accanto è un buon medico inglese. 4. Nell' appartamento ci sono sette stanze: un salone, una sala da pranzo, la cucina, e quattro camere da letto. 5. Le camere sono grandi, e il salone è bello, con una terrazza molto larga. 6. Dopo il pranzo sediamo ogni sera sulla terrazza, e guardiamo il bel panorama. 7. Vediamo la torre della chiesa di Santo Spirito, e il Ponte Vecchio famoso, ma non vediamo il Palazzo Vecchio. 8. Il palazzo dove abitiamo fa angolo colla Via Curtatone. 9. Il Palazzo Pitti è vicino al Ponte Vecchio.

## II

1. We live in a large apartment in Florence. 2. We have six rooms, with a large parlor, but a very small kitchen. 3. That man is the lawyer who lives near the Old Palace. 4. The gentleman who lives in the house next door is a lawyer. 5. There is a fine square in front of the Pitti Palace. 6. Near the church of Saint Mark in Venice is the Church of St. Stephen. 7. The Duke's palace is near the Wharf of the Slavs. 8. Handsome men are not always good; good men are not always handsome. 9. Those men live in a large palace; the rooms are large, they are long and wide. 10. Why are those ladies looking at the Old Bridge? Because it is beautiful and famous. 11. Those gentlemen are looking at the Palace of the Uffizi (*pl.*).

## LESSON VIII

## THE REGULAR VERBS

90. *a.* There are three regular conjugations, the first ending in *-are* in the infinitive, the second in *-ère* or *'ere*, and the third in *-ire*.

*b.* Table of Regular Verbs.

## INFINITIVE

trov-are 'find'                      crēd-ere 'believe, think'                      cap-ire 'understand'

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE

trov-ando                                      cred-endo                                      cap-endo

## PAST PARTICIPLE

trov-ato, -a, -i, -e                      cred-uto, -a, -i, -e                      cap-ito, -a, -i, -e

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

I find, I am finding, *etc.*

trōv-o	trov-iamo	crēd-o	cred-iamo	cap-isco	cap-iamo
trōv-i	trov-ate	crēd-i	cred-ete	cap-isci	cap-ite
trōv-a	trōv-ano	crēd-e	crēd-ono	cap-isce	cap-iscono

## PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I found, was finding, used to find, *etc.*

trov-avo, -ava	trov-avamo	cred-evo, -eva, -ea	cred-evamo
trov-avi	trov-avate	cred-evi	cred-evate
trov-ava	trov-avano	cred-eva, -ea	cred-evano, -evano
	cap-ivo, -iva, -ia	cap-ivamo	
	cap-ivi	cap-ivate	
	cap-iva, -ia	cap-ivano	

## PAST ABSOLUTE

I found, did find, *etc.*

trov-ai	trov-ammo	cred-ēi, -ētti	cred-ēmmo
trov-asti	trov-aste	cred-ēsti	cred-ēste
trov-ò	trov-ārono	cred-ē, -ētte	cred-ērono, -ēttero
	cap-ii	cap-immo	
	cap-isti	cap-iste	
	cap-ì	cap-irono	

## FUTURE

I shall find, *etc.*

trov-er-ò	trov-er-emo	cred-er-ò	cred-er-emo
trov-er-ai	trov-er-ete	cred-er-ai	cred-er-ete
trov-er-à	trov-er-anno	cred-er-à	cred-er-anno
	cap-ir-ò	cap-ir-emo	
	cap-ir-ai	cap-ir-ete	
	cap-ir-à	cap-ir-anno	

## PAST FUTURE

I should find, *etc.*

trover-ēi	trover-ēmmo	creder-ēi	creder-ēmmo
trover-ēsti	trover-ēste	creder-ēsti	creder-ēste
trover-ēbbe	trover-ēbbero	creder-ēbbe	creder-ēbbero
	capir-ēi	capir-ēmmo	
	capir-ēsti	capir-ēste	
	capir-ēbbe	capir-ēbbero	

## IMPERATIVE

Find, let him find, let us find, *etc.*

	trov-iamo		cred-iamo		cap-iamo
trōv-a	trov-ate	cred-i	cred-ete	cap-isci	cap-ite
trōv-i	trōv-ino	cred-a	cred-ano	cap-isca	cap-iscano

## SUBJUNCTIVE

(Variously rendered, according to sense)

## PRESENT

trov-i	trov-iamo	cređ-a	cred-iamo	cap-isca	cap-iamo
trov-i	trov-iate	cređ-a	cred-iate	cap-isca	cap-iate
trov-i	trōv-ino	cređ-a	crēđ-ano	cap-isca	cap-iscano

## PAST

trov-assi	trov-āssimo	cred-essi	cred-ēssimo	cap-issi	cap-īssimo
trov-assi	trov-aste	cred-essi	cred-ēste	cap-issi	cap-iste
trov-asse	trov-āssero	cred-esse	cred-ēssero	cap-isse	cap-īssero

**91. Formation of Regular Verbs.** Italian regular verbs have three principal parts: the infinitive, and the present and past participles. These all have the same stem.

*a.* All simple tenses except future and past future are formed by dropping *-are*, *-ire*, or *-ere* from the infinitive, and adding the personal endings. For compound tenses, cf. **96, 120**.

*b.* The future and past future are formed by dropping merely the final *e* of the infinitive, and adding the terminations; verbs of the first conjugation first change the *a* of *-are* to *e*.

*c.* Verbs of the third conjugation may be said to have a second stem in their inchoative form in *-isco*, from which are formed the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and the singular imperative.

**92. Imperative.** *a.* The third persons of the imperative, it will be seen, are filled in from the subjunctive.

<b>Finisca</b> il lavoro	Let him finish the work
<b>Tōrnino</b> a mezzogiorno	Let them return at noon
<b>Cređa</b> quello che dico, Signore	Believe what I say, sir



*b.* The negative of the second person singular of the imperative is formed with the infinitive.

Non <b>avèr</b> paura, Chiarina	Do not be afraid, little Clara
Non <b>apparecchiare</b> ancora, Peppina	Do not set the table yet, Josephine

**93. Past Subjunctive.** *a.* The past subjunctive is used in a condition of which the conclusion is in the past future.

Se mi <b>mandasse</b> il danaro, com- prerèi questa casa	If he <b>should send</b> (sent) me the money, I should buy this house
---	--

## VOCABULARY

l' anno ( <i>m.</i> ) year	azzurro blue
l' autunno ( <i>m.</i> ) autumn	caldo hot
il calore heat	corto short
il colore color	freddo cold
l' estate ( <i>f.</i> ) summer	primo first
il garofano carnation	ultimo last
la giornata day, period of one day	verde green
il lavoro work, task	nove nine
il mese month	due-dici twelve
il Natale Christmas	quale, -i which? which one?
la neve snow	cantare sing
il nido nest	diminuire lessen
la primavera spring	fa caldo it is hot (weather)
la stagione season	fa freddo it is cold (weather)
la terra earth	si chiudono <i>refl. use of chiudere</i> ( <i>irr.</i> ) close
la tristezza sadness	si riaprono <i>refl. use of riaprire</i> ( <i>irr.</i> ) reopen
l' uccello ( <i>m.</i> ) bird	si tinge <i>refl. use of tingere</i> ( <i>irr.</i> ) color
la vendemmia vintage	
più more, most	
se if	

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

## I MESI DELL' ANNO

**Gennaio.** — È il primo mese. Neve, freddo, e giornate corte.

**Febbraio.** — È il mese più corto dell' anno.

**Marzo.** — Comincia la primavera. L' uccello torna al vecchio nido.

**Aprile.** — La terra si tinge di verde, il cielo d' azzurro.

**Maggio.** — È il mese delle rose e dei garofani. Che festa di colori!

**Giugno.** — Finisce l' anno scolastico.

**Luglio.** — È estate. Si chiudono le scuole.

**Agosto.** — Fa molto caldo.

**Settembre.** — Il calore dell' estate diminuisce. Comincia la vendemmia e l' autunno.

**Ottobre.** — La sera e la mattina fa fresco. Si riaprono le scuole.

**Novembre.** — Questo è il mese della tristezza.

**Dicembre.** — È l' ultimo mese dell' anno, e siamo all' inverno. Ecco il freddo, ma anche la più bella delle feste: il Natale!

## II

1. Quanti mesi ci sono nell' anno? 2. Fa freddo di gennaio, ma il freddo diminuisce di marzo. 3. È primavera; gli uccelli cominciano a cantare nel giardino. 4. Le nevi d' inverno sono molto fredde. 5. Qual è la stagione calda? Fa sempre caldo d' estate. 6. Nella primavera cantano gli uccelli. 7. Cantino, Signorine, questa sera. 8. Se gli uccelli non temessero il freddo, tornerebbero più presto al nido. 9. Tornate a mezzogiorno, bambini. 10. Se il freddo diminuisse, la primavera tornerebbe. 11. Luisina, porta i piatti sulla tavola. 12. Se finissimo il lavoro prima di mezzogiorno, torneremmo a casa. 13. Se farà troppo caldo non torneremo.

III

1. There are twelve months in the year. 2. December, January, and February are the months of winter. What are the months of summer? 3. Which is the cold season? It is always cold in winter. 4. If the men should speak, would he reply? 5. Let us return home. 6. If the birds returned to the old nest, they would sing. 7. It is always very hot in August, but the heat grows less in September. 8. Do not fear the heat of summer. 9. Speak to that sentinel, sir. 10. If the cold should diminish, we should return in March. 11. If we spoke to the Italians, they would reply in Italian. 12. Little girl, do not be afraid of that gun. 13. Look, madam. 14. Go down into the garden, miss. 15. How many seasons are there in the year? 16. Reply in Italian, young ladies. 17. It is November; the days begin to be short.

LESSON IX

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

94. *a.* Accusative, Direct Object.

mi me	ci us
ti thee	vi you
lò him	li them ( <i>m.</i> )
la her	lẹ them ( <i>f.</i> )
nẹ some, any, of it, of them ( <i>cf.</i> 124)	

\*1. Instead of *ci* is often found, especially in poetry and older writings, the form *nẹ*; and sometimes *il* for *lò*.

*b.* Dative, Indirect Object.

mi to me, for me	ci to us, for us
ti to thee, for thee	vi to you, for you
gli to him, for him	
lẹ to her, for her	loro to them, for them ( <i>m. or f.</i> )

## c. Reflexive Object, Direct or Indirect.

<b>mi</b> myself, to <i>or</i> for myself	<b>ci</b> ourselves, <i>etc.</i>
<b>ti</b> thyself, to <i>or</i> for thyself	<b>vi</b> yourselves, <i>etc.</i>
<b>si</b> himself, herself, <i>etc.</i>	<b>si</b> themselves, <i>etc. (m. or f.)</i>

**95. Rules of Syntax.** *a.* These pronouns are called conjunctive, because conjoined to the verb in the relation of object. The object pronoun, whether direct, indirect, or reflexive, immediately precedes the governing finite verb (except **loro**, which always follows). If the verb is compound, the conjunctive (except **loro**) precedes the auxiliary; **loro** follows the participle.

<b>Lø</b> fa	He does it
<b>Nø</b> parla	He speaks of it
<b>Ci</b> alziamo	We get up
<b>Mi</b> ha detto la verità	He has told me the truth
<b>Lø</b> danno un mazzolino di fiori	They give her a bunch of flowers
Parliamo <b>loro</b>	We speak to them, let us speak to them
Abbiamo dato <b>loro</b> un quadro	We have given them a picture

\***I.** In literary usage **loro** will sometimes be found preceding the verb.

*b.* But if the governing verb be an infinitive, a positive imperative of the first or second person, a present participle, or a past participle used without auxiliary, then the conjunctive pronoun (except **loro**) becomes enclitic, being appended to the verb-form so as to make one word with it. **Loro** is never appended. The enclitic makes no change in the accent of the verb-form.

Viene a trovarlo	He comes to see him
Abbiamo fatto il possibile di trovarli	We have tried our best to find them

Vuol dir loro che sono arrivate delle lettere	He wishes to tell them that some letters have come
Avendolo	Having it
Avendolo detto	Having said it
Dettogli questo	This being said to him
Il dispaccio comunicatoci dal cōn- sole afferma che la guerra è stata dichiarata	The telegram communicated to us by the consul states that war has been declared
Lo punirono per averne parlato	They punished him for having spoken of it

1. *With the imperative :*

	troviāmolo		non lo perdiamo
trōvalo	trovātelo	non lo pērdere	non lo perdete
lo trōvi	lo trōvino	non lo pērda	non lo pērdano

2. The *e* is dropped from the infinitive before an enclitic pronoun (cf. 31, a).

Andiamo a trovarla	Let us go and see her
--------------------	-----------------------

VOCABULARY

bagnato wet	comprare buy
il burro butter	desiderare wish, desire
la campagna the country	favorire favor with, kindly give
la lettera letter	piacere ( <i>irr.</i> ) please, be pleasing to ; <i>mi piace</i> I like ( <i>used w. dat.</i> )
l' ombrello <i>m.</i> umbrella	per piacere please
l' orolōgio <i>m.</i> watch	riavere get back, recover
il pane bread	dica 3 <i>sg. pres. subj. and imper.</i> of dire ( <i>irr.</i> ) say, tell ( <i>takes di</i> <i>before inf.</i> )
il postino postman	vuole 3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of volere</i> ( <i>irr.</i> ) will, wish
la strada street	dia 3 <i>sg. pres. subj. and imper.</i> of dare ( <i>irr.</i> ) give
grāzie ( <i>f. pl.</i> ) thanks	sūbito at once
qua here	
fatto done, made ; <i>p. part. of fare</i> ( <i>irr.</i> )	
aver fretta be in a hurry	
la sēggiola chair	



## EXERCISE

## I

1. Le piace la campagna, Signorina? Mi piace tanto. 2. Hai perduto l' orologio? Sì, l' ho perduto. 3. Dov' è il denaro? L' abbiamo perduto; abbiamo fatto di tutto per riaverlo. 4. Le lettere portatemi dal postino erano della famiglia. 5. Parlandole per la strada, capimmo che aveva fretta. 6. Guarda, Beppino, l' ombrello è bagnato; non lo portare qua. 7. Mi favorisca il pane, Signora. Grazie. 8. Ecco un bell' orologio; bisogna comprarlo per Giuseppe. 9. Lo dia a Giovanni, e gli dica di portarlo a Giuseppe. 10. Vediamo degl' Italiani. 11. Le dice che abbiamo perduto il denaro, ma non lo creda. 12. Ne abbiamo dato a Gigi.

## II

1. Is this John's book? 2. Carry it to John, Chiarina; don't put it on the shelf. 3. Have you lost the money? Yes, I have lost it. 4. Do you wish to find it? I will help you. 5. Yes, help me to find it, please. 6. I spoke to him. She spoke to us. We spoke to them. 7. Please pass me the butter. Thank you. 8. Tell them to return before noon. 9. Put the chairs near the table; do not put them in front of the door. 10. Give us the flowers, please; do not give them to Maria. 11. Has he the money? No, carrying it home he lost it. 12. It is very hot to-day; I do not like the heat. 13. Buy some at once. 14. Don't speak of it, child.

LESSON X

THE VERB *ESSERE*

96. The Verb *Essere*, 'be.'

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
ēssere	essendo	stato
ēssere stato		essendo stato

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
sono siamo	ero, -a eravamo	fui fummo	sarò saremo
seï siete	eri eravate	foști foste	sarai sarete
è sono	era erano	fu furono	sarà saranno

PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	SECOND PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
sono stato, -a, etc.	ero stato, etc.	fui stato, etc.	sarò stato, etc.

PAST FUTURE
sarèi saremmo
sarèsti sareste
sarèbbe sarebbero

PAST FUTURE PERFECT
sarèi stato, etc.
sarèmmo stati, -e, etc.

IMPERATIVE

siamo
sii siete
sia siano

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	PAST
sia siamo	fossi fōssimo
sia siate	fossi foste
sia siano	fosse fōssero

PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
sia stato, etc.	fossi stato, etc.

**97. The Passive Voice.** *a.* The passive voice is constructed by means of the auxiliary *essere* and the past participle of the verb conjugated. It is used chiefly when the agent is expressed; otherwise the reflexive best translates the English passive. (See Lesson XII.)

L' Amērica è stata scoperta da America was discovered by Christopher Columbus  
Cristōforo Colombo

\*1. The passive may be constructed with the verbs *andare* 'go,' *venire* 'come,' *rimanere* 'remain,' but with reference rather to the state resultant from the action than to the action itself (cf. 129, 138, 149).

Va fatto così It should be done this way  
Prima che la frugale colazione Before the frugal luncheon was  
venisse imbandita, il lavoro fu served, the work was done  
terminato  
Ne rimase stupefatto He was amazed at it

### *b.* Model Passive Verb.

	INFINITIVE	
PRESENT		PERFECT
ēssere lodato, to be praised		ēssere stato lodato, to have been praised
	PARTICIPLE	
essendo lodato, being praised		essendo stato lodato, having been praised
	INDICATIVE	
PRESENT		PAST DESCRIPTIVE
sono lodato, I am praised, etc.		ero lodato, I was being praised, etc.
		PAST ABSOLUTE
FUTURE		
sarò lodato, I shall be praised, etc.		fui lodato, I was praised, etc.
PRESENT PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT
sono stato lodato, etc.		sarò stato lodato, etc.

PAST PERFECT  
ero stato lodato, *etc.*

SECOND PAST PERFECT  
fui stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST FUTURE  
sarèi lodato, *etc.*

PAST FUTURE PERFECT  
sarèi stato lodato, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE  
sii lodato, *etc.*

PRESENT  
sia lodato, *etc.*

PAST  
fossi lodato, *etc.*

PRESENT PERFECT  
sia stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT  
fossi stato lodato, *etc.*

98. All passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs (except *fare* used impersonally) are conjugated with *essere* (cf. 101).

I Cristiani primitivi fūrono perseguitati dai Romani	The early Christians were persecuted by the Romans
S' è alzato alle sette	He rose at seven
È piovuto	It has rained

99. After the auxiliary *essere*, the past participle agrees with the subject, except with reflexives (cf. 104, c, 1; 194, b).

Molte battàglie fūrono vinte dai Tedeschi	Many battles were won by the Germans
Sono venuti quei signori?	Have those gentlemen come?

VOCABULARY

la bandièra	flag	arrivare	arrive
la guèrra	war	combattere	fight
il pōpolo	people	difendere ( <i>irr.</i> )	defend
il sangue	blood	dividere ( <i>irr.</i> )	divide
il soldato	soldier	innalzare	raise
lo stato	state	insegnare	teach ( <i>insegnò</i> )
la volta	time, a time	morire ( <i>irr.</i> )	die

mostrare	show	circa	about
spārgere ( <i>irr.</i> )	scatter	disse 3 <i>sg. p. abs. of dire (irr.)</i>	say
venire ( <i>irr., p. p. venuto</i> )	come	dobbiamo 1 <i>pl. pres. ind. of</i>	
bianco ( <i>pl. bianchi, bianche</i> )	white	dovēre ( <i>irr.</i> )	must
caro	dear	la nostra	our
felice	happy	or sono	ago
il prōprio	own, one's own	quando	when
rosso	red	stesso	itself <i>etc. (not refl.)</i> , same
tutto	all	sūbito	immediately
ancōra	yet, still	vogliamo 1 <i>pl. pres. ind. of volere</i>	
cento	hundred, a hundred	( <i>irr.</i> )	wish, will
chi?	who?		

## EXERCISE

## I

## LA BANDIERA NAZIONALE

La nostra bandiera nazionale è di tre colori : bianco, rosso, verde.

Essa è il simbolo della patria, e noi dobbiamo amarla come la patria stessa. Il soldato per essa combatte, ed è felice di spargere il proprio sangue e di morire per difenderla.

La nostra bella bandiera tricolore fu innalzata la prima volta dai soldati piemontesi, circa cento anni or sono, quando l' Italia, la nostra cara patria, non era ancora tutta unita e libera.

E il popolo subito l' amò, e disse che era la più bella di tutte ; e la cantò così :

La bandiera a tre colori  
sempre è stata la più bella ;  
noi vogliamo sempre quella,  
noi vogliam la libertà !

## II

1. The national flag of the United States is of three colors : red, white, and blue. 2. The soldiers have come, carrying the flag of the state. 3. Carrying it always, they will have returned to the



war. 4. The tricolored flag was carried by the Italians in the war for [of] Independence. 5. Soldiers love their own country; they are glad to die to defend it. 6. The soldier has found the gun, but he has not yet returned. 7. Do you like the tricolored American flag? Yes, I like it.

DIGUELO

LESSON XI

CONJUNCTIVES (CONTINUED)

100. *a.* *Ecco* takes the pronouns appended in the same manner as certain parts of the verb (cf. 95, *b*).

Dov' è la mia borsa? <i>Ēccola</i>	Where is my bag? Here it is
<i>Ēccone</i>	Here is some, here are some
<i>Ēccoci</i>	Here we are

*b.* All conjunctive pronouns except *gli* and *glię* double their initial consonant when appended to a verb-form which ends in an accented vowel (cf. 5, *b*, 2; 125, *b*, 2).

<i>Dammi</i> del latte	<b>Give me</b> some milk
<i>Fallo</i> subito	<b>Do it</b> at once
<i>Stacci</i> attento	<b>Pay attention to it</b>

\*1. The following types are confined to poetic or literary use:

<i>Parlōmmi</i> , <i>for</i> <i>Mi parlò</i>	He spoke to me
<i>Porterallo</i> , <i>for</i> <i>Lo porterà</i>	He will bring it to us
<i>Guardōcci</i> , <i>for</i> <i>Ci guardò</i>	He looked at us

*c.* *La* and *Lę* are the accusative and dative cases, respectively, of *Lęi* in direct address (cf. 65, *a*), and are used to persons of either sex (but *Li*, *Le*, accusative plural, according to sex).

<i>A rivedęrla</i> , <i>Signęre</i>	Good-by, sir
<i>Cōme Lę</i> piace qęsto dōlce, <i>Signęre?</i>	How do you like this dessert, sir?
<i>A rivedęrli</i> , <i>Signęri</i>	Good-by, gentlemen

**d.** When a noun object, or an object clause, precedes the verb, it must be repeated in pronoun form, as a conjunctive object.

La carne non l' ho comprata                      The meat I haven't bought

\*1. Sometimes in conversation, for vivacity or emphasis, the order is reversed, a conjunctive pronoun preceding the verb redundantly.

L' ha visto il Duomo?                              Have you seen the Cathedral?

\*2. The dative is often used as the so-called dative of reference or concern.

M' era morta di poco la mamma              My mother had died a short time  
before

\*e. In the predicate after 'to be,' 'so' is expressed by *lo*, used even where it would be redundant in English.

Così impervî allo spîrito moderno              As impervious to the modern spirit  
come lo sono quei rozzi contadini              as are those rough peasants

1. **Lo** translates 'so' also in such phrases as the following :

Lò credo    I think so  
Speriāmolo    Let us hope so

\*f. The reflexive pronoun may be appended, but only in the third person, to the forms of the indicative in addition to those forms listed under 95, **b**.

Dicesi    It is said

\*g. A conjunctive form is sometimes used as subject of the third person. It is unstressed, and usually redundant. The forms are these :

gli, e' =  $\begin{cases} \text{egli} & \text{la} = \text{ella} \\ \text{ēglino} & \text{le} = \text{ēlleno} \end{cases}$

La non lo creda                                      Do not (you) believe it  
Le son molto eleganti                              They (f.) are very elegant

**Gli** is used before a word beginning with a vowel or **h** ; **e'**, elsewhere.



**102.** The verb 'to be' combined with the participle in '-ing,' in such English phrases as 'to be singing,' 'they are writing,' etc., is rendered in Italian by the verbs *stare* and *andare*. With *andare* the idea conveyed is more *active*, with *stare* more *static*.

Stanno cantando	They are singing
Sto leggendo	I am reading
Il ragazzo va crescendo a giorno a giorno	The boy is growing day by day
L' albero va perdendo le foglie	The tree is losing its leaves

**103. Some Uses of *da*.** The preposition *da* has many idiomatic uses :

**a.** To mean 'at the house of,' 'at,' 'to,' with a word referring to a person.

Andiamo dalla sorella mia	Let us go to my sister's
Sono andati dal guantaio	They have gone to the glover's (the glove-store)
Vuole andare da Chiara?	Do you wish to go to Clara's?
Abita da sua cognata	She lives at her sister-in-law's

**b.** With *essere*, to mean 'it is to be' with the sense of obligation or propriety. The infinitive then has often passive force.

È da sperarsi che quest' affare non andrà a finire male	It is to be hoped that this affair will not terminate badly
Era da ridere	It was an occasion for laughter

#### VOCABULARY

la cioccolata	chocolate	la sēggiola	chair
Giuseppe	Joseph	la stazione	railway station
il nonno	grandfather	aspettare	wait, wait for
la pasta	small cake	invitare	invite
il patriota	patriot	sperare	hope (spēro)
il ritratto	portrait		

due volte twice  
 a piedi on foot  
 fiorentino Florentine  
 contro against  
 per tempo early  
 da, date, *2 sg. and pl. imper. of*  
 dare  
 di' *2 sg. imper. of dire*

andato *p.p. of andare* go  
 morto *p.p. of morire* die  
 partito *p.p. of partire* go away  
 piaciuto *p.p. of piacere* please  
 rimasto *p.p. of rimanere* remain  
 sceso *p.p. of scendere* go down  
 uscito *p.p. of uscire* go out  
 venuto *p.p. of venire* come

EXERCISE

I

1. Siamo invitati a pranzo da due amici. 2. Eccoci arrivati dagli amici, che abitano vicino alla chiesa; siamo venuti a piedi. 3. Dov'è la tazza? Eccola sullo scaffale. 4. La metta sulla tavola. Non la porti in cucina. 5. L'orologio non lo trovo. 6. Ha i libri italiani che desidero? Eccoli, Signore; vuol comprarli? 7. Molti soldati sono morti nella guerra contro i Turchi. 8. Chi Le ha insegnato la lingua italiana? La lingua italiana m'è stata insegnata da un vecchio patriota italiano. 9. Erano arrivati prima di mezzogiorno i ragazzi? 10. Ecco la Luisina; dalle dei fiori. 11. È venuta una signora; bambine, portatele delle paste. 12. Dimmi, Peppina, sei stata a scuola oggi? 13. Parlandomi della famiglia, mi mostrò un ritratto della madre. 14. Ecco il nonno; bambini, dategli una seggiola. 15. Luigi è andato da Chiara, per mostrarle l'orologio che ha comprato.

II

1. I have lost John's watch, but I hope to [di] find it. 2. Our flag was made by the pupils of the old Florentine school. 3. Here is the bread, but the butter I have not bought. 4. Where is Louis's gun? There it is on the shelf. 5. Having carried it to Louis, return here at once. 6. Let us return to Joseph's; he will show us the Italian national flag which he carried in the war. 7. The soldier has found the guns, but has not yet returned. 8. The mother and aunt of the pupil have died. 9. The little girl went down into the



garden at six this morning. 10. Had John's sisters gone to the station when Mary arrived? 11. Give me some bread, little Clara; do not carry it into the kitchen. 12. The American ladies are not here; they left to-day. 13. Where is Mrs. Rossi? There she is, arrived at the station. 14. Chiarina, tell her to wait for us. 15. We should have spoken to them if they had remained. 16. Have you been in America? We have been in America twice; we liked it very much. 17. The ladies had gone out early this morning; they bought some chocolate, and have now returned to Mary's.

## LESSON XII

## REFLEXIVE VERBS

**104. Reflexive Verbs:** *a.* Reflexive verbs are those whose object is the same person as their subject.

<b>Si</b> alza	He rises ( <i>lit.</i> raises himself)
<b>M'</b> assuefò ad alzarmi alle sei	I accustom myself to rise at six

1. 'Self' reflexive (which is always the object) must not be confused with 'myself,' etc., intensive, which may be the subject and is expressed by **stesso** or **medesimo** accompanying the pronoun.

L' hò fatto <b>io stesso</b>	I did it myself
L' ha detto <b>lui medesimo</b>	He said it himself

*b.* In the plural, reflexives may have reciprocal force; if this is not clear from the context, **l' un l' altro** 'one another' may be added to emphasize reciprocal meaning.

<b>Si</b> āmano	They love themselves, they love each other
<b>Si</b> āmano <b>l' un l' altro</b>	They love each other

*c.* Reflexives are conjugated in the compound tenses with **essere** (cf. 98).

<b>Mi</b> sono pentito	I have repented
<b>Se si</b> fòssero amati	If they had loved each other

1. The participle agrees with the *direct* object (cf. 194, b, 3), which may or may not be the reflexive, personal object.

La signora s'era alzata presto

The lady had risen early

Mi sono comprati dei guanti

I have bought myself some gloves

\*2. But the strict observance of this rule offends the Tuscan ear. Tuscans make the participle agree with the personal object.

Mi sono comprato (or comprata) dei guanti

**d. Model Reflexive Verb: synopsis of *fermarsi* 'stop.'**

	PRESENT	INFINITIVE	PERFECT
fermarsi			ĕssersi fermato
		PARTICIPLE	
fermāndosi			essēndosi fermato
	PRESENT	INDICATIVE	PAST DESCRIPTIVE
mi fĕrmo	ci fermiamo		mi fermavo, etc.
ti fĕrmi	vi fermate		
si fĕrma	si fĕrmano		
	FUTURE		PAST ABSOLUTE
mi fermerò, etc.			mi fermai, etc.
	PRESENT PERFECT		PAST PERFECT
mi sono fermato, -a	ci siamo fermati, -e		mi ĕro fermato, etc.
ti sĕi fermato, -a	vi siete fermati, -e		
s'ĕ fermato, -a	si sono fermati, -e		
	FUTURE PERFECT		SECOND PAST PERFECT
mi sarò fermato, etc.			mi fui fermato, etc.
	PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT
mi fermerĕi, etc.			mi sarĕi fermato, etc.



**106. Special Uses. a.** In the third persons singular and plural, and in the infinitive and participles, the reflexive translates the English passive with agent unexpressed.

Molti libri inglesi si vëndono in Italia	Many English books are sold in Italy
Qui si parla francese	French spoken here

\***1.** The agent may even be expressed, and still the reflexive construction will be retained.

Se ne discuteva molto dal pōpolo	There was much discussion of it by the people
----------------------------------	---

**b.** The English impersonal 'one,' 'we,' 'they,' etc., and the impersonal passive, are translated by the reflexive.

Si dice	They say, it is said
Si va spesso al teatro	People often go to the theater, we often go to the theater
Si puō entrare?	May one enter?

\***1.** *Èssersi*, impersonal, takes a plural subject (cf. 194, b, 3, a):

Si è liēti il giorno di Natale	People are happy on Christmas Day
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

\***c.** Italian being a much more impersonal language than English, the reflexive often best translates also the English personal construction.

Se non Le piācciono quești guanti, si barāttano	If you do not like these gloves, you may exchange them
Dove si cōmprano i biglietti?	Where do I buy my tickets?

\***d.** In the third person singular the reflexive is peculiarly used in Tuscan familiar speech, along with the pronoun of the first person plural, with which in compound tenses the past participle agrees. 'We' in this case is not general or impersonal, necessarily.

Nòi si va sèmpre in chièsa la domēnica	We (i.e. our family, our household) always go to church on Sunday
Ci si accorse del suo arrivo	We noticed his arrival
Nòi si era allēgri ieri	We were joyful yesterday

## VOCABULARY

l' amica ( <i>pl.</i> amiche) friend ( <i>f.</i> )	accomodarsi make oneself comfortable, sit down ( <b>m' accōmodo</b> )
la giornata day, period of one day	alzarsi rise
l' inchiostro <i>m.</i> ink	chiamare call
il libraio bookseller	chiamarsi be named
la mächia spot	far colaziōne lunch
il vestito dress	fa passare shows in (makes to enter)
alle nove at nine o'clock	fermarsi stop
meno male luckily	insudiciare soil
grōsso big	lavarsi wash (oneself)
scuro dark	mēttersi put on (clothes)
	mēttersi a sedere sit down
	ricordarsi ( <b>di</b> ) remember ( <b>ricōrdo</b> )
	seguire follow

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

## LA GIORNATA DELLA NERINA

1. Ecco una cara bambina! 2. Come si chiama? Si chiama Nerina. 3. Nerina passa una giornata felice. 4. Si alza alle sei e aiuta la mamma a preparare il caffè. 5. Si mette un vestito scuro per non insudiciarlo. 6. Non si mette il vestito bianco delle feste. 7. È arrivata a scuola alle nove. 8. A scuola s'è fatte delle grosse macchie d' inchiostro sul vestitino. 9. Meno male che non era il bianco. 10. A mezzogiorno è tornata a far colazione, senza fermarsi per la strada. 11. Prima di far colazione si lava le mani. 12. I bambini non si ricordano sempre di lavarsi le mani. 13. La



sera qualcuno è arrivato. Era un' amica della mamma. 14. Nerina la fa passare, e le dice, "Buona sera, Signora. S' accomodi. Ecco una seggiola."

## II

(Use present perfect for past tenses.)

1. At what hour did you get up, ladies? 2. We got up at six; after [the] coffee we visited St. Stephen's church. 3. A little girl followed us. 4. What is your name, little girl? My name is Nerina. 5. We stopped at the bookseller's, to buy some books. 6. The bookseller spoke to us in Italian; we spoke to him in English. 7. Italian is not spoken much in the United States. 8. If Nerina did not remember the lessons, she would feel ashamed. 9. It is said that soldiers are glad to die for their country. 10. Nerina washes her hands and puts on a white dress before taking lunch. 11. She has two white dresses; she does not like (to) soil them. 12. Nerina is happy; two women friends of her [the] mother have arrived. 13. She shows them in, and says, "Good afternoon, ladies! Be seated!"

## LESSON XIII

## POSSESSIVES

107. Possessives. *a.* The forms of the possessive adjective are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
il mio	i miei } my, mine
la mia	le mie }
il tuo	i tuoi } thy, thine
la tua	le tue }
il suo	i suoi } his,
la sua	le sue } her, hers

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
il nōstro	i nōstri	} our, ours
la nōstra	le nōstre	
il vōstro	i vōstri	} your, yours
la vōstra	le vōstre	
il loro	i loro	} their, theirs
la loro	le loro	

1. Both words may precede the noun; or the article may precede and the possessive follow, suggesting intimacy in possession.

**I miēi libri; i libri miēi**

My books; my very own books

*b.* A possessive has the number and person of the possessor, but (except *loro*, invariable) agrees as to ending, in number and gender, with the thing possessed. The context usually makes clear the gender of the possessor.

Hanno venduto **la loro** casa

They have sold **their** house

Maria legge **il suo** libro

Mary is reading **her** book

Giovanni ha perduto **la sua** gram-  
mātica

John has lost **his** grammar

\*1. When there might be ambiguity, as when the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, **di lui, di lei, di loro**, with the article, may be substituted for the possessive of the third person.

Mise **il suo** anēllo nel dito **di lei**

He put **his** ring on **her** finger

Mi disse chē **il suo** figliuōlo aveva  
perduto **il di lui** orolōgio

He told me that **his** little boy had  
lost **his** (i.e., the boy's) watch

*c.* The possessive 'its,' when modifying a noun in the accusative case, is translated by **ne** and the definite article.

There is the city! I see **its** towers

Ecco la città! **Ne** vëdo **le** tōrri

**108.** The definite article is omitted from the possessive,

*a.* When it modifies a noun of family relationship, otherwise unmodified and in the singular. (Augmentatives and diminutives count as modifiers, cf. 228.)

Suo padre morì combattendo per la pātria	His father died fighting for his country
I miei figliuoli sono tutti maschiètti	My children are all boys
La mia sorella maggiore ābita a Parigi	My eldest sister lives in Paris
Il tuo fratellino sta piangendo	Your little brother is crying

*b.* When it stands alone in the predicate, with the force of an adjective ; unless it distinguishes the possession of one person from that of another.

Quella casa è sua	That house is his (or hers)
But	
Questo libro è il mio ; quell' altro è il vostro	This book is mine ; that other one is yours

*c.* When preceded by a demonstrative or interrogative adjective, a numeral, or an adjective of quantity.

Questa sua casa	This house of his
Qual suo libro ?	Which book of his ?
Tre sorelle sue ( <i>or</i> , Tre delle sue sorelle)	Three sisters of his, three of his sisters
Molti libri suoi	Many of her books

*\*d.* When it is part of a title.

Sua Maestà, Loro Altezze	His Majesty, Their Highnesses
--------------------------	-------------------------------

*\*e.* Usually in the vocative, the possessive more often following the noun.

Quello che vi dico, amico mio, è vero	What I am telling you, my friend, is true
--	--

*\*f.* In certain set phrases.

Per fortuna loro	By their good luck
In casa nostra	In our house
In camera mia	In my room
A loro volta	In their turn
Con mia gran sorpresa	To my great surprise

*g.* 'A friend of mine' and similar expressions are rendered **un amico mio, un mio amico**, etc.

Tre libri suoi	Three books of his
Una proprietà mia	An estate I own
Lo vede da un suo speciale punto di vista	He sees it from a special point of view of his own

**109.** In accordance with the greater impersonality of the Italian language (cf. **106, c**), the definite article is substituted for the possessive with nouns describing parts of the body or clothing, and often with nouns of family relationship, especially **babbo** and **mamma**. If ownership is indicated, it is by means of the dative conjunctive pronoun (cf. **105, c**). In certain familiar phrases, even the article is omitted.

Mette il denaro in tasca	He puts the money in <b>his</b> pocket
Mi sono levato il cappello	I have taken off <b>my</b> hat
Mi duole la testa	<b>My</b> head aches
Hanno sparato e gli hanno strapato un braccio	They shot, and shot away <b>one of his</b> arms
Mi racconta d'aver perduto la madre	He tells me of having lost <b>his</b> mother
Mettiti i guanti	Put on <b>your</b> gloves
Si leva il soprabito	He takes off <b>his</b> overcoat

**\*a.** **Prōprio** 'own' may intensify the possessive, or be used instead of it.

Ognuno ama <b>la prōpria</b> patria	Every one loves <b>his own</b> country
-------------------------------------	--

**\*b.** **Altrui**, which always follows the noun in prose, is an indefinite possessive, meaning 'of others.'

Agisce sempre per il bene altrui	He acts always for the good of others
Lo scendere e il salir per l' <b>altrui</b> scale	Going up and down the stairs of others

**\*c.** The possessives are used alone, with the noun understood, in a great variety of familiar phrases. Here are a few examples:

Saluta i tuoi da parte dei miei	Greet your family on behalf of mine
Ha molte persone dalla sua	He has many persons on his side
Spendo il mio nel viaggiare	I spend my money in travel
Ne fa troppe delle sue	He does too many of his characteristic ill turns
Ho avuto le mie; avrai le tue	I have had my troubles; you will have yours
Lavoro sul mio	I labor on my own land

## VOCABULARY

il babbo papa	levarsi take off (clothing)
il bosco wood	raccomandare urge, recommend; <i>takes a before a word meaning a person, di before a verb</i>
il cappello hat	sgridare scold
la cosa thing	smarrirsi lose one's way
il guanto glove	far tardi be late
il paese village, country, nation	invece on the contrary, instead
il paniere basket	potrebbero (3 pl. past fut. of potere, irr.) might
il passo step	tiene (3 sg. pres. indic. of tenere, irr.) holds
la sorellina little sister ( <i>dimin.</i> )	vanno (3 pl. pres. indic. of andare, irr.) go
destra right	
maggiore elder	
sinistro left	
svogliato listless, unwilling	

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Giannetta e Marcellina vanno alla scuola del paese. 2. Non si mettono i guanti. 3. Giannetta porta i loro libri, e Marcellina tiene il paniere con la mano sinistra. 4. La mamma e il babbo raccomandano alle due bambine di non fermarsi nel bosco. 5. Potrebbero smarrirsi e far tardi a scuola. 6. Giannetta, la maggiore, è una bambina giudiziosa; Marcellina, invece, è una piccola svogliata. 7. Ha sempre tante cose da vedere, che si ferma ogni cinque



passi. 8. Non bisogna far tardi! — dice Giannetta — Il babbo e la mamma ci sgrideranno. 9. Si levi il cappello, Signorina. Non si metta i guanti. 10. Abbiamo i nostri libri, e il loro paniere, e molte cose loro. 11. Mia madre è dalla mia sorella maggiore. 12. Dov' è il suo paniere? È sulla mia tavola.

## II

1. Marcellina is holding my basket in her right hand. 2. Do not be late to school, Marcellina; your father and mother will scold you. 3. My sisters live in Florence, but they are now at Clara's. 4. Marcellina will stop every three steps, but her elder sister would not stop. 5. The little girls would lose their way if they should stop in the wood. 6. Marcellina says to her sister, "We have not lost our way." 7. Does he like his school? 8. Is this your house? Yes, it is ours. 9. My mother is talking with my elder brother. 10. I take off my gloves. I have lost my hat. 11. My brothers are going to school. 12. There is their house. 13. Have they bought yours? 14. My brothers say the pupil has a book of mine.

## LESSON XIV

## CHANGES OF LETTERS. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

## 110. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs.

a. Verbs of the first conjugation ending in **-care** and **-gare**, **-ciare** and **-giare**, retain throughout the conjugation that sound of **c** or **g** which is heard in the infinitive.

1. Verbs in **-care** and **-gare** insert **h** after **c** or **g** before **e** or **i**: **paghi**, **cercherò**.

2. Verbs in **-ciare** and **-giare** omit **i** before **e** or **i**: **lascere**mo****, **mangi**, **cominciamo**.

*b.* Other verbs in *-iare* drop the *i*, if unaccented, before another *i*.

*Stūdio, studi, stūdino*; but *spio, spii, spīino*

*c.* Verbs of the second conjugation in *-cere* and *-gere* do not retain this sound of *c* and *g* except where it would occur naturally.

*Vincere* gives *vinco, vincono, vince, vinciamo*, etc.

*d.* Some verbs, as *giocare, rotare, sonare*, usually change *o* of the stem to *uo* wherever it takes the accent.

*Suqno, sonerò*; *giuqca, giochiamo*

*i.* Conversely, some verbs like *cuqcere, muqvere*, drop the *u* of the infinitive stem wherever the syllable containing it does not take the accent.

*Cuqco, cocqsti*; *muqve, movqndo*

**111. a.** A number of third-conjugation verbs do not have, in the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative, the inchoative forms in *-isco* etc. Such a verb is the model, *sentire*, given below.

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
<i>sento</i>	<i>sentiamo</i>	<i>senta</i>	<i>sentiamo</i>		<i>sentiamo</i>
<i>senti</i>	<i>sentite</i>	<i>senta</i>	<i>sentiate</i>	<i>senti</i>	<i>sentite</i>
<i>sente</i>	<i>sēntono</i>	<i>senta</i>	<i>sēntano</i>	<i>senta</i>	<i>sēntano</i>

*b.* The following are conjugated like *sentire* :

<i>aprire (irr.)</i> open	<i>fuggire</i> flee	<i>soffrire</i> suffer
<i>bollire</i> boil	<i>offrire (irr.)</i> offer	<i>tossire</i> cough
<i>coprire (irr.)</i> cover	<i>pentirsi</i> repent	<i>vestire</i> dress
<i>cucire (irr.)</i> sew	<i>seguire</i> follow	<i>divertire</i> amuse
<i>dormire</i> sleep	<i>servire</i> serve	

\*c. The following (and others) are conjugated both ways :

applaudire applaud	mentire lie	sortire go out
assorbire absorb	nutrire nourish	
comparire appear	partire depart	

1. **Partire** and **sortire** use the inchoative form (in **-isco** etc.) only when transitive.

**112. Uses of *da*.** The preposition **da** is used before nouns referring to persons, without article, to mean 'like,' 'in the character of,' 'characteristic of,' 'as.' (Cf. 162, c.)

Ha agito <b>da</b> uomo	He has acted <b>like</b> a man
S'è travestito <b>da</b> monaco	He has disguised himself <b>as</b> a monk

**113. The subjunctive is used** in dependent clauses after verbs of *wishing* and *willing*, when the subject is not the same as that of the independent clause. (With the same subject, the infinitive is used.)

Desidero <b>che</b> Lei legga questo libro	I wish <b>you to read</b> this book
Vogliamo <b>che</b> lo faccia	We wish <b>him to do</b> it

**114. The Relative Pronoun** (cf. 189). These forms are used of either persons or things :

**a. Che** 'who,' 'whom,' 'which,' 'that'; invariable, used as the subject or object of a verb. It cannot be omitted.

L'uomo <b>ch'</b> io ho veduto	The man whom I saw
L'uomo <b>che</b> m' ha veduto	The man who saw me
I fiori <b>che</b> compro	The flowers I am buying

**b. Cui** 'of which,' 'for,' 'by,' 'with' (etc.) 'whom' or 'which'; invariable, used after prepositions. 'Whose' is **il cui**.

Il signore <b>a cui</b> ho venduto la casa	The gentleman to whom I sold the house
Lo sciopero <b>di cui</b> tutti parlano in questo momento	The strike of which everybody is talking at this moment

c. Il quale (la quale, i quali, le quali), inflected, used in all cases, and frequently instead of cui after prepositions, especially for clearness. Its article is contracted with the prepositions (cf. 75).

La signora alla quale ha dato il libro	The lady to whom you have given the book
La figlia dell' avvocato, la quale abita a Firenze	The lawyer's daughter, who lives at Florence. ( <i>La quale</i> , being feminine, indicates the daughter, not the father.)

## VOCABULARY

la lingua language	avvezzarsi a accustom oneself to
la lira lira (twenty cents)	cercare look for; <i>w. di</i> try to
il maestro teacher	( <i>w. inf.</i> )
la penna a serbatoio fountain pen	divertirsi amuse oneself
lo studio study	dormire sleep
la tasca ( <i>pl. tasche</i> ) pocket	lasciare leave, let
il viso face	mancare ( <i>w. dat.</i> ) be lacking
	pagare pay, pay for
difficile difficult	sentire hear, feel, smell
fácil easy	servirsi di make use of
scorso last, past	studiare study
	vendere sell
a poco a poco little by little	vestirsi dress oneself

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Comprammo quella casa la settimana scorsa; paghiamola presto. 2. Cominceremo a studiare alle otto; lasceremo i nostri libri sullo scaffale. 3. Metta il pane nel paniere; non lo lasci sul piatto. 4. Lo studio d' una lingua è difficile; bisogna avvezzarsi a poco a poco a parlarla. 5. Giannetta si lavò il viso quando tornò da scuola. 6. Suo padre gli da tre lire. Si mette il denaro in tasca. 7. Luigi ha perduto i guanti; cerchiamoli. 8. M' ha parlato da

padre. 9. Ho perduto la mia penna a serbatoio. Si serva della mia. 10. Se gli vendo l' orologio, lo pagherà domani? No, perchè gli manca il denaro. 11. Il maestro non desidera che gli scolari lascino lo studio per divertirsi. 12. Se si divertissero troppo, mancherebbe loro il tempo per studiare.

## II

1. He sold me his house last week; when shall I pay for it? 2. I am finishing my work, but my sister sleeps. 3. If he were a soldier, he would dress like a soldier. 4. We should leave Italy if we did not lack money. 5. Let us try to amuse ourselves. 6. They wish their mother to sleep. 7. He puts in his pocket the four lire with which he will pay for his book. 8. The pupils are studying the Italian language, and are accustoming themselves little by little to speak it. 9. Our teacher has lost his fountain pen; let us look for it. 10. Giannetta will wash her face and hands before taking lunch. 11. I am trying to accustom myself to make use of my fountain pen. 12. Joseph would make use of his if he studied. 13. He does not like study, but he wishes his brother to study.

## LESSON XV

## COMPARISON

115. **Comparatives.** *a.* The comparative is formed by placing **più** 'more,' or **meno** 'less,' before an adjective or adverb.

*b.* 'Than' is **di** before nouns, pronouns, or numerals,

Il padre è più grande <b>del</b> figlio	The father is taller than the son
I nostri vicini sono più ricchi <b>di</b> noi	Our neighbors are richer than we
Ho più <b>di</b> tre palle	I have more than three balls

But changes to **che** —

1. After **piuttosto**, **prima**, meaning 'rather,' 'sooner.'

Prenderèi quella casa piuttosto <b>che</b> questa	I should take that house sooner than this
---	---



2. When the comparison is between two nouns.

Mi piace più la campagna <b>che</b> la città	I like the country better than the city
Non più bevve del fiume acqua <b>che</b> sangue	He drank from the river not more water than blood

c. 'Than' is **che** before adjectives, adverbs, prepositional phrases, infinitives, and participles.

L' avaro è più ricco <b>che</b> sāvio	The miser is more rich than wise
Meglio tardi <b>che</b> mai	Better late than never
I giōvani si preōccupano più delle eleganze della vita <b>che</b> dello stūdio	Young people think more of what is fashionable than of their studies

d. 'Than' is **che non** or **di quel che** before inflected verbs.

Lō spensierato parla più <b>che non</b> ( <i>or di quel che</i> ) pēnsa	The thoughtless man talks more than he thinks
---	---

116. The Superlative. a. The superlative is formed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative, from which it may be distinguished sometimes only by the context.

La sua stanza è la più grande	Her room is the largest ( <i>or the larger, if only two are in question</i> )
-------------------------------	---

b. When the superlative follows the noun, as it may, the article of the superlative is omitted.

Agōsto è il mese più caldo dell' anno	August is the hottest month of the year
---------------------------------------	---

c. The preposition used with the superlative is **fra**, sometimes **di**.

Ognuno crēde che la sua patria sia la più bella <b>fra</b> ( <i>or di</i> ) tutte	Every one thinks his own country the most beautiful of all
---	--

*d.* An absolute superlative is formed by adding the suffix **-issimo** to the stem of the adjective; **-mente** may be added to the feminine of this, to make an absolute superlative for the adverb. These are in constant use in conversation.

La villa del suo amico è bella? Your friend's villa is beautiful?  
È **bellissima** Very beautiful indeed

1. The adjectives **acre**, **cēlebre**, **integre**, **salubre** (and in poetry, **mīsero**) have an absolute superlative in **-ērrimo**: **celebērrimo**.

**117. Irregular Comparisons.** *a.* The following words are compared irregularly:

buono 'good'	migliore	il migliore l' ottimo
bene 'well'	miglio	il meglio benissimo ottimamente
cattivo 'bad'	peggiore	il peggiore il pēssimo
male 'badly'	peggio	il peggio pessimamente
alto 'high'	superiore	il superiore il sommo
basso 'low'	inferiore	l' inferiore l' infimo
grande 'large'	maggiore	il maggiore il māsimo
piccolo 'small'	minore	il minore il mīnimo
molto 'much'	più	il più moltissimo
poco 'little'	meno	il meno pochissimo

*b.* All these may be compared also regularly, but sometimes with different meanings.

1. The irregular forms of **buono**, **cattivo**, **bene**, and **male** are the more usual. But **ōttimo**, **pēssimo**, etc., are absolute rather than comparative.

2. **Maggiore** and **minore** usually mean 'older' and 'younger.' The regular forms refer to size.

\*3. **Superiore** and **inferiore** are oftener figurative, the regular forms literal.

\*4. **Meglio** is used as an adjective in the predicate after **ēssere**, and still more widely in familiar speech; similarly **peggio**, but more familiarly.

Scēgo questo; è il meglio	I choose this; it is the best
Fra i tiranni dell' Italia moderna, i Borboni erano i peggio	Among the tyrants of modern Italy the Bourbons were the worst

**118. Subjunctive after Superlative.** The subjunctive is required after the superlative and 'only' in relative clauses.

Venezia è la più bella città ch' io abbia mai vista	Venice is the most beautiful city I have ever seen
Il quarto reggimento è il solo che sia partito	The fourth regiment is the only one that has left

**119. Comparison of Equality.** This is expressed by **tanto . . . quanto**, **così . . . come**, 'as . . . as,' 'so . . . so.'

Il mio amico è tanto alto quanto mio fratello	My friend is as tall as my brother
Non è così bella come sua sorella	She is not so beautiful as her sister

**a. Tanto** and **così** are more often omitted.

L'argento non è caro quanto l'oro	Silver is not so precious as gold
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

#### VOCABULARY

l' **Amērica** (*f.*) America  
l' **Āustria** (*f.*) Austria  
il **conquistatore** conqueror  
l' **eredità** (*f.*) heritage

l' **Inghilterra** (*f.*) England  
il **pensiero** thought  
la **pratica** practice  
il **pregio** value

lo scrittore	writer	tedesco	German
la Spagna	Spain	vinto	conquered ( <i>from vincere, irr.</i> )
la storia	history	così	thus, so, as
lo strumento	instrument	dève	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of dovere (irr.)</i> must
imporre ( <i>irr.</i> )	impose; imponeva,	leggendo	<i>pres. part. of leggere (irr.)</i> read
3 <i>sg. past descr. indic.</i>		esprime	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of esprimere (irr.)</i> express
ricevere	receive	vede	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of vedere (irr.)</i> see
tenere ( <i>irr.</i> )	hold	e via dicendo	and so on, et cetera
solo	only		
spagnuolo	Spanish, Spaniard		
tanto	so, so much, ( <i>pl.</i> ) so many		

## EXERCISE

## I

1. La lingua è lo strumento col quale l'uomo esprime i suoi pensieri. 2. Perché ogni nazione deve tenere in gran pregio la propria lingua? 3. Perché l'ha ricevuta come sacra eredità dai padri, ed è il più nobile patrimonio di un popolo. 4. Leggendo la storia, si vede come i conquistatori cercarono di imporre ai popoli vinti la propria lingua. 5. Così perderebbero il carattere della nazionalità. 6. Così Roma imponeva la lingua latina, la Spagna la lingua spagnuola, l'Inghilterra la lingua inglese, l'Austria la lingua tedesca, e via dicendo. 7. La lingua spagnuola non è difficile quanto l'inglese; l'inglese è più facile della tedesca. 8. Qual è la più grande fra tutte le nazioni? 9. Gli scrittori pensano più che non parlano. 10. Questo è il solo libro tedesco che si trovi sullo scaffale. 11. Desideriamo che nostra sorella parli inglese, ma le manca la pratica.

## II

1. Language is the instrument of the writer. 2. The English language is spoken in the United States. 3. The history of Spain is longer than that of America. 4. Reading it, one sees why

conquerors try to impose their own language on conquered peoples. 5. Are soldiers greater than writers? 6. The German language is the most difficult of all. 7. The Spaniard would have been a better soldier if he had been better paid. 8. Winter is colder than autumn. 9. My little sister sings more than she talks. 10. My brother and my sisters have returned from Rome, and have brought me many Italian books. 11. This is the greatest war that has ever (*mai*) been. 12. They will leave their books on the shelf; let us look for them. 13. We like our own house; it is larger than yours; it is rather large than beautiful.

## LESSON XVI

THE VERB *AVERE*120. The Verb *avere* 'have.'

	INFINITIVE	
PRESENT		PERFECT
avere		avere avuto
	PARTICIPLE	
avendo		avendo avuto
	INDICATIVE	
PRESENT		PAST DESCRIPTIVE
hò      abbiamo		avevo    avevamo
hai      avete		avevi    avevate
ha      hanno		aveva    avevano
		PAST ABSOLUTE
FUTURE		
avrò    avremo		ebbi    avemmo
avrai    avrete		avesti    aveste
avrà    avranno		ebbero    ebbero
PRESENT PERFECT		SECOND PAST PERFECT
hò avuto, <i>etc.</i>		ebbi avuto, <i>etc.</i>
PAST PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT
avevo avuto, <i>etc.</i>	:	avrò avuto, <i>etc.</i>



PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT	
avrei	avremmo	avrei avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
avresti	avreste		
avrebbe	avrebbero		
IMPERATIVE			
		abbiamo	
abbi	abbiate		
abbia	abbiano		
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT		PRESENT PERFECT	
abbia	abbiamo	abbia avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
abbia	abbiate		
abbia	abbiano		
PAST		PAST PERFECT	
avessi	avessimo	avessi avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
avessi	aveste		
avesse	avessero		

*a.* The irregular past absolute of **avere** may be taken as the model of all irregular past absolutes. It will be noticed that three forms are regular: the second person singular and the first and second plural. For example **leggere** 'read':

lessi	leggemmo
leggesti	leggeste
lesse	lessero

*b.* Of very many verbs the past participle also is irregular, and their principal parts are the infinitive, the first person singular of the past absolute, and the past participle, as **leggere**, **lessi**, **letto**.

**121.** The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **avere**.

*a.* The most important intransitives conjugated with **avere** are—

<b>bollire</b> boil	<b>passaggiare</b> take a walk	<b>tremare</b> tremble
<b>dimorare</b> dwell	<b>sbadigliare</b> yawn	<b>viaggiare</b> travel
<b>dormire</b> sleep	<b>starnutire</b> sneeze	

\**b.* Certain other verbs, such as *tacere* 'be silent' and *vivere* 'live,' may be conjugated with either: with *avere* when the idea of action predominates, with *essere* when the idea of condition is more important.

122. The past participle with *avere* usually agrees with a preceding direct object. Agreement is customary when the object is a conjunctive pronoun.

Ho scritto (or scritte) due lettere	I have written two letters
Ne ho scritte due	I have written two of them
Veda questi cavalli. Li abbiamo comprati oggi	See these horses. We have bought them to-day
La catena che mi ha prestata	The chain you lent me

123. Special Uses of *avere*. *a.* *Avere da* with the infinitive means 'have to.'

Họ da scrivere tre lēttēre	} I have to write three letters
Họ trę lēttēre da scrīvere	

*b.* Idioms with *avere*:

Avę caldo	To be too warm
Avę fręddo	To be too cold
Avę fame	To be hungry
Avę sęte	To be thirsty
Avę sonno	To be sleepy
Avę paura (di)	To be afraid (of)
Avę soggeziōne	To be nervous, embarrassed
Avę ragiōne	To be right
Avę tōrto	To be wrong, be in the wrong
Avę fūria, avę frętta	To be in a hurry
Ha fame?	Are you hungry?
Avęvano sonno?	Were they sleepy?
Nōn họ fręddo	I am not cold
Ha ragiōne	You are right
Abbiamo paura	We are afraid
Họ fūria	I am in a hurry

**124. The Conjunctive *ne*.** *a.* 'Some' or 'any,' when pronouns (cf. 77), are translated by *ne*. It means also 'of it,' 'of them,' and is equivalent to *di* plus a personal pronoun.

*Avete delle mele? No, non ne ho* Have you any apples? No, I have not any

*b.* *Ne* must be used in Italian when its equivalent would not be required in English; and it is sometimes logically pleonastic in Italian, though rhetorically emphatic. Cf. 100, *d.*

*Ha dei libri tedeschi?* Have you any German books?  
*Sì, ne ho. Ne ho molti* Yes, I have. I have a great many  
*Di quest' affare ne sai nulla?* Do you know anything about this matter?

*c.* The past participle agrees with *ne* (cf. 122).

#### VOCABULARY

<i>il biglietto</i> ticket	<i>dimenticare (di)</i> forget (to)
<i>la classe</i> class	<i>leggere, lessi, letto</i> read
<i>la guardia</i> guard, conductor	<i>mettere, mihi, messo</i> put
<i>il minuto</i> minute	<i>permettere (di), mihi, permesso</i>
<i>il posto</i> place, room	permit
<i>lo scompartimento</i> compartment	<i>prendere, presi, preso</i> take
<i>il treno</i> train	<i>scrivere, scrissi, scritto</i> write
<i>fra</i> between, among; ( <i>with a measure of time</i> ) in, within	<i>detto p.p. of dire (irr.)</i> say
<i>pronto</i> ready; all aboard	<i>prego, niente</i> , you're welcome, don't mention it

#### EXERCISE

##### I

1. Quando si parte per Roma? Alle nove. 2. Mi compri un libro, perchè desidero di leggere in treno. 3. Quando parte il primo treno per Firenze? Fra dieci minuti. 4. Non dimentichi di scrivermi. 5. Ha i biglietti, Giovanni? Ne ho due; mi manca un biglietto. 6. Quando una persona dice — Grazie — si risponde

sempre — Prego! — o — Niente! 7. Desidera ch' io prenda i biglietti? Li metterò in tasca. 8. Ha trovato i biglietti che aveva perduti? 9. Li ho trovati in tasca. Eccoli. 10. È questo uno scompartimento di prima classe? 11. Sì, ma non c'è più posto, Signora. Mi permetta di offrirle il mio. 12. S'accomodi, Signora.— Grazie tante! — Prego! 13. Quando si entra in uno scompartimento dove ci sono delle persone, si dice — Permesso — o — Con permesso. 14. Si ha da prendere i biglietti prima di partire. 15. Si dice — Due biglietti di prima classe. 16. La guardia dice — Pronti! — e il treno parte.

## II

(Translate the present perfect by the present perfect, the simple past by the past absolute.)

1. Please give me three first-class tickets to [for] Rome. 2. If I had put my tickets in my pocket, I should not have lost them. 3. My train will arrive in five minutes. 4. I read your letter; we did not read our books in the train. 5. If I had my letters, I should not forget to read them. 6. He took their tickets and put them in his pocket; he did not permit me to take them. 7. Have you written the letters? I have written two of them. 8. We had our books in the compartment, but we forgot to read them. 9. Have you any roses? Yes, I have. I have bought six to-day. 10. The English writer who lives in Florence wrote these books. Have you read them? 11. May I enter? Is there room in the compartment? 12. The conductor would have said "All aboard!" in two minutes, and we had not yet found a place. 13. They had to buy some German books at the bookseller's, but he did not have any. 14. Did we put? I permitted. You did not read. They wrote. Did he read? Thou tookest. They took. 15. Are you not too hot? He is in the wrong. We were sleepy. I am in a hurry.

## LESSON XVII

## TWO CONJUNCTIVE OBJECTS

**125. Two Conjunctive Objects.** *a.* When two conjunctive objects, direct and indirect, are governed by the same verb, the indirect (except *loro*) precedes the direct. Both precede the verb (cf. 95, *a*), or are appended to it (cf. 95, *b*).

Cę ne dà	He gives us some
Vę lę mostra	He shows it to you
Făccelo vedere	Show it to us
Lę si avvicinò	He approached her

1. **Loro**, as always, follows the verb.

Compra un cane, ę lę da loro	He buys a dog, and gives it to them
------------------------------	-------------------------------------

*b.* When immediately followed by *lo*, *li*, *la*, *le*, or *ne*,

1. **Mi**, **ti**, **ci**, **vi**, and **si** change *i* to *e*, and become respectively **mę**, **tę**, **cę**, **vę**, and **sę**.

Tę li porta	He carries them to you
Mi mostra una rōsa e mę la dà	He shows me a rose and gives it to me
Pręnde il cappello e sę lę mette	He takes his hat and puts it on

2. **Gli** and **le** alike become **glię**, and are joined with the following conjunctive to make one word.

Finii la lęttera e glięla spedii	I finished the letter and sent it to her, or to him
----------------------------------	---

**126. Conjunctive Adverbs.** *a.* **Ci**, **vi**, and **ne** are adverbs as well as pronouns, **ci** and **vi** meaning 'here,' 'there' (of some place already referred to), and **ne** meaning 'thence.' They are conjunctive in character, as they precede the verb (or are appended as enclitics), and are unemphatic.



È stato da suo cugino?

Sì, *ne* vengo ora

Pensava di andar*vi* io

Andiāmoci domani

Have you been at your cousin's?

Yes, I am coming from there

I was thinking of going there myself

Let us go there to-morrow

1. **Ci** and **vi** are sometimes equivalent to 'at it,' 'to it,' taking the place of **a** plus a conjunctive pronoun of the third person, but seldom used of persons. This use is frequent with verbs which take **a** before their object (cf. 224, *a*).

Pensa **al** suo paese?

**Ci** penso sempre

Are you thinking of your country?

I am always thinking of it

2. **Ci** means a place nearer the speaker, but is tending to supersede **vi** in vivid speech.

*b.* **Ci** and **vi** undergo the same changes as adverbs that they do as pronouns (cf. 125, *b*).

Non **ce** n' è

**Ve** ne trovano pochi

There isn't any

I find few of them there

\**c.* Rules for position of these adverbs are intricate :

1. **Ci** follows **mi**, **ti**, **vi**, and precedes **si** and those forms which begin with **l**.

Mi **ci** abituo

**Ci** 'si abitua

**Ce** lo trovò

I am accustoming myself to it

He is accustoming himself to it

He found it there

2. **Vi** follows **mi**, and precedes other forms.

Mi **vi** recherò subito

**Ve** lo misero

I shall take my way thither at once

They put it there

3. **Ne** follows either **ci** or **vi**, and precedes the forms beginning with **l**.

**Ce** **ne** andiamo

**Ne** lo tolse

We are going away

He took it away from there, from him, etc.

127. Certain reflexive verbs take a second conjunctive in certain meanings, as **andārsene** 'go away,' **prēndersela** 'take it ill,' and **avērsela a male** 'be offended.'

<b>Andiāmocene</b>	Let us go away
<b>Andātosene, non tornò più</b>	Having gone, he did not return again
<b>Essēndosela prēsa</b>	Having taken it ill
<b>Non se l'abbia a male</b>	Do not be offended

## VOCABULARY

<b>l'avviso</b> ( <i>m.</i> ) sign, notice	<b>accompagnare</b> accompany
<b>il giornale</b> newspaper	<b>aspettare</b> wait, wait for
<b>Lōndra</b> London	<b>avē notizie di</b> receive news from
<b>le notizie</b> news	<b>avērsela a male</b> be offended
<b>Parigi</b> Paris	<b>dare il buon viaggio a</b> wish a
<b>lo sportello</b> ticket window	pleasant journey to
<b>la stazione</b> railway station	<b>partire</b> leave ( <i>intr.</i> )
<b>il viaggiatore</b> passenger, traveler	<b>prēndersela</b> take it ill
<b>per favore</b> please	<b>spōrgersi, spōrsi, spōrto</b> lean out
<b>pericoloso</b> dangerous	<b>danno</b> 3 <i>pl. pres. ind. of dare</i> ( <i>irr.</i> )
<b>secondo</b> second	give
<b>a tempo</b> in time	
<b>terzo</b> third	

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Si monta in treno. 2. Tutti si danno il buon viaggio. 3. Il treno parte fra poco: tornerò subito alla stazione. 4. Non bisogna far tardi, se vogliamo arrivarvi a tempo. 5. Non se la prenda. 6. Voglio accompagnarcela. 7. Dove si comprano i biglietti? Allo sportello. 8. Mi dia due biglietti di seconda classe per Parigi. 9. Me li dia subito, per favore. 10. Nei treni italiani c'è sempre un avviso, che dice: *È pericoloso sporgersi.* 11. Ho avuto notizie di un mio amico. 12. La lettera che m'ha scritta è più interessante che lunga. 13. Desidera ch'io gliela legga? 14. Il suo viaggio è

- stato pericoloso. 15. Non se l' ha a male ; non me ne ha parlato.  
 16. Ha comprato una bellissima villa, e desidera di mostrarmela.  
 17. Fermiamoci alla prima stazione per visitarla.

## II

1. Let John accompany them to the station. 2. Will he buy the tickets? Yes, he will buy them, and [will] bring them to us. 3. One buys one's tickets at the ticket-window. 4. Let us return there at once. 5. Our brother will not look for us there, but he will wait for us near the door. 6. Wait a minute. Here are the newspapers I have bought. 7. I will read them to you, if you wish me to read them to you. 8. Don't lean out, Marcellina. 9. Two travelers in the compartment are talking of Paris: they say that it is more beautiful than London. 10. Do not lean out, madam. It is dangerous. 11. He buys a gun and gives it to them. 12. They will show it to her. 13. Having felt offended, he does not wish me to speak to him about it.

## LESSON XVIII

## IRREGULAR VERBS

**128. Irregular Verb: Regular Forms.** *a.* Certain parts of all irregular verbs except *essere* are always regular: the past descriptive indicative, past subjunctive, and present participle, the second person plural of the present indicative, and the second person singular and first and second persons plural of the past absolute.

1. In addition, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive, are regular in many irregular verbs, as *rimanere*.

129. The Verb *rimanere* 'remain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *rimanere*, *rimanendo*, *rimango*, *rimarrò*, *rimasi*,  
*rimasto* (*or rimaso*)

	INDICATIVE	
	PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE
<i>rimango</i>	<i>rimaniamo</i> , <i>rimanghiamo</i>	<i>rimanèvo</i> , <i>etc.</i>
<i>rimani</i>	<i>rimanete</i>	
<i>rimane</i>	<i>rimāngono</i>	
	FUTURE	PAST ABSOLUTE
<i>rimarrò</i>	<i>rimarremo</i>	<i>rimasi</i> <i>rimanemmo</i>
<i>rimarrai</i>	<i>rimarrete</i>	<i>rimanēsti</i> <i>rimaneste</i>
<i>rimarrà</i>	<i>rimarranno</i>	<i>rimase</i> <i>rimāsero</i>
	PAST FUTURE	
	<i>rimarrēi</i> , <i>etc.</i>	
	IMPERATIVE	
		<i>rimaniamo</i>
	<i>rimani</i>	<i>rimanete</i>
	<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimāngano</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE	
	PRESENT	PAST
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimaniamo</i>	<i>rimanēssi</i> , <i>etc.</i>
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimaniate</i>	
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimāngano</i>	

130. **Principal Parts.** To the three principal parts of regular verbs (cf. 91) must be added, for wholly irregular verbs, the first person singular of the present indicative, of the past absolute, and of the future. But of very many (cf. 120, *b*) the infinitive, past absolute, and past participle are enough, and the present participle is required only of a few, like *porre*, *ponendo*, or *dire*, *dicendo*, where its stem differs from that of the infinitive. The system of formation is as follows:

**a.** From the present participle :

1. The past descriptive.
2. The second person plural of the present indicative. **EXCEPTIONS**: **dire** and **fare**, which have **dite** and **fate**.
3. The second person singular, and first and second plural, of the past absolute. **EXCEPTIONS**: **dare** and **stare**, which change **a** in the stem to **e** (**dęsti**, **stęmmo**, etc.).
4. The past subjunctive. **EXCEPTIONS**: **dare** and **stare**, as above.
5. Often, as in **rimanere**, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive.

**b.** From the first person singular of the present indicative :

1. The third person plural of that tense. **EXCEPTIONS**: **andare**, **avere**, **dare**, **fare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **vanno**, **hanno**, **danno**, **fanno**, **sanno**, **stanno**.
2. The entire singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive. **EXCEPTIONS**: **avere**, **dare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **abbia**, **dia**, **sāppia**, **stia**, and **abbiano**, **diano**, **sāppiano**, **stiano**.

**NOTE.** The other persons of the present indicative and subjunctive may be regular, as in **rimanere**, or not; in any case the first and second plural of the subjunctive follow the first plural of the indicative.

**c.** From the future, whether regular or irregular, is formed the past future.

**d.** From the first person singular of the past absolute are formed the third singular and plural of that tense (cf. 120, *a*).

**e.** The imperative of irregular verbs is identical with the corresponding persons of the present indicative and subjunctive. **EXCEPTIONS**: **avere**, **sapere**, **valere**, in which it follows wholly the subjunctive; and **andare**, **dare**, **dire**, **fare**, **stare**, which have in the second singular the shortened forms **va'**, **da'**, **di'**, **fa'**, **sta'** (cf. 100, *b*).



NOTE. Only as many parts of a verb will be found in the special vocabularies as are necessary to its conjugation on the principles just explained. If the present and future are omitted, they are regular. If the first person only of the present is given (unless marked *irr.*), then the present indicative and subjunctive are to be conjugated like *rimanere*. Unusual or alternative forms are to be found in the alphabetical list of irregular verbs.

## VOCABULARY

il bacio ( <i>pl.</i> baci) kiss	inviare send
compagno, -a companion	mandare send, order
il dolce sweetmeat, dessert	parere, paio, parrò, parvi, parso seem, appear
la licenza leave; in licenza on leave	promettere ( <i>di</i> ), promisi, promesso promise (to)
Pasqua ( <i>f.</i> ) Easter	riabbracciare embrace again
dèvi ( <i>2 sg. pres. ind. of dovere, irr.</i> ) must	vedere, vedrò, vidi, visto see
fa' ( <i>2 sg. imper. of fare, irr.</i> ) make, have	allegro joyful, happy
mai ever	disperato heartbroken
sta' ( <i>2 sg. imper. of stare, irr.</i> ) be	dispiacente sorry
vièni ( <i>2 sg. imper. of venire</i> )	francese French
	mille a thousand
	sicuro sure, safe

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

## PASQUA

Caro Lucio

il 12 aprile, 1914

La mamma è disperata. Come ci avevi promesso, ti s'aspettava tutti per Pasqua; si era sicuri che ti avrebbero mandato in licenza, ed io volevo vederti vestito da soldato. O come mai non ti hanno più mandato? Povero Lucio, anche tu devi essere molto dispiacente!

Il babbo e la mamma ti hanno inviato dei dolci; il giorno di Pasqua sta' allegro coi tuoi compagni, e ricordati di noi.

Fa' buona Pasqua, e vieni presto presto ; ci par mille anni a tutti di riabbracciarti.

Tanti baci del tuo

piccolo fratello

Mino

## II

1. The teacher showed me the letter which the pupil had written.
2. What is the name of the little boy who wrote the letter? His name is Mino.
3. Have you any sweetmeats, Mino? No, but my brother has promised to buy me some.
4. These are the most beautiful roses I have ever seen.
5. They saw Lucio (on) Easter Day; he had returned on leave to his brother's.
6. Do you wish some water? Yes, bring me a glass (of it).
7. Here is my fountain pen; make use of it, pray [**pure**].
8. If I had made use of it, I should have feared to [**di**] lose it.
9. Return home, my brother; it seems to me a thousand years till I see you again [**rivedere**].
10. If they returned to London, they would remain there six weeks.
11. My sisters wish me to remain in Florence, because they will soon return thither.
12. If we should see some French books at the bookseller's we should not forget to send you some.

## LESSON XIX

### THE VERBS *DARE, SAPERE, VOLERE*

#### 131. The Verb *dare* (cf. 130, e) 'give.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dare, dando, dō, darò, dētti or diēdi, dato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
dō diamo	dētti, diēdi	dia diamo
dai date	dēsti	dia diate
dà danno	dētte, diēde	dia diano

\*a. Idioms with **dare** (for reference):

**dare addosso a** to hold to blame

**dare a fare a** to give trouble, make work or bother for

**dare ad intēndere a** to make (one) believe

**darci dentro** to guess right

**darsi d' attorno** to look about, try every means

**dar del tu, del Lei, etc.,** to use *tu*, or *Lei*

**dar fuoco a** to set on fire

**dare in una risata, in singulti** to burst into laughter, into sobbing

**dar la buona notte, il buon giorno** to say good night, good day

**dar la mano a** to shake hands with

**dar luogo a** to give rise to

**dar nel secentismo** to fall into seventeenth-century affectations

**dar noia a** to disturb, annoy

**dar nell' occhio** to be conspicuous

**dar pensiero a** to cause worry to

**darsi pensiero** to worry, feel worried

**dar retta a** to heed

**dar sull' Arno** to face on the Arno

132. The Verb *sapere* 'know.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sapere, sapendo, so, saprò, seppi, saputo**

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

*so*            *sappiamo*

*sai*           *sapete*

*sa*            *sanno*

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*sappia*       *sappiamo*

*sappia*       *sappiate*

*sappia*       *sāppiano*

a. Special meanings of **sapere**:

1. When followed directly by the infinitive, it means 'be able,' in the sense of to know how, to have learned how.

*Non sa leggere nè scrivere*

He cannot read or write

2. It may mean 'learn of.'

*Ho saputo la cosa stamane*

I learned of the matter this morning

3. Followed by **di**, it means 'smack of' or 'know about.'

Calamecca, nome che <b>sa di</b> saracino	Calamecca, a name which <b>smacks of</b> the Saracen
Di storia patria <b>ne sai nulla?</b>	Do you <b>know anything about</b> the history of your country?

4. **Saperne di** means 'have to do with,' 'hear of,' 'put up with.'

La Francia non volle mai <b>saperne di</b> una tassa di questo genere	France would never <b>hear of</b> a tax of this kind
---	--

### 133. The Verb *volere* 'will,' 'wish,' 'intend.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volere, volendo, voglio, vorrò, vòlli, voluto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

voglio	vogliamo
vuoi	volete
vuole	vogliono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

voglia	vogliamo
voglia	vogliate
voglia	vogliano

#### a. Special meanings of *volere*:

1. With **ci**, in the third person, it means 'it takes,' 'it needs.'

Quanto denaro <b>ci vuole?</b>	How much money <b>is needed?</b>
<b>Ci vorranno</b> almeno quindici anni	<b>It will take</b> at least fifteen years

2. **Volere bene a** means 'love.'

I bambini <b>vogliono bene ai genitori</b>	Children <b>love</b> their parents
--	------------------------------------

**134. Uses of *da*.** *Da* with a measure of time means 'for.' The present tense is used in this construction to translate the English present perfect (cf. 139, a).

<b>Da quando</b> abita a Livorno?	How long have you been living in Leghorn?
<b>Da undici anni</b>	For eleven years

## VOCABULARY

l'ingegno ( <i>m.</i> ) talent, brains	andò (3 <i>sg. p. abs. of andare, irr.</i> ) go
la lotta struggle	ardere, arsi, arso burn
la minaccia threat	attrarre, attraendo, attraggo ( <i>irr.</i> ),
la miniera mine	attrarrò, attrassi, attratto draw,
l'opera ( <i>f.</i> ) work	attract
la parte share, part, side	dotare endow
la pietra stone	esiliare exile
	morire, muoio ( <i>irr.</i> ), morirò, morii,
giòvane young	morto die
inesauribile inexhaustible	nascere, nacqui, nato be born
nuovo new	peregrinare wander, go on pil-
prezioso precious	grimage
vivo alive	prevalere, prevalgo ( <i>irr.</i> ), prevarrò,
	prevalsi, prevaluto prevail
qualora whenever ( <i>w. subj.</i> )	riparare take refuge
seicento six hundred	scoprire, scopersi, scoperto dis-
in età di at the age of	cover; take off one's hat

## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

## DANTE ALIGHIERI

Dante Alighieri, il più grande dei poeti italiani, nacque in Firenze da nobile famiglia nell'anno 1265. Dotato di straordinario ingegno, si diede con ardore agli studi e, giovane ancora, incominciò a poetare. L'amore di patria lo attrasse nelle lotte, che fervevano allora in Firenze tra i Bianchi ed i Neri, e prese parte ad alcune battaglie.

Ma, prevalendo i Neri, il sommo poeta fu esiliato dalla patria con minaccia di essere arso vivo, qualora fosse tornato, e andò peregrinando per l'Italia. Finalmente riparò a Ravenna, dove morì il giorno 14 settembre dell'anno 1321 in età di 56 anni.

Scrisse molte opere; ma il suo lavoro più rinomato è il poema chiamato Divina Commedia, che, da seicento anni circa, gl'Italiani



e gli studiosi di tutto il mondo leggono e ammirano, scoprendovi ogni giorno nuove e sublimi bellezze, come in una miniera inesauribile di pietre preziose. Gl' Italiani dicono che Dante è l' uomo più straordinario che Dio abbia mandato sulla Terra.

## II

1. We learned the news yesterday. 2. They learned it this morning. 3. How much time will it take? 4. It will take two months. 5. The Italian authors were born in Florence. 6. The Whites drew Dante into the struggle. 7. I found your newspaper, and gave it to them. 8. We did not take part in the battle. 9. We burned his books. 10. He will wander many years, and will die in Ravenna. 11. The two Americans died in Paris. 12. Who discovered America? 13. The young Italian will show you a precious stone. 14. We gave it to him. 15. John will give it to his sister. 16. The Spaniard burned their house.

## LESSON XX

THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN. THE VERB *VENIRE*

**135. The Disjunctive Pronoun.** The disjunctive pronoun differs from the conjunctive in that it is not, like the latter, inseparable from the verb. It has two cases :

*a.* The *nominative* (cf. 65), which is used as the subject of the verb, when expressed (cf. 63, *a*).

*b.* The *objective*, which has various uses. Its forms are as follows :

mę me	noi us
tę thee	või you
lui him	loro them ( <i>m. and f.</i> )
lei her	
sè ( <i>refl.</i> ) himself, herself, themselves ( <i>m. and f.</i> )	

136. The Objective Case of the disjunctive pronoun is used—

a. After prepositions (cf. 222, a).

Vanno al muşeo. Andiamo <b>con</b> loro	They are going to the museum. Let us go with them
Venga a prēndere il tē <b>da me</b> alle cinque	Come and have tea with me at five
La bambina scrisse la lēttēra <b>da sē</b>	The little girl wrote the letter all herself

1. Instead of **con me**, **con te**, and **con se**, may be used the forms **meco**, **teco**, and **seco**. **Seco** is sometimes equivalent, where there is no ambiguity, to **con lui** or **con lei**.

Vø a casa. Viēn <b>meco</b>	I am going home, come with me
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

b. Hence, after comparatives.

Il suo fratēllo minore è <b>più grande</b> di <b>lui</b>	His younger brother is taller than he
---	--

c. As a substitute for the conjunctive,

1. Where there are two objects in the same construction.

I nōstri genitōri amano <b>tē e mē</b>	Our parents love you and me
Parla a <b>lui</b> ed a <b>nōi</b>	He speaks to him and to us

2. For clearness, emphasis, or contrast.

L' hanno dato proprio <b>a mē</b>	They have given it to me myself, to me in person. (The unem- phatic form would be <i>Me</i> [ <i>for</i> <i>Mi</i> ] <b>lo hanno dato</b> )
Lodo <b>tē</b> , Giannētta, e biasmo <b>lui</b> .	I praise you, Giannetta, and re- prove him

(a) Sometimes the conjunctive form is retained redundantly:

<b>A me</b> non <b>mi</b> piace l' arte modērna	I do not care for modern art
---	------------------------------

d. In the third person, where the other persons would take the nominative case (cf. 65).

1. When the subject follows the verb, in a declarative sentence.

L' ha fatto lui, *or* lui stesso                      He has done it **himself**

But

L' ho fatto io stesso

2. When the verb is understood.

Lui pittore, lui poeta, lui musicista,              He a painter, a poet, a musician,  
lui ingegnere, lui architetto!                      an engineer, an architect!

3. Before **Signori**, or a cardinal number.

Che desiderano loro(o) Signori?                  What do **you** gentlemen wish?  
Loro tre    **They** three

4. After **anche**, **neanche**, **nemmeno**.

Anche loro sono dalla mia                          They also are on my side  
**Nemmeno** lui è venuto                              Not even he came

But

Io vorrei viaggiare. Anch' io                      I should like to travel. So should I

**\*e.** In exclamations.

Felice lui! Povera te!                                  Happy he! Poor you!

**\*f.** After **come**, **dove**, **quanto**, **salvochè**, **siccome**.

Lui potrà riuscirvi come me                      You can succeed in it as well as I  
Io non sono dotto quanto lui                      I am not so learned as he

**\*g.** As a predicate after **essere** (in Tuscan usage often preceded by **in**).

S' io fossi te (in te), non lo farei                  If I were **you**, I would not do it  
Non avrebbe voluto essere me (in              If he had known everything, he  
me), se avesse saputo tutto                      would not have wished to be **I**  
EXCEPTION: Non sono più io                      I am no more myself, I don't  
know myself

**\*h.** In absolute construction, as the subject of the past participle and of the present participle in **-ante**, **-ente**. With the form in **-ando**, **-endo**, the nominative is preferred. (Cf. 193.)

**Venuti loro**, cominciammo a parlare di politica      When they had come, we began to talk of politics

**Vivente me**, non lo farai      You shall not do it while I live

But

**Essēndoci io**, non vōllero parlarne      I being there, they refused to speak of it

\**i*. The disjunctive reflexive, *sè*, can of course be used only when it represents the same person as the subject.

Va da *sè*      It goes without saying (of itself)

But (since 'Rembrandt' is not the subject)

Un ritratto di Rembrandt, fatto da lui medēsimo      A portrait of Rembrandt painted by himself

1. When reciprocal, *sè* is replaced by *loro*.

Non s' accōrdano fra loro      They do not agree among themselves

2. *Sè* loses its accent before *stesso*.

Non vōlle mai parlare di *sè stesso*      He would never talk of himself

137. The subjunctive is used after *crēdere* meaning 'think' or 'believe.' The future is admissible.

Crēdo che *piova*      I think it is raining

Non crēde che ci *sia* io      He does not believe I am here

### 138. The Verb *venire* 'come.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *venire, venēdo, vengo, verrò, venni, venuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

*vengo*      *veniamo*

*viēni*      *venite*

*viēne*      *vengono*

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*venga*      *veniamo*

*venga*      *veniate*

*venga*      *vengano*

a. Special uses of **venire** :

1. **Venire** is often used instead of **essere** to construct the passive (cf. 97, a, 1).

Questi desiderî non vènnero compiuti      These desires were not fulfilled

2. **Venire** takes **a** before an infinitive.

Venga a trovarmi alle quattro      Come and see me at four

3. **Venire** is used for **andare**, when motion is with or toward the second person.

Verrò, verranno, da Lei domani      I shall come, they will come, to your house to-morrow

## VOCABULARY

il calzino	sock	augurare	wish, wish well
il caporale	corporal	crêdere	think, believe, have an opinion
il cartellino	sheet, label	impostare	post, mail (impòsto)
il fazzoletto	handkerchief	lodare	praise (lòdo)
la fotografia	photograph	passare	pass, pass as
il francobollo	postage stamp	pensare	think, reflect; pensare a think of, have in mind
la lana	wool	risparmiare	save
il nome	name (given)	tenere, tēngo	(irr. like venire), terrò, tēnni, tenuto hold
il pacco	(pl. pacchi) package	affettuoso	affectionate
il principio	beginning	lontano	distant
appena	hardly	postale	postal
costaggiù	down there near you		
dunque	then, well		
insieme	together		



## EXERCISE

## I. READING LESSON

## NATALE

il 22 dicembre

Caro fratello,

il babbo e la mamma mi hanno detto: scrivi tu a Lucio. Ma come fare che appena so tenere la penna in mano? Ho pregato la signora maestra di aiutarmi, e fra lei e me si è messa insieme questa letterina.

Dunque: a nome di tutti di famiglia ti auguro buon Natale e buon anno.

Riceverai un pacco postale: il babbo ci ha messo i dolci, la mamma i fazzoletti, la Gigina i calzini di lana che ti ha fatti da sè, ed io un bel libro, che ti ho comprato con i denari che risparmio alla scuola coi cartellini dei francobolli.

Sta' allegro il giorno di Natale: noi penseremo a te che sei costaggiù a Tripoli, tanto lontano da noi; ma anche tu pensa a noi, che ti vogliamo bene.

È vero che sei passato caporale? allora fatti la fotografia, e mandacela.

Tanti baci da tutti, un abbraccio dal tuo

aff.<sup>mo</sup> fratello

Mino

## II

1. We shall think about our family on Christmas Day.
2. Shall you think about yours? I am always thinking of it.
3. Buy ten postage-stamps for me, and mail these letters for him.
4. I have mailed them. Many thanks. Don't mention it.
5. What was there in the postal package that Mino's brother received?
6. Mino's brother found in it six handkerchiefs and some woolen socks.
7. Mino says his little sister has made the socks all by herself.
8. Is his sister younger than I?
9. The teacher would not praise

the letters which the pupils had written. 10. Mino hardly knew how to hold the pen in his hand, and asked the teacher to help him. 11. Between him and me a letter has been put together. 12. My friend will come with us, but his brothers have returned with them. 13. We shall wish them Merry Christmas and Happy New Year. 14. Does the teacher praise you or him, Giannino? 15. Give me the gun, please. No, I will not give it to you, but to him. 16. We think our brother and his friend will come on Easter Day.

## LESSON XXI

## SPECIAL USES OF TENSES. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT. INVERSION

**139. Present Indicative.** *a.* With a measure of time after *da*, and sometimes in temporal clauses with *dacchè*, the present indicative is used to translate the English present perfect expressing an action begun in the past but continuing into the present (cf. 134).

*Siamo* in Italia da sei mesi

We **have been** (and still are) in Italy for six months

*Dacchè sono* qui

Since I **have been** here

1. If the action, begun in the past, was continuing at a later date in the past, the English past perfect is to be translated by the past descriptive.

*Era* ammalato da una settimana

He **had been** ill a week (and still was so at the time of which I speak)

*Combattevamo* da più di sei ore

We **had been fighting** for more than six hours

*b.* It is used, as in English, of the immediate future.

*Parto* domani

I **leave** to-morrow

\***c.** For vividness of narration it is used, as in Latin and some other languages, for the past; this is known as the *historical present*.

Trovandomi vicino a una stazione, v <sup>o</sup> lli fare una corsa per la strada sotterranea. Scendo due o tre scale, e mi trovo tutt' a un tratto sbalzato dal giorno alla notte	Happening near a station, I <b>decided</b> to take a ride on the under- ground railway. I <b>descend</b> two or three steps, and <b>find</b> myself suddenly transported out of day into night
---	---

**140. Past Tenses of the Indicative.** *a.* These are not susceptible of really logical analysis. The **past absolute** describes a past action, and translates the English simple past.

Ricevei una lettera ieri Morì a Parigi nel 1860	I <b>received</b> a letter yesterday He <b>died</b> in Paris in 1860
--	---

*b.* The **present perfect** may be used —

1. Generally speaking, to translate the corresponding English tense, expressing an action completed within a period that has not yet expired.

Abbiamo speso tanto denaro Molti soldati sono arrivati questa settimana	We <b>have spent</b> much money Many soldiers <b>have arrived</b> this week
---	---

2. For an action completed since midnight.

Stamane ho scritte tre lettere	This morning I <b>wrote</b> three letters
--------------------------------	---

3. To describe an action which happened at an unstated time in the past, whose consequences extend into the present.

Ho perduto il mio orologio L' Ariosto ha scritto l' <i>Orlando</i> <i>Furioso</i> Colombo ha scoperto l' America	I <b>have lost</b> my watch Ariosto <b>wrote</b> the <i>Orlando Furioso</i> Columbus <b>discovered</b> America
---	--

NOTE. Outside of Tuscany the distinction between past absolute and present perfect is not carefully enough observed, and foreigners who have studied French are in danger of using the present perfect too much. Still, usage varies with mental attitude, vivid interest, etc.

c. The **past descriptive** is used to express incomplete or habitual action ; to describe an action that was taking place when something else occurred ; and in description.

<b>Chiacchieravano</b>	They were <b>chatting</b>
Noi si <b>andava</b> spesso al teatro l' inverno	We <b>used to go</b> often to the theater in winter
<b>Scriveva</b> quando <b>entrai</b>	He was <b>writing</b> when I <b>entered</b>
Un <b>velo</b> nero <b>cadeva</b> dalle due parti	A black veil <b>descended</b> on both sides
Il tempo <b>era</b> cattivo	The weather <b>was</b> bad
Il castello <b>era</b> a cavaliere di una valle angusta e <b>serviva</b> di confine ai due stati	The castle <b>bestrode</b> a narrow valley, and <b>acted</b> as boundary to the two states

1. Cf. 139, a, 1.

\*2. It is often found substituted for the past future perfect (especially in **bisognare**, **convenire**, **dovere**, **potere**) and sometimes for the past subjunctive.

Sarei andato se potevo	} <i>are all equivalent to</i>	} { Sarei andato se avessi potuto	
Andavo se avessi potuto			} { I should have gone if I had been able
Andavo se potevo			

d. The **past perfect** translates the English past perfect except where the second past perfect is required (cf. e).

Mentre il frate <b>stava</b> così meditando, Renzo <b>era comparso</b> sull'uscio ; ma visto il padre soprappensiero e le donne <b>che facevan</b> cenno di non disturbarlo, si <b>fermò</b> sulla soglia	While the friar <b>stood</b> thus in meditation, Renzo <b>had appeared</b> at the door ; but seeing the holy father in thought, and the women <b>making</b> signs not to disturb him, he <b>stopped</b> on the threshold
---	--

1. Past tenses of **nāscere**. 'Was born' is variously translated : **è nato**, of a person still living ; **era nato**, of one recently dead ; **nacque**, of one long dead.

e. The **second past perfect** translates the past perfect —

1. In temporal clauses beginning with **appena**, **quando**, **tostochè**, etc., immediately followed by a principal clause whose verb is in the past absolute.

Quando <b>ebbe serrato</b> l'uscio dietro a sè, <b>vide</b> un uomo ritirarsi pian piano, strisciando il muro	When he <b>had locked</b> the door behind him, he <b>saw</b> a man withdrawing very softly, skirting the wall
---	---

2. In such phrases as this :

Fra cinque minuti li <b>ebbe finiti</b>	He had them finished in five minutes
---	--------------------------------------

NOTE. To temporal clauses with either the past perfect or second past perfect, is very often preferred in actual usage the absolute construction with the participle (cf. 195).

**141. The Future Tense.** The future tense is used —

*a.* Contrary to English usage,

1. To indicate possibility or probability ; when the action referred to is past, the future becomes future perfect.

L' <b>avrò</b> perduto	I <b>must</b> have lost it
<b>Saranno</b> le otto	It <b>must</b> , <i>or may</i> , be eight o'clock
<b>Sarà</b> un' illusione, <b>sarà</b> vero	It <b>may</b> be true, it <b>may</b> be an illusion

2. To indicate actual future time after **quando**, **se**, etc.

Quando la <b>vedrò</b> , glielo dirò	When I <b>see</b> her, I shall tell her so
--------------------------------------	--

\*3. As an alternative to the present subjunctive,

*a.* To indicate possibility.

Bada, che ti <b>brucerai</b>	Take care, you <b>may</b> burn yourself
------------------------------	---

*b.* When the dependent clause refers to future time (169, *i*, N. 1).

Credo che <b>verranno</b>	I think they will come
---------------------------	------------------------

*b.* As in English,

\*1. Instead of the imperative, in a general precept or when the action is not to be performed immediately.

<b>Amerai</b> il prossimo tuo come te stesso	Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself
---	--



**142. The Past Future.** *a.* The past future is used like the English forms with *should, would, might*, to express what is uncertain or indefinite in the principal clause.

Potrēbbero şmarrirsi	They <b>might lose</b> their way
Non mi farebbe spęcie	It <b>would not surprise</b> me
Si direbbe che fosse pazzo	One <b>would say</b> he was mad

*b.* To express future time in relation to the past tense of a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

Dice che farà, diceva che farebbe, il giro del mondo	He <b>says he will, he said he would,</b> make the tour of the world
---	---

1. When the statement made has failed to come true, the past future perfect is required.

Dissero che sarebbero venuti	They <b>said they would come</b> (but they did not)
------------------------------	---

*c.* In deferential or polite requests.

Vorrei vedere i suoi quadri	I <b>should like</b> to see his pictures
-----------------------------	--

*d.* In a statement reported by hearsay, on the authority of another.

Secondo i nostri dispacci, la Germania avrebbe dichiarato la guerra alla Francia	According to our telegrams, Germany <b>has</b> declared war upon France
--	---

*e.* In the conclusion of conditional sentences (cf. 93).

NOTE. In general, the past future perfect is often used in Italian where English would employ the simple past future.

Ciascuno studiava il luogo dove avrebbe dovuto cacciare la baionetta	Each one considered the point where he <b>should have</b> to drive his bayonet
--	--

**\*143. Sequence of Tenses.** If the present or future of the independent clause be changed to a past tense, the present

of the dependent clause is changed to the past descriptive, the present perfect to the past perfect.

Lo lodò perchè fa, ha } fatto, bene	} becomes	{ Lo lodavo ( <i>or</i> lodai) perchè faceva, aveva fatto, bene
--	-----------	--

*a.* If the dependent clause states a general truth, the present tense may stand.

Galileo diceva che il mondo si muove	Galileo said that the world moves
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

**\*144. Agreement of Verb with Subject.** *a.* If there is more than one subject, the verb is plural.

Il monārchico e il repubblicano non sono d'accordo	The monarchist and the republican do not agree
---	---

1. But if there is close alliance between them, a singular verb may be admitted.

Grande è la fierèzza e la voracità della talpe	The temerity and voracity of the mole are considerable
---	---

2. Two or more singular subjects of the third person connected by *o* take a singular verb.

L'uno o l'altro verrà senza fallo	One or other of them will come without fail
-----------------------------------	--

3. Singular subjects connected by *con* or *nè* may take the verb in the singular or plural.

Non verrà, verranno, nè l'uno nè l'altro	Neither the one nor the other will come
---	--

La zia colla nipote partì, partirono, sul far del giorno	The aunt with the niece departed at daybreak
---	---

*b.* If the subjects are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second, with the second in preference to the third.

Lo duca ed io per quel cammino ascoso Entrammo [DANTE]	The leader and I entered upon that secret way
---	--

Tu e lui siete dalla mia	You and he are on my side
--------------------------	---------------------------

**c.** The verb of a relative clause agrees in person and number with the antecedent.

Voi, che intendendo il terzo ciel      You who by understanding move  
movete                                      the third heaven

**d.** Collective nouns take a plural verb usually, if followed by a plural noun in a phrase with **di**.

La maggior parte degli Italiani      The majority of the Italians wished  
desideravano la libertà                      for liberty

**\*145. Inversion of Verb and Subject.** The subject frequently follows the verb in Italian, there being no hard and fast rule about it. Such inversion may occur —

**a.** In interrogative sentences (cf. 62, **b**), unless beginning with an interrogative pronoun.

**b.** With impersonal verbs, especially with the partitive.

Ci mancano dieci minuti alle otto      It lacks ten minutes to eight  
Ve ne ha tanti                                      There are so many of them

**c.** For emphasis or contrast.

L'ha detto anche lei                      *She* said so too  
S'egli mi parlava una lingua che      If he spoke to me in a language I  
io non capivo, io potevo bene      did not understand, I might well  
parlargli una lingua che non      speak to him in a language *he*  
capisse lui                                      would not understand

**d.** With participles in the absolute construction (cf. 136, **h**).

Parlando tu, tutti stanno attenti      When you talk, every one gives  
heed

**e.** In exhortations, wishes, or imprecations.

Ci fossi tu!                                      If you were only here!  
Lo ricompensi Iddio!                      May God reward him!

*f.* In relative clauses and indirect questions.

Le mostrerò il gioiello che m' ha dato lo zio	I'll show you the jewel my uncle gave me
Domando dove sono le seconde classi	I ask where the second-class places are

*g.* In adverbial clauses of time or place.

Dal fondo della escavazione cen- trale si partono le gallerie secondarie	From the end of the central excavation start the secondary galleries
Nel 1817 capitò a Venezia un viaggiatore inglese	In 1817 there happened to come to Venice an English traveler

*h.* With verbs which take the dative of the person.

Le dispiace la notizia	The news causes her pain
Gli tremavano le labbra	His lips trembled

*i.* When the subject or predicate has long modifying clauses, which should logically be placed near it.

Quale uomo fosse il Thour, quanto l'Italia gli debba, come in lui s'accoppiasse alla lucidità della mente la bontà del cuore, dice in questo volume il biografo con autorità che non è dato ad alcuno di pareggiare	What kind of man Thour was, how much Italy owes him, how in him goodness of heart was united to clearness of mind, the biographer tells in this volume with an authority which it is given to no one else to equal
---	--

*j.* In general, in narrative style and in conversation, to avoid pedantry, or to emphasize the verb.

Venne subito la disfatta di Novara	The defeat of Novara came soon after
È morto il papa	The pope is dead

*k.* The subject may follow both verb and predicate nominative.

Era presidente del Consiglio Mās- simo d'Azeglio	Massimo d'Azeglio was President of the Council
---	---

## VOCABULARY

l' allōdola ( <i>f.</i> ) lark	agguantare possess oneself of
il brano scrap, fragment; fare a brani tear to pieces	appollaiarsi roost, lodge
la civiltà civilization	avventarsi (a) fall (upon)
il falco ( <i>pl.</i> -chi) hawk, falcon	cacciare hunt, drive out
la fatica ( <i>pl.</i> -che) fatigue	succhiare suck
il nonno grandfather	dopochè ( <i>conj.</i> ) after
il pezzo piece	dovesse 3 <i>sg. p. subj. of dovere</i>
il resto remainder, rest	fēcero 3 <i>pl. p. abs. of fare</i>
il risorgimento resurrection	già already
il sēcolo century	nonostante che ( <i>with subj.</i> ) not- withstanding that
lo straniero stranger, alien	per uno apiece
il suolo soil	qualche some ( <i>indef. adj. w. sg. n.</i> )
altro other	sotto under
	via ( <i>adv.</i> ) away

## EXERCISE

## I

## UN PO' DI STORIA DEL RISORGIMENTO ITALIANO

Nonostante che la nostra Italia dovesse essere sacra per gli uomini di tutto il mondo dopochè da essa avevano imparato le arti, le scienze, le indūstrie e la civiltà sotto tutte le forme, gli stranieri, in altri tempi, l' hanno sempre guardata come i falchi guardano le allodole: per avventarcisi, per farla a brani e per agguantarsene un pezzo per uno.

E disgraziatamente per noi, non si contentarono di guardarla, ma fecero anche il resto.

Voi, ragazzi italiani, avrete già qualche idea di quello che i vostri nonni e i vostri babbi hanno fatto per cacciar via dal nostro suolo i vampiri che da secoli vi s' erano appollaiati per succhiargli il sangue.

Ora i vampiri se ne sono andati. Ma quante fatiche, quanti pericoli e quanti morti!



## II

(Involves 139, 140, 141, 142)

1. The duke possessed himself of the state. 2. If many Italians had not fought for their country, they would not have driven out the alien from their soil. 3. He read my letter after I had written it for the second time. 4. Your grandfathers drove out the strangers from Italy, because they had sucked her blood for centuries. 5. According to the letter I received this morning, my mother has returned to Paris. 6. This is the shortest letter I have ever received from her. 7. The palace of the stranger was larger than the house which was near it. 8. Hawks fall upon the other birds. 9. The Spaniard said he would come before noon, but he has not yet arrived. 10. Where is my umbrella? I must have left it in that compartment. 11. We were talking of John's pupil when he entered. 12. We used to see her every week last winter, but we have not seen her this year. 13. When he had bought the tickets, he put them in his pocket. 14. When I arrive at my grandfather's I shall find the others there.

## LESSON XXII

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *ANDARE*

**146. The Definite Article.** The definite article is used far more in Italian than in English. It is used where it would not be in English —

- a. Before the possessive adjective (cf. 107, 108).
- b. Before abstract nouns and nouns denoting a whole class (cf. 73, a).
- c. Before family names of men; often, especially to imply familiarity or affection, before given names of women; rarely before given names of men, when referring to a character

or to the man's works; sometimes before the surnames of women, to indicate fame or familiarity.

Il Tasso passò sette anni in prigione a Ferrara	Tasso spent seven years in prison at Ferrara
La Lauretta è una brava bambina	Laura is a capable little girl
L'Amleto del Shakespeare	Shakespeare's Hamlet
Ha molto studiato il Dante	He has studied Dante (the works of Dante) a great deal
La piccola Bugiani	The little Bugiani girl
La Duse	Duse, the great actress

1. When men's surnames, as Garibaldi's, are in very familiar and affectionate use, the article would be an affectation.

*d.* Before names of continents, countries, and provinces; and names of lakes, islands, mountains, and rivers (except *Arno*).

L'Australia è molto lontana dall'Europa	Australia is very far from Europe
Viva l'Italia!	Long live Italy!

1. After *in* meaning 'in' or 'to' a country it is omitted with names ending in *a* (unless modified).

Resteremo tutta l'estate in Italia	We shall remain all summer in Italy
But	
Stetti due mesi nel Belgio	I stayed two months in Belgium
È mai stato nel Giappone?	Have you ever been in Japan?
Avēvano passato l'inverno nella Francia meridionale	They had spent the winter in southern France

2. It is omitted likewise after *di*, when preposition and noun are equivalent to an adjective of nationality (cf. 147, *d*).

Il re d'Inghilterra	The king of England, the English king
Vini di Francia	French wines

3. A few names of cities require the article, such as **l' Aia** 'the Hague,' **il Cairo** 'Cairo,' **la Spęzia** 'Spezia,' etc.

4. Among names of islands which do not take the article are **Cręta** 'Crete,' **Cipro** 'Cyprus,' **Rędi** 'Rhodes.'

**e.** Instead of the possessive: with parts of the body or clothing, or some names of relatives; in general, where the idea of possession is intimate and there cannot be ambiguity (cf. 109); sometimes with **ne** to translate 'its' (cf. 107, c).

Si levò <b>l' impermeabile</b>	He took off <b>his</b> raincoat
<b>I capelli</b> gli scendevano fin <b>sulle</b> spalle	<b>His</b> hair fell down to <b>his</b> shoulders
Come sta <b>la</b> mamma?	How is <b>your</b> mother?

1. Likewise after **avere**, of personal characteristics.

Egli ha <b>gli occhi</b> azzurri	He has blue eyes
Ella ha <b>le</b> mani piccole	She has small hands

\*2. In poetic usage this may be in an adverbial accusative construction.

Poggiati <b>il ginocchio</b> allo scudo	Leaning their knees against their shields
---	--

**f.** Before the number of the year or the hour, or the name of a particular month.

Il Petrarca nacque <b>nel</b> 1304	Petrarch was born in 1304
Verrò da Lei <b>alle</b> cinque	I shall come to your house at five
<b>Nell'</b> ottobre dell' anno scorso	In October of last year

**g.** Distributively,

1. In expressing measure.

Hę pagato queęta sęta cinque lire il mętro	I paid five francs a meter for this silk
---	---

2. With days of the week, to mean 'every.'

La mia maęstra d' italiano vięne da mę <b>il mercoledì</b>	My Italian teacher comes to me on <b>Wednesdays, or every Wednes-</b> <b>day</b>
---	--

*a.* Without article, the name of a day of the week may be understood to refer to the last or the next one.

Lo vidi lunedì I saw him on **Monday**, last **Monday**

*h.* Before a title followed by a proper name.

È arrivata la regina Èlena nel suo yacht Queen Helen arrived in her yacht

È in casa la Signora Casagrande? Is Mrs. Casagrande at home?

*i.* Before any other part of speech used as a noun.

Mi duole il dirlo It pains me to say it

Rifiutò di dirmi il perchè He refused to tell me the reason

Pensava con grande sgomento al come avrei fatto a pagare I thought with great anxiety of how I should manage to pay

*j.* In constructing the superlative degree (cf. 116).

\**k.* In a number of idiomatic phrases :

Dare il buon giorno To say good morning

Dire le bugie To tell lies

Fare il Natale To keep Christmas

Fare le scuse To make excuses

*l.* Many such phrases take the feminine article alone, with a noun, presumably *cosa*, understood. (Or this may be considered the feminine conjunctive pronoun, replacing *la cosa*.)

Avèr la cõn To have a grudge against

Darla vinta a To surrender

Dìrsela con To be congenial to

Dirla schietta To speak frankly

Farla da padrone To act arrogantly, play the master

Farla finita To make an end of it

Io la veggio brutta It looks bad to me

Legàrsela al dito To hold a grudge

Saperla lunga To know all about it

**147. The Definite Article is Omitted —**

*a.* In the vocative, and after a pronominal adjective or a numeral.

S' accōmodi, Signore. Il signōre	Sit down, sir. The gentleman sits
s' accōmoda	down
Questo lume	This lamp
Due scodēlle	Two soup-plates

*b.* In proverbs.

Cōsa fatta capo ha	A thing done has an end, is ended
--------------------	-----------------------------------

*c.* In enumerations, if summed up collectively.

Nōbili, popolani, contadini, uōmini, dōnne, tutti s' affollavano allo scalo	Nobles, populace, peasants, men, women, everybody was throng- ing down to the landing-place
---	---

*d.* With *di*, to indicate material, contents, intimate characteristics, or nationality.

Il vestito di sēta	The silk dress
Il bicchiē d' acqua	The glass of water
Il maēstro d' italiano	The Italian teacher
La cioccolata di Svīzzera	Swiss chocolate
Una moltitūdine di pellegrini	A multitude of pilgrims

*\*e.* In many set phrases, such as

A letto	In bed
A scuōla	At school
Barca a rēmi	Rowboat
Da mane a sēra	From morning till night
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di settēmbre	In September
In casa	At home
In città	In town
In piēdi	On one's feet
Uōmo di giudīzio	Man of judgment, good behavior



**\*148. Agreement of Definite Article with Two or more Nouns.**

*a.* In a series of substantives of the same number and gender, the article may be used with one alone.

Le montagne, valli e piagge della Riviera italiana sono bellissime	The mountains, valleys, and coasts of the Italian Riviera are most beautiful
---	--

But

Le montagne ed i ghiacci della Svizzera	The mountains and glaciers of Switzerland
--	--

**149. The Verb *andare* 'go.'**

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *andare, andando, vado, anderò or andrò, andai, andato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
vado, <i>or</i> vò	andiamo	vada	andiamo
vai	andate	vada	andiate
va	vanno	vada	vādano

For the imperative, cf. 130, *e*.

*a.* Special uses of *andare*.

1. *Andare* takes *a* before the infinitive. To 'go and' is translated *andare a*.

<i>Andrò a</i> comprare della carta da scrivere	I shall go and buy some writing- paper
--	---

2. *Andare* with the present participle translates the verb 'be,' with an additional idea of continuation (cf. 102).

<i>Va crescendo</i> a poco a poco	It is growing little by little
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

3. With the past participle, it makes a passive carrying the additional idea of obligation or propriety (cf. 97, *a*, 1).

I ragazzi italiani non vanno man- dati soli a scuola	Italian boys are never sent to school unaccompanied
Questo non va messo qui	This isn't to be put here

**\*b.** Idioms with **andare**.

Andare a cavallo	To go on horseback
Andare in collera	To become angry
Andare dietro a	To be inferior to; to follow
Andare in estasi	To go into ecstasies
Andare fuori	To go out
Andare a piedi	To go on foot
Andar superbo	To be proud
A lungo andare	In the long run

## VOCABULARY

il caffè	coffee	andare a cavallo	ride horseback
la conoscenza	acquaintance	andare a piedi	go on foot
il figlio	son	aprire, apersi, aperto	open
la figlia	daughter	aver piacere di	be pleased to
il latte	milk	conoscere, conobbi, conosciuto	be acquainted with, meet, become acquainted with
Milano	Milan	dar fuoco a	set fire to
Nāpoli	Naples	dar la buona notte	<i>etc.</i> say good night <i>etc.</i>
il principe	prince	dar noia a	annoy
la principessa	princess	dar pensiero a	worry ( <i>tr.</i> )
la regina	queen	incontrare	meet, run across
il romanzo	novel	presentare	introduce
la seta	silk	restare	stay, remain
come al solito	as usual	sperare	hope
per il solito	usually	chiudere, chiusi, chiuso	close
in casa	at home		
f fuori	out		
or ora	just now		
quest' altro	next, coming		

## EXERCISE

## I

1. È in casa la Signorina Conti? No, Signora, è andata fuori.
2. Buon giorno, Signora. Mi permetta di presentarle il Signor Orselli.
3. Ho piacere di far la Sua conoscenza.
4. Dove sono le Sue figlie? Perché non sono venute con Lei?
5. Sono andate in

Francia. Ci resteranno due mesi, e passeranno l'estate in Inghilterra. 6. Dove ha conosciuto il Signor Pisani? A Napoli. Conosco lui e sua sorella. 7. Conosce il nuovo romanzo del Fogazzaro? Desidero di comprarlo. 8. Dove va, Signorina? Vado da mia zia. Spero che sarà in casa. 9. Non ci sarà. L'ho vista or ora in Via Cavour. 10. Andiamo a trovarla. L'incontreremo per la strada. 11. Ha sentito che il Bianchi è andato in Inghilterra? 12. Sono andata questa mattina dalla mia maestra d'inglese. 13. Ci vo il martedì e il venerdì, e pago tre lire la lezione. 14. Come si chiama la regina d'Italia? Si chiama la regina Elena. 15. Ha visto la principessa Vittoria? Ha gli occhi neri, e le mani molto piccole. 16. Andai la settimana scorsa a fare il Natale da mio cognato. 17. L'Italia è la nostra patria. 18. Di giugno si va per il solito in campagna, e si torna di settembre in città. 19. Non si dia pensiero. 20. Leggevo il famoso romanzo del Manzoni quando venne la mia amica a trovarmi. 21. Le do noia se apro la finestra? L'aveva chiusa or ora. 22. Desidera una tazza di caffè e latte?

## II

1. We usually came into town in October. 2. America is larger than Europe. 3. Manzoni was a writer of Italy. He was born in Milan. 4. We opened the door, as usual, but they closed it. 5. Orselli has gone to France. He will stay three weeks with Count Costa. 6. Let me introduce you to Princess Porciani. 7. Have the soldiers set fire to our house? 8. I should have opened the window of the compartment, but it would have annoyed one of the passengers. 9. Is Mrs. B. at home? No, miss, she has gone out. 10. Did she go on foot? No, she went on horseback. 11. This news worries us. 12. The children came and said good-morning to their teacher. 13. I wish to read Fogazzaro's best novel. 14. Having read it, I shall talk of it to my friends. 15. Where did you meet Miss C.? I am not acquainted with her. 16. Permit me to introduce to you Mr. B. 17. I am happy to make your acquaintance.

18. We were reading, when they came and said good morning to us. 19. Bring me a glass of milk. 20. Here is my cousin's silk dress. 21. When I go to her house I shall carry it to her. 22. Where are your books, Laretta? Go and find them.

## III

## L' ARRIVO IN UNA STAZIONE FERROVIARIA ITALIANA

Si arriva a Firenze. Un lungo fischio, il treno rallenta, poi si ferma alla stazione. State pensando commosso a tutto quello che avete a vedere in questa bellissima città; ma queste emozioni sono interrotte bruscamente dagli altri viaggiatori che cominciano a buttar giù i loro bagagli dalla rete, con gran pericolo di farvi male. Quelli che li hanno già in mano si sporgono allo sportelló, chiamando: — Facchino! — Se hanno la fortuna di trovarne uno pronto, lo caricano di tanti sacchi, tante valigie, tante borse, da farlo parere più ciuco che uomo. Vi mena all' uscita dove dovete dare il vostro biglietto all' impiegato, poichè in Italia si deve renderlo non solo all' entrata in treno ma anche all' uscire dalla stazione. È il facchino che vi trova una carrozza, o un legno, come si chiama a Firenze. Ci mette tutta la vostra roba e vi salite anche voi. Poi gli dite di andare nel bagagliaio per ritirarne il vostro baule, dandogli la bolletta. Mentre che lo aspettate, vedete uscire dalla stazione tanta gente frettolosa, affollata, occupata a chiamarsi, a urtarsi, a stringersi la mano, baciandosi sulle gote anche gli uomini, che è un piacere a vederli. Ecco il vostro facchino col baule su un carretto. In un attimo il baule è sulla vettura, e al facchino che sta in aspettativa davanti a voi, si da una mancia che non basta mai. Per quanto generosa sia, egli vi guarderà con una espressione commóvente, e vi dirà: — Ma . . . è poco! — Bisogna fare l' orecchio da mercante e tirar via per le strade rumorose, fino al Lungarno dove sta il vostro albergo.

## LESSON XXIII

CARDINAL NUMERALS. DATES, TIME, AGE. MONEY.  
MEASUREMENT. THE VERB *MORIRE*

## 150. The Cardinal Numerals are —

1 uno	21 ventuno	100 cento
2 due	22 ventidue	101 centuno
3 tre	23 ventitré	102 centodue
4 quattro	24 ventiquattro	160 centosessanta
5 cinque	25 venticinque	180 centottanta
6 sei	26 ventisei	200 dugento
7 sette	27 ventisette	600 seicento
8 otto	28 ventotto	800 ottocento
9 nove	29 ventinove	1000 mille
10 dieci	30 trenta	1001 mille uno
11 undici	31 trentuno	2000 duemila
12 dodici	32 trentadue	20,000 ventimila
13 tredici	38 trentotto	
14 quattordici	39 trentanove	
15 quindici	40 quaranta	
16 sedici	50 cinquanta	
17 diciassette	60 sessanta	
18 diciotto	70 settanta	
19 diciannove	80 ottanta	
20 venti	90 novanta	

**a.** *Uno* has a feminine *una*, and when used adjectively has the forms of the indefinite article (cf. 59, 60).

*Uno scopo, una patria, un dio*      One purpose, one fatherland, one God

1. With *ventuno*, *trentuno*, etc., used adjectively, the noun should be in the singular when it follows the numeral, in the plural when it precedes, the numeral agreeing in gender only.

*Trentun soldato, soldati trentuno*      Thirty-one soldiers

*Centuna lira, lire centuna*      One hundred and one lire



*b.* With **cento** and **mille** the indefinite article is not used. The plural of **mille** is **mila**.

<b>Cento</b> uōmini e <b>mille</b> cavalli	<b>A hundred men and a thousand horses</b>
--	--

*c.* 'Eleven hundred,' 'twelve hundred,' etc., must be translated 'one thousand one hundred' etc.

La prima crociata ebbe luogo circa il <b>millecento</b>	The First Crusade took place about 1100
--	--

La guęrra civile americana in- cominciò nel <b>milleottocento</b> sessantuno	The American Civil War began in 1861
--	---

*d.* 'Both' = **tutti e due**, **tutt' e due**; 'all three' = **tutti e tre**; etc. If a noun follows, it takes the article.

Tutt' e due gli amici	Both (the) friends
-----------------------	--------------------

*e.* The numerals above twenty may be written as one word or as two except when the digit is one or eight, when they must be written as one.

Ventidue, venti due; quarantuno; sessantotto; trenta sei, trentasei

\**f.* **Cento** may be written **cen** when followed by a numeral not accented upon the first syllable.

Centiciassette, cenquaranta; *but* centosei, centoventi, centosedici

**151. Dates.** *a.* For the days of the month, except the first (which takes the ordinal, **primo**), the cardinals are used, preceded by the definite article. Both article and numeral precede the name of the month.

Il <b>quattro</b> gennaio, il <b>25</b> giugno	January fourth, the 25th of June
Il <b>primo</b> agosto	The first of August

*1.* A more stately form inserts the word **di** 'day.' (And for the occasional use of the form **li** in dates, cf. **71, d.**)

Il <b>di</b> ( <i>or addi</i> ) sei di marzo	The sixth of March
--	--------------------

**b.** The definite article precedes the number of the year (cf. 146, *f*).

Lo Shakespeare morì nel 1616      Shakespeare died in 1616

**c.** The number of a century expressed in cardinals serves to indicate the century following (cf. 157, *c*). **Mille** is often dropped.

Il trecento, il milletrecento      The fourteenth century — *lit.* the  
'three hundreds,' the 'thirteen  
hundreds'

Il dugento, l'ottocento      The thirteenth century, the nine-  
teenth century

**d.** 'Ago' is expressed by **fa**, **sono**, or **or sono**, following a measure of time.

Due mesi fa      Two months ago  
Anni sono      Years ago  
Cent'anni or sono      A hundred years ago

**\*e.** Idiomatic phrases :

Otto giorni	A week
Quindici giorni	A fortnight
Oggi a otto	A week from to-day
Doman l'altro	The day after to-morrow
Ieri l'altro, l'altro ieri	The day before yesterday
Ogni tre giorni	Every three days
Un giorno sì, un giorno no	Every other day
Quanti ne abbiamo del mese?	} What day of the month is it?
Quanti ne abbiamo?	
A' quanti siamo del mese?	
Ne abbiamo tre	} It is the third
È il tre	
Siamo ai tre	
Ai tanti del mese	On such a day of the month
A' quanti del mese parte?	On what day of the month does he leave?
Nella prima metà di maggio	In the first half of May

Ai primi di ottobre	In the first days of October
L'anno scorso di luglio	In July of last year
Fra due mesi	Within two months, two months from now
L'ebbe finito in due mesi	He had it finished within two months
Da due anni	For two years past
Anno	} Last year, a year ago
L'altr'anno	
Oggi è l'anno	A year ago to-day
Anno di là	Year before last
Da qui all'ora	From now until then

**152. Time of Day. a.** With numerals indicating the time of day, the definite article precedes, and both article and verb agree with *ora*, *ore*, understood.

Sono le tre	It is three o'clock
Erano le undici e mezzo	It was half-past eleven
Vada alle cinque	Go at five

**b.** In time-tables, and increasingly in general usage, the hours after noon are counted from midnight.

Il treno parte alle diciassette e arriva alle ventidue	The train leaves at 5 P.M. and arrives at 10 P.M.
---	--

1. A.M. and P.M. may be expressed by the adjectives *ante-meridiano* and *pomeridiano*, modifying *ore* understood.

Va dalla maestra alle dieci ante- meridiane	She goes to her teacher at ten in the morning
--	--

**c.** 'One o'clock' is *il tocco* in good Tuscan usage, though *l'una* is used elsewhere.

Il tocco di notte	One o'clock at night
La colazione si serve al tocco	Luncheon is served at one

**d.** 'Noon' is *mezzogiorno*, and means twelve o'clock precisely; *mezzanotte* is 'midnight.'

**\*e.** Idiomatic phrases :

Chę ore sono?	What time is it?
Sono le cinque passate	It is after five
È la mezza	It is half-past
Suonano le due	It is striking two
Quanto c'è alle nove?	How near is it to nine?
Ci mancano dieci minuti alle nove	It lacks ten minutes to nine
Sono le dodici e mezzo	It is half-past twelve
Di quanto sono passate le dieci?	How long after ten is it?
Le dieci sono passate da tanto	It is some time after ten
A che ora devo venire?	At what time shall I come?
Verso le sette	About seven
Sono le due meno un quarto	It is a quarter before two
Sono le otto e dieci	It is ten minutes past eight
Stamane, stasera	This morning, this evening
Stanotte	Last night (until noon; after noon it means 'to-night')

**153. Age.** Age is expressed by means of the verb **avere** with **anni**.

Quanti anni hai?	How old are you?
Ho sette anni	I am seven years old

**a.** In speaking of an infant or an animal, **tempo** replaces **anni**.

Quanto tempo ha questo bimbo?	How old is this baby?
-------------------------------	-----------------------

**154. Money.** The Italian system is decimal, based upon the **lira**, which, like the French franc, is equivalent to nearly 20 cents.

$$\begin{aligned} 5 \text{ centēsimi} &= 1 \text{ soldo} = \text{about } 1 \text{ cent} \\ 100 \text{ centēsimi} &= 20 \text{ soldi} = 1 \text{ lira} \end{aligned}$$

**\*155. Measurement.** Italians use the metric system. The **mętro** equals nearly forty inches, and the **centimętro** is the 100th part of a **mętro**. An inch equals about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  **centimętri**. The **chilęmetro** is a long half-mile; the **chilęgramma** (masculine) a generous two pounds; the **litro** about a quart.

Ho pagato questo nastro una lira il metro	I paid twenty cents a yard for this ribbon
Queste buste sono lunghe quindici centimetri	These envelopes are six inches long
Una stanza della lunghezza di sei metri e della larghezza di quattro metri	A room six meters long by four meters wide

### 156. The Verb *morire* 'die.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *morire, morendo, muoio, morrò, morii, morto*

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

muoio	moriamo
muori	morite
muore	muōiono

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

muoia	moriamo
muoia	moriate
muoia	muōiano

### VOCABULARY

le armi arms (weapons)	il segreto secret
il bimbo baby	le truppe troops
il carbonaro charcoal-burner	Vittōrio Emanuele Victor Em- manuel
il consigliere adviser	accordarsi agree (accordo)
Cristōforo Colombo Christopher Columbus	cacciare chase, drive out
il fulmine thunderbolt	dirigere, dirēssi, dirētto direct
il galantuomo honest man	fallire fail
l'indipendenza <i>f.</i> independence	istituire found, establish
il moto movement	coprire, copērsi, coperto cover
l'opera <i>f.</i> task, achievement	ardito bold
Petrarca Petrarch	dolorosamente sorrowfully
il politico statesman	faticoso laborious
il re king	

### EXERCISE

1. Quegl' Italiani che per i primi si diedero alla faticosa opera di cacciare lo straniero erano i più intelligenti, i più buoni e i più arditi d' Italia. 2. Ma erano pochi e senza armi. 3. Bisognava accordarsi in segreto. 4. Istituirono nel 1820 la società segreta,



così detta, dei Carbonari. 5. I primi moti rivoluzionari preparati da questa società cominciarono a Napoli. 6. Ma dolorosamente fallirono! 7. La liberazione d'Italia fu l'opera di moltissimi eroi. 8. Li diressero quattro grandi uomini: uno scrittore, un re, un soldato, e un uomo politico. 9. Il Mazzini, il grande agitatore, nacque nel 1805 e morì nel 1872; aveva 67 anni. 10. Vittorio Emanuele II, il re galantuomo, nacque il 14 marzo, 1820, e morì il 9 gennaio, 1878. 11. Garibaldi, quel fulmine di guerra, nacque nel 1807 e morì nel 1882. 12. Il conte Cavour, il consigliere del re, nacque nel 1810 e morì nel 1861. 13. Vittorio Emanuele, re di Piemonte, fu dichiarato re d'Italia il 18 febbraio, 1861. 14. Le truppe italiane entrarono vittoriosi in Roma il 20 settembre, 1870. 15. In che giorno nacque Dante Alighieri?

## II

1. In what year was Petrarch born? In 1304. 2. In what year did he die? In 1374. 3. There is a poor man. If I had forty-one lire, I would give them to him. 4. What day of the month is it today? It is the 17th. 5. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. 6. They wish me to leave at 7.30 P.M. 7. How old is your father? He is fifty; he was born fifty years ago. 8. How many books have you? I have more than a thousand. 9. At what time to-morrow shall I return to your house? At a quarter past eight in the evening. 10. The Spaniard died last month in Paris. He was born in 1872, and was forty-three years old. 11. Shakespeare was born in 1564 and died in 1616. 12. How old was he when he died? He was fifty-two. 13. What time is it? It is twenty minutes past ten. It lacks ten minutes to eleven. 14. How old is this baby? He is three months old; he was born on the twenty-eighth of March. 15. The author died on the twenty-third of January, 1913, at two o'clock in the morning. 16. On what day did King Victor Emmanuel die?

## LESSON XXIV

ORDINALS. COLLECTIVES. MULTIPLICATIVES.  
INDETERMINATES. THE VERB *PARERE*

157. Ordinals. The ordinal numerals are —

1st	primo	20th	{ ventēſimo vigēſimo
2d	ſecondo	21st	{ ventunēſimo ventēſimo primo
3d	terzo	22d	{ ventiduēſimo ventēſimo ſecondo
4th	quarto		<i>etc.</i>
5th	quinto	30th	trentēſimo
6th	ſeſto	40th	quarantēſimo
7th	ſeſtimo	50th	cinquantēſimo
8th	ottavo	60th	ſeſſantēſimo
9th	nono	70th	ſettantēſimo
10th	dēcimo	80th	ottantēſimo
11th	{ undēcimo undicēſimo dēcimo primo	90th	novantēſimo
12th	{ duodēcimo dodicēſimo dēcimo ſecondo	100th	centēſimo
13th	{ tredicēſimo dēcimo terzo	101st	centēſimo primo
14th	{ quattordicēſimo dēcimo quarto	102d	centēſimo ſecondo
15th	{ quindicēſimo dēcimo quinto		<i>etc.</i>
16th	{ ſedicēſimo dēcimo ſeſto	130th	centotrentēſimo
17th	{ diciſettēſimo dēcimo ſeſtimo	170th	centoſettantēſimo
18th	{ diciottēſimo dēcimo ottavo	200th	dugentēſimo
19th	{ diciannovēſimo dēcimo nono	500th	cinquecentēſimo
		600th	ſecentēſimo
		1000th	millēſimo
		1001st	millēſimo primo
			<i>etc.</i>
		2000th	duemillēſimo
		30,000th	trentamillēſimo
		100,000th	centomillēſimo

*a.* The ordinals are adjectives, and agree as such.

La quarantēſima pāgina                      The fortieth page

*b.* Fractions below one half are expressed by ordinals.

Cinque miglia e tre quarti                      Five and three-quarters miles

1. 'Half' is translated as an adjective by *mezzo*, as a noun by *la metà*. *Mezzo* agrees when it precedes.

Mangiò mezza la pera                      He ate half the pear

Una mezz' ora                      A half hour

Sono le tre e mezzo                      It is half-past three

Ne prese la metà                      He took half of it

*c.* The number of the century may be expressed by ordinals (cf. 151, *c*).

Il sēcolo dēcimo quarto                      The fourteenth century

*d.* Numerical titles of rulers, and of volumes, chapters, etc., are indicated by the ordinals following, without article.

Carlo quinto                      Charles the Fifth

Luigi dēcimosēsto                      Louis XVI

Capitolo terzo                      Chapter three

*e.* Ordinals precede cardinals in such phrases as

I primi sei canti                      The first six cantos

\*158. Collectives. *a.* The commonest are —

una coppia a couple                      un milione a million

un paio a pair                      un miliardo a billion (U.S.), thou-  
sand millions (Eng.)

una decina half a score

una dozzina a dozen                      un biliardo a trillion (U.S.), billion  
(Eng.)

una ventina a score

un centinaio about a hundred                      ambedue, entrambi both

un migliaio about a thousand

1. 'About' so many may be indicated by *da* or *un* before a cardinal.

Da seicento                      About six hundred

Un settanta                      About seventy

**b.** Collectives with special meanings :

1. *Games*: **ambo**, **terno**, **quaderno**, **cinquina**, 'a two,' 'a three,' etc., in the lottery, or certain games of cards.

2. *Paper*: **un quaderno**, **un quinterno**, a packet of four, of five sheets.

3. *Time*: **centenario** 'centenary'; **triduo**, **novena**, **quarantena**, periods of three, nine, forty days; **bimestre**, **trimestre**, **quadrimestre**, **semestre**, periods of two, three, four, six months; **biennio**, **triennio**, **quinquennio**, **sessennio**, **decennio**, **centennio**, **millennio**, periods of two, three, etc. years.

4. *Versification*: **La terzina** or **il terzetto**, **la quartina**, **la sestina**, **l'ottava**, etc., three-, four-, six-, or eight-versed stanzas; **quadernario**, **quinario**, **senario**, **ottonario**, etc., four-, five-, six-, or eight-syllabled verses.

5. **Binario** is used of the two rails of a railway-track.

**\*159. Multiplicatives.** *a.* Multiplicatives are the adjectives (also used substantively) **doppio** 'double,' **triplo** 'triple,' **quadruplo** 'quadruple,' **quintuplo** 'fivefold,' **sestuplo** 'sixfold,' **centuplo** 'one hundredfold,' etc. Similar forms may be constructed with **volte** 'times.'

Una scatola a **doppio** fondo

A double-bottomed box

**Dodici** è il **triplo** di quattro

Twelve is three times four

La mia parte era **dieci volte** più grande della sua

My share was ten times as great as his

**Due alla volta**

Two at a time

1. The similar forms **duplici**, **triplice**, etc. are used only as adjectives, and only of abstract things.

La **Triplice** Alleanza

The Triple Alliance

*b.* Arithmetical processes :

Cinque <b>via</b> cinque, venticinque	Five times five are twenty-five
Due e due <b>fanno</b> quattro	Two and two make four
Dieci <b>meno</b> cinque, cinque	Ten minus five leaves five

**160. Indeterminate Numerals.** These are **molto**, **poco**, **troppo**, **tutto**, **tanto**, **quanto**, and **parecchi** (f. **parecchie**) 'several.' When used as adjectives, they agree, and dispense with the article (except **tutto**, cf. *c.*). When used substantively, the masculine singular is abstract and neuter in meaning, while the masculine plural refers to persons. For their use as adverbs, cf. **89, b.**

Ho <b>troppo</b> cose da fare	I have too many things to do
Spende <b>poco</b>	He spends little
<b>Parecchie</b> donne avēvano paura	Several women were afraid
<b>Molti</b> hanno abbandonato la città	Many have abandoned the city

*\*a.* **Molto.** Tuscan usage sanctions **di** before **molto**.

Ha perduto il denaro, e ne aveva <b>di molto</b>	He has lost his money, and he had a great deal
---	---

*b.* **Poco.** Preceded by **un** it means 'a little,' and is often shortened to **po'**; it is used adverbially in this form to mean 'just.' In the plural it means 'few,' 'a few.'

Mi dia <b>un po'</b> di pane	Give me <b>a little</b> bread
<b>Pochi</b> la pēnsano come me	<b>Few</b> are of my opinion
Dimmi <b>un po'</b>	<b>Just</b> tell me

*c.* **Tutto** used adjectively precedes the article and the noun, unless it follows both. The article is required.

<b>Tutti</b> gli uōmini	<b>All</b> men, <b>all</b> the men
<b>Gli</b> uccelli <b>tutti</b>	<b>All</b> birds, <b>all</b> the birds

## 1. In the singular it may mean 'whole.'

<b>Tutto</b> il giorno	<b>All</b> day, <b>the</b> whole day
<b>Tutto</b> un giorno	<b>All</b> one day, <b>a</b> whole day



2. Reinforced by **quanto** it means 'all possible,' 'all there were,' 'all of them,' 'every one of them.'

**Tutti quanti** fuggirono                      **Every one of them** fled

3. Before a relative, **tutto** takes **quello** or **ciò**.

**Tutto quello** che disse fu vero              **All that** he said was true

*d.* **Poco, molto, troppo, tanto**, and **quanto** are often used as referring to time.

Stette **molto** a tornare

He was a **long time** getting back

Ci vorrà **troppo**

It will take **too long**

**Quanto** ci sarà da aspettare?

**How long** will there be to wait?

Dopo **non molto**

After a **short time**

**Ogni quanto** c'è il tram?

**How often** does the tram run?

**Ogni tanto**

**Every so often, every little while**

**Poco** fa

**A little while ago**

Fra **poco**

**In a little while**

## 161. The Verb *parere* 'seem.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **parere, parendo, paio, parrò, parvi or parsi, parso or paruto**

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

paio	paiamo
pari	parete
pare	pàiono

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

paia	paiamo
paia	paiate
paia	pàiano

## VOCABULARY

**Borbone** *m.* Bourbon

il **Lombardo-Vēneto** Lombardy and Venetia

il **ducato** duchy

il **mestiere** trade

le **Due Sicilie** the Two Sicilies,  
Naples and Sicily

la **paglia** straw; **muovere** ~ stir

**Enrico** Henry

la **pera** pear

**Filippo** Philip

il **Piemonte** Piedmont

**Giorgio** George

il **regnante** ruler

il **granducato** grand duchy

il **regno** kingdom

l' **impēro** *m.* empire

la **Savōia** Savoy

il tornaconto advantage  
la Toscana Tuscany

dividere, divisi, diviso divide  
eleggere, eletti, eletto elect  
intendere, intesi, inteso understand  
muovere, mossi, mosso move  
reggere, ressi, retto rule

davvero truly, indeed  
dietro behind  
faccio *1 sg. pres. ind. of fare (irr.)*  
do, make  
faceva *3 sg. past descr. ind. of fare*  
nulla anything; *with non*, nothing  
o well, now  
sotto under  
veramente really

## EXERCISE

## I

## PIPPO DICE LA STORIA

Un signore che visita la scuola domanda a un contadinello :

— Come ti chiami ?

— Pippo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— E tuo padre come si chiama ?

— Gasparo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— Che mestiere fa ?

— Il contadino.

— Ti piace il mestiere del contadino ?

— Sissignore.

— Perché ?

— Perché si sta sempre all' aria aperta, si lavora di molto e siamo pieni di salute.

— Bravo Pippo! . . . E . . . dimmi un po' : di storia patria ne sai nulla ?

— Sissignore. La so tutta veramente bene.

— O sentiamo. In quale anno incominciarono le guerre per l' indipendenza d' Italia ?

— Nel 1848.

— Va bene ! O dimmi un po', Pippo, in quanti stati si divideva a quel tempo l' Italia ?

— L' Italia era divisa, a quel tempo, in sette stati: il Piemonte sotto la dinastia di Savoia; il Lombardo-Veneto soggetto all' impero d' Austria; il ducato di Parma, quello di Mōdena e il granducato di Toscana, governati da principi i quali non movevano paglia senza il permesso dell' Austria; il Regno delle due Sicilie retto dai Borboni, che erano i peggio di tutto; e lo stato Pontificio.

— Bravo bambino! E . . . dimmi un po'; nel governo di questi piccoli stati era rappresentato il popolo?

— Non capisco.

— C' erano le Camere dei deputati eletti dal popolo, i senatori, i ministri?

— Nossignore. Ogni regnante faceva tutto da sè. Ben inteso che dietro c' era sempre l' Austria che ordinava, proibiva o approvava, secondo il suo tornaconto.

— Avevi ragione. Bravo Pippo! La sai veramente bene davvero, e ne faccio i miei sinceri elogi a te e al tuo maestro.

## II

1. Just tell me, Pippo, how many wars were fought for Italian independence? Three, sir. 2. When began the first? About seventy years ago. 3. And the second? In 1859. 4. And the third? In 1866. 5. Few states of Italy were well governed before the War of Independence. 6. Foreign rulers divided Italy among themselves. 7. Dante was born in the thirteenth century and died in the fourteenth. 8. Louis XIV, Charles IX, Philip II, Henry VIII, and George III were all of them famous rulers. 9. How often does the train for Florence run? 10. It is half past three; it will arrive in a little while. 11. These pears seem good; I will give you half of mine. 12.  $24 - 8 = 16$ .  $27 \times 14 = 378$ .  $117 + 54 = 171$ . 13. I shall not accompany them to the train. It would take too long.

## LESSON XXV

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *FARE*

162. The Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is omitted in Italian —

*a.* Before a predicate noun, unmodified, expressing nationality, or condition in life.

Morì <b>mārtire</b>	He died a <b>martyr</b>
È <b>Italiano</b>	He is an <b>Italian</b>
È <b>professore?</b>	Is he a <b>professor?</b>
Napoleone s'è fatto <b>imperatore</b>	Napoleon became ( <i>or</i> made himself) <b>emperor</b>
Quella signora è <b>contessa</b>	That lady is a <b>countess</b>
Vittorio Emanuele II fu un <b>re</b> <b>valoroso</b>	Victor Emanuel II was a <b>valorous</b> <b>king</b>

1. In answer to the question 'Who is he?' as distinguished from 'What is he?' the indefinite article is retained.

Who is he? He is a lawyer	È un <b>avvocato</b>
What is he? (What is his occupation?) He is a lawyer	È <b>avvocato</b>

\*2. If the predicate noun is used metaphorically, the indefinite article is retained.

È un <b>angelo</b>	He is an <b>angel</b>
--------------------	-----------------------

But, speaking literally,

Non erano passati otto giorni e il bambino era <b>angelo</b>	In less than a week the child was an <b>angel</b> (i.e. dead)
--	---

*b.* Before a noun in apposition, when explanatory and not alluding to a familiar fact. (The appositive often precedes.)

Il Gabelli, uomo di pensiero e di studi	Gabelli, a man of thought and studious habits
---	---

<p>Gēnero di Alessandro Manzoni, amico del d' Azeglio, il Giorgini fu uno degli ũltimi testimoni di quel perĩodo della letteratura italiana</p>	<p>Son-in-law of Alessandro Manzoni, friend of d' Azeglio, Giorgini was one of the last witnesses of that period of Italian literature</p>
---	--

The definite article is used in familiar allusion.

<p>Giuseppe Mazzini, il grande agita- tore</p>	<p>Mazzini the great agitator</p>
--	-----------------------------------

**c.** After *da* in the sense of 'like,' 'in the character of,' or when indicating origin.

<p>Morì <b>da soldato</b> Nacque <b>da padre veneziano e da</b> <b>madre gręca</b></p>	<p>He died like a <b>soldier</b> He was born of a <b>Venetian father</b> and a <b>Greek mother</b></p>
--	--

**d.** Before *cento* and *mille* (cf. 150, *b*).

**e.** In such phrases as 'that wretch of a,' etc.

<p>Quel monęello di Gigi Quella civętta di Mirandolina</p>	<p>That rascal of a Gigi That coquette of a Mirandolina</p>
--	---

**f.** After *che*, in exclamations.

<p>Che bambina carina, che carina bambina!</p>	<p>What a pretty child!</p>
--	-----------------------------

**g.** In fractions, before the name of the thing measured.

<p>Un terzo di miglio Mi dia mezzoo chilo</p>	<p>A third of a mile Give me half a kilo</p>
---	--

### 163. The Verb *fare* 'make,' 'do.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fare, facendo, faccio, farò, feci, fatto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>faccio, fę'</i>	<i>facciamo</i>
<i>fai</i>	<i>fate</i>
<i>fa</i>	<i>fanno</i>

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>faccia</i>	<i>facciamo</i>
<i>faccia</i>	<i>facciate</i>
<i>faccia</i>	<i>facciano</i>

For the imperative, see 130, *e*.



**a.** **Fare** governs the infinitive directly. In this construction the *active present infinitive* renders the *passive past participle* in such phrases as 'to have a thing done.'

Lo fêcero punire	They <b>had</b> him <b>punished</b> ( <i>lit.</i> they caused to punish him)
Fêce preparare una câmera	He <b>had</b> a room <b>made ready</b>

**\*b.** Idioms with **fare**.

Fare il bagno	To take a bath
Fare i bauli	To pack one's trunks
Far caldo, frêddo, etc.	To be hot weather, cold weather, etc.
Far capolino	To peep out
Fare di cappêllo	To take off one's hat
Far çaso di	To make account of
Far cômmodo	To come handy
Far complimenti	To stand on ceremony
Far frôngte a	To face, oppose
Far fumo	To smoke (of a stove)
Far furôre	To make a hit
Fare le fusa	To purr
Far male a	To hurt
Far meglio a	To find it better to
Fare del suo meglio	To do one's best
Fare a meno di	To do without
Fare un mestiere	To ply a trade
Fare a metà	To go halves
Fare una passeggiata	To take a walk
Far piacere a	To do a kindness, give pleasure, to
Far prêsto	To be quick
Farsi il ritratto	To have one's picture taken
Far sangue	To bleed
Far sciôpero	To strike; take a holiday
Far sì che	To bring it about; to manage so that
Fare un sonnellino	To take a nap
Far specie a	To surprise

Far strada	To be on the way, progress
Far di suo	To do of one's own accord
Far tardi	To be late
Fare a tempo	To be on time
Far di tutto	To try one's hardest
Fare le veci di	To take the place of
Far vedere	To show
Fare una visita a	To call on
Far vista di	To make pretense of
Sul far del giorno, della notte	At dawn, at dusk
Due giorni fa	Two days ago
Che tempo fa?	What kind of weather is it?
Fa bel tempo	It is fine weather

## VOCABULARY

il bagaglio	baggage, luggage	far complimenti	stand on ceremony
il baule	trunk	fare a meno di	do without
il biglietto d' andata e ritorno	round-trip ticket	fare una passeggiata	take a walk
la carrozza	carriage	far piacere a	do a pleasure to
il compleanno	birthday	far strada	be on the way
la donna	woman, woman servant	fare una visita a	call upon
l'onomastico <i>m.</i>	saint's day	mutar di pensiero	change one's mind
la roba ( <i>collective</i> )	things	non veder l'ora di	long to, be hardly able to wait to
il ventaglio	fan	pigliare	take
cōmodo	convenient, comfortable	sentire la mancanza di	miss (a person)
carino	} pretty	di giorno	by day
grazioso		di notte	by night
cortese	} kind	poi	then
gentile		a portata di mano	within reach of one's hand
educato	polite	posso <i>I sg. pres. ind. of potere</i>	( <i>irr.</i> ) be able
pesante	heavy		
fare i bauli	pack one's trunks		
far cōmodo	come handy		

## EXERCISES

## I

1. Abbiamo voluto fare una visita alla Signora C. 2. La donna ci ha fatto passare, ma poi ci ha detto che non era in casa la signora. 3. L'abbiamo incontrata più tardi da nostra zia. 4. È vero che va a Vallombrosa, Signorina? 5. Sì, Signora. Non vedo l'ora di partire. 6. Mi piace tanto il viaggiare. 7. Ma pigli un biglietto d'andata e ritorno, per esser sicura di tornar qui. 8. Sentiremo molto la mancanza di Lei. 9. Ha da fare i bauli? 10. Sì, non posso fare a meno di tre bauli per la mia roba. 11. E poi ci sono i bagagli, i quali sono molto pesanti. 12. Mi permetta di darle questo ventaglio, perchè farà comodo se viaggia di giorno. 13. Grazie tante. Che grazioso ventaglio! Ci vuole molta roba per il viaggio, perchè fa caldo prima, e poi fa freddo. 14. A che ora partirà stasera? Ha ordinato la carrozza? 15. Non bisogna ordinarla oggi. Ho mutato di pensiero. Non parto prima di mercoledì. 16. Chi è il forestiere che ha invitato a pranzo? 17. È un professore. È Francese? No, è Americano. 18. È un uomo molto educato. Viene a farmi una visita sempre pel mio compleanno. 19. Quando è il Suo onomastico? Il ventitre giugno.

## II

1. What day is your birthday? The 28th of January. And your saint's day? The 18th of July. 2. Will you take a walk with me, to [per] do me a pleasure? 3. Please buy me a round-trip ticket to Florence. 4. When you have bought it, bring it to us. 5. The servant will pack the trunks for them. 6. Let us call upon our friend Mrs. D., and on our way we will buy some things for our mother. 7. They always travel by night, because it is less hot. 8. What a pretty fan! It is prettier than mine. 9. I have put your books on the shelf, within reach of your hand. 10. They will miss us and I shall miss them. 11. I cannot do without my friends.

12. Here is Mrs. C. Sit down, Mrs. C. Do not stand on ceremony. 13. They wish me to pack the trunks, and there are more than four of them. 14. Come at half-past four. Do not change your mind.

## DIALOGO

## IN UN ALBERGO

Vengono tre signore e una bambina, che domandano del padrone. Lui viene e dice loro :

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano ?

— Desideriamo delle camere. Ne vogliamo due a un letto, comunicanti, e una a due letti perchè la bambina stia colla mamma.

— Benissimo, Signore. Farò Loro vedere quali camere sono libere. Eccone due a un letto, comunicanti, con terrazza. Sono esposte al sole. Ci si sta bene d' inverno. Ecco quest' altra che dà sul giardino ; è grande, con due letti, e se non è a mezzogiorno non c' è male perchè c' è il termosifone.

— Vabbene. Queste camere ci piacciono. Quanto sarebbe la pensione ?

— Se Loro restano almeno tre giorni, sarà di otto lire il giorno.

— Vabbene. Faremo venire i bauli stasera, e verremo prima del pranzo.

LESSON XXVI

IMPERSONAL VERBS. THE VERB *STARE*

**164. Impersonal Verbs.** *a.* Impersonal verbs have no real subject, and are conjugated only in the third person. What would be the subject in English is often expressed by the dative. They are used to express necessity, convenience, or accident; weather; appearance; satisfaction, dissatisfaction; etc.

Non merita il conto	It is not worth while
Non importa	It does not matter
Non conviene	It is not proper, not suitable
Me ne rincresco	I am sorry about it
Piùve a rovescio	It is raining in torrents
Come le pare?	How does it seem to you? What do you think?

\*1. Occasionally *egli (gli)* or *e'* is used redundantly as subject of an impersonal verb (cf. 100, *g*, 2).

Gli è che siamo in alto mare	The truth is we are in deep water
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

*b.* Impersonal verbs require the subjunctive if the subject of the dependent clause is not of the same person as the dative pronoun; otherwise they may take the infinitive (cf. 174, *c*).

Bişogna che tutti lavorino	All must work
Bişogna lavorare	It is necessary to work
Mi dispiace che Lei debba partire	I am sorry you must go
Mi dispiace di partire	I am sorry to go

1. These verbs take *di* before a noun object.

Mi dispiace della sua malattia	I regret his illness
--------------------------------	----------------------

*c.* Many verbs not essentially impersonal may be used impersonally.



Sta a lui di farlo	It lies with him to do it
È (di) mestieri } Fa d' uopo }	It is necessary
Tocca a me	It is my turn
Pare che abbia molto denaro	He seems to have much money
Va bene	It goes well ; very well
Basta	That's enough
Minaccia di nevicare	It threatens to snow
È cessato di piovere	It has stopped raining

*d.* Many verbs are used only, or mostly, in the third person, but as they have a subject they are not impersonal.

Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Mi dolgono i denti	My teeth ache
Mi piace quel quadro	I like that picture
Mi piacciono le camere	I like the rooms
Mi sembrano ariose	They seem airy
Mi occorre un lapis	I need a pencil
Mi bastano questi	These are enough for me

1. These verbs when followed by a clause are strictly impersonal.

Mi duole che lo dica	It pains me to have you say it
Mi piace che voglia venire	I am glad you wish to come
Non basta che scriva ; deve venire	It is not enough that he write ; he must come

2. **Non mi piace**, 'I do not like,' should not be confused with **mi dispiace**, 'I am sorry,' 'I regret.'

<b>Non mi piace</b> questa canzone	<b>I do not like</b> this song
<b>Mi dispiace</b> che Lei abbia ricevuto una brutta notizia	<b>I am sorry</b> you have had bad news

*e.* For the impersonal use of the reflexive, cf. 106, *b.*

### 165. Expressions that Describe Weather.

Piove	It is raining
Nevica	It is snowing
Tuona	It thunders
Lampeggia, balena	It lightens

Tira vento	The wind blows
Gēla, ghiaccia	It is freezing
Sgēla, dighiaccia	It is thawing
Fa bēl tēmpo	It is fair weather
Fa cattivo tēmpo	The weather is bad, disagreeable
Fa caldo, frēddo, frēsko, ūmido	It is hot, cold, cool, damp
C' è il fango	It is muddy
C' è la nēbbia	It is foggy

166. The Verb *stare* 'be,' 'stay.' (Cf. 130, e.)

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *stare, stando, stō, starò, stētti, stato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

stō	stiamo
stai	state
sta	stanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

stia	stiamo
stia	stiate
stia	stiano

a. Special uses of *stare*:

1. With the present participle, or with **a** and the infinitive, to translate the English 'be' (cf. 102).

Stō leggendo	I am reading
Stanno parlando	They are talking
Eravamo stati a guardarci pochi minuti	We had been looking on a few minutes

2. To mean 'be,' in the sense of to be in a place or a condition.

Non stētti molto a Firenze	I was not long at Florence
Sta bēne di salute	He is in good health
Stō di casa in Via Garibaldi	I live on Via Garibaldi

\*b. Idioms with *stare*.

Stare allēgro	To be cheerful
Stare attēnto	To be attentive
Star bēne, male	To be well, ill
Star bēne a, star male a	To befit, not to befit
Stare al buio	To be in the dark
Star di casa	To live, reside

Stare in casa	To stay in
Star cōmodo	To be comfortable
Star fermo	To be still
Stare fręsko	To be sadly off ( <i>derisory</i> )
Stare con le mani in mano	To be idle
Star nascosto	To be hidden
Stare in pensiero	To be worried
Stare per far una cōsa	To be on the point of doing a thing
Stare in piędi	To stand up
Star vicino, lontano	To be near, far
Star zitto	To be silent
Cōme sta? Stę bene	How do you do? I am well

## VOCABULARY

la disgrazia	misfortune	accadere, accadde, accaduto	happen
il fango	mud	avvenire ( <i>like venire</i> )	happen
il ghiaccio	ice	balenare	lighten
la nebbia	fog	bastare	suffice, be enough
il sole	sun	cessare (di)	cease (to)
brutto	disagreeable, ugly	dispiacere a ( <i>irr.</i> )	make sorry, cause to regret; mi dispiace I am sorry
ricco (-chi, -che)	rich	diventare	become ( <i>divęnto</i> )
al giorno d' oggi	nowadays	ghiacciare	freeze
non . . . che	only, not but, nothing but	minacciare	threaten
non c' è male	pretty well	nevicare	snow
non c' è rimędio	there is no help for it	occorrere, occorre, occorso	be necessary
non mi par vero di	I can't believe, I can't wait to	piovere, piōvve, piovuto	rain
star di casa	live, reside	rincrescere, rincrebbe, rincresciuto	(a) ( <i>impers.</i> ) make sorry; mi rincresce I am sorry ( <i>w. dat.</i> )
stare in casa	stay in the house	tirar vęnto	blow
star cōmodo	be comfortable	tonare (cf. 110, d)	thunder
stare in pensiero	worry, be worried		
star per ( <i>w. inf.</i> )	be about to		

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Buon giorno, Signore. Come sta? Non c'è male, grazie.  
 2. E la Signora Bondi, come sta? Non sta tanto bene. 3. Non va fuori perchè minaccia di nevicare. 4. Starà in casa tutto il giorno.  
 5. Mi dispiace che non stia bene di salute. 6. Quando sarà cessato di nevicare, farà una passeggiata. 7. Le dica che andrò a prenderla. 8. Dove sta di casa? In Via Cavour. 9. Le rincresce della brutta notizia. 10. Per imparare una lingua, non basta che lo scolare la studi e la legga. 11. Occorre anche la pratica. 12. Rincrebbe loro che non venissimo. 13. Avviene spesso al giorno d'oggi che il povero diventi ricco. 14. Che tempo fa? Fa cattivo tempo. 15. Il vento tira forte, ghiaccia, dighiaccia, piove, nevica, tutto a un tempo. Che brutto tempo! 16. Non c'è quest'inverno che il fango, la nebbia e la neve. 17. Allora non andrò fuori. Si sta più comodo in casa. 18. Non mi piace che tiri vento. C'è sole?

## II

1. What day of the month is it? 2. It is the 9th. 3. What kind of weather is it? 4. It is very hot. 5. It is lightening, and threatens to thunder. 6. Has it stopped raining? 7. Yes, and the wind does not blow, but there is no sun. 8. I shall stay in the house to-day, but I wish you to go out. 9. Do you think it is raining? 10. It seems to me they do not wish to give it to me. 11. A misfortune has occurred, and we are very sorry. 12. I am about to go to France. 13. They need two trunks. 14. How do you do? I am well, but my mother is ill. 15. I am sorry, but do not be worried. 16. Your mother will be better to-morrow. 17. I hope so [it]. 18. It seems to me I have nothing but misfortunes. 19. She lives in Florence. 20. I live on Via del Casato. 21. One is very comfortable in Via Cavour.

## LESSON XXVII

CONJUNCTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT INFINITIVE.  
THE VERB *POTERE*

## 167. Conjunctive Objects with a Dependent Infinitive.

*a.* Generally speaking, if a dependent infinitive has a pronoun object (or objects), the latter may either be appended to it (cf. 95, *b*), or precede the main verb.

Manda a prēnderlo	} He sends for him
Lo manda a prēndere	
Vorrebbe dirmelo?	} Should you be willing to tell it to me?
Me lo vorrebbe dire?	

*b.* But when the governing verb is impersonal, the object must go with the infinitive.

Non conviēne farlo	It is not convenient to do so
Bişogna dārgliela	It is necessary to give it to her

*c.* Whereas, if the governing verb be *fare*, *lasciare*, *sentire*, *udire*, or *vedere*, the object must precede the main verb. The dependent verb, if transitive, becomes passive in meaning.

Lo fēcero fucilare	They had him shot
Ti sēnto cantare	I hear you singing
Lo lasciarono bāttere	They allowed him to be beaten

1. If the object of either verb be a noun, it usually follows both verbs.

Carlētto amava di sentire sonare la banda	Charlie liked to hear the band play
Il generale fece punire il soldato	The general had the soldier punished



2. If the main verb also has an object, that object becomes indirect.

<b>Glielo</b> vidi fare	I saw him do it
Per non fare prendere un raffred- dore ai bōvi	In order not to let the cattle take cold
Fēcero accettare la cārica al gene- rale	They made the general accept the office
La fanno accettare al generale	They make the general accept it

**168. The Verb *potere* 'be able.'**

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *potere, potendo, pōsso, potrò, potēi, potuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pōsso	possiamo
puōi	potēte
può	pōssono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

pōssa	possiamo
pōssa	possiate
pōssa	pōssano

a. Cf. 132, a, 1.

VOCABULARY

la banda	band	piccino	little, tiny
il caffè	café	ascoltare	listen, listen to ( <i>ascolto</i> )
il cameriere	waiter	condurre, conducendo, conduco, con-	
la finestra	window	durre, condussi, condotto	take, conduct
il gelato	ice, ice cream	figurarsi	imagine
la gioia	joy	ordinare	order ( <i>ōrdino</i> )
la giratina	little walk	riunire	unite, assemble
lo spasso	walk, excursion	sonare (110, d)	play (an instrument)
lo statuto	constitution	sorbire	sip
a un tratto	suddenly	spicciarsi	hasten, hurry
fuori (di)	outside (of)	spiegare	explain
fuori di porta	outside the walls	stancarsi	become tired
mentre	while		

## EXERCISE

## I

## PERCHÈ OGGI SUONA LA BANDA?

Quella prima domenica del mese di giugno, Carletto, tutto vestito a festa, fu condotto a spasso dal suo babbo.

Prima essi fecero una giratina fuori di porta, poi ritornarono in paese, dove, nella piazza principale, sonava la banda.

Carletto si stancò a stare in piedi. Allora il suo babbo lo condusse al caffè, lì nella piazza, e gli fece prendere un gelato. Il gelato piaceva tanto a Carletto: figuratevi la sua gioia di poterlo sorbire seduto, mentre ascoltava la banda.

A un tratto egli domandò:

— Babbo, perchè suona oggi la banda, e perchè in molte case ci sono le bandiere alle finestre?

— Perchè oggi è la festa dello Statuto — gli rispose il babbo.

— E che cosa è lo Statuto?

— Ah! tu sei così piccino, non saprei come spiegarlo: ti basti sapere che lo Statuto è la più solenne nostra festa civile, la quale insegna a tutti noi Italiani, adulti e piccini, che siamo liberi e riuniti in una sola grande famiglia.

Allora Carletto, battendo le mani, esclamò: *Viva l' Italia!*

## II

1. What day is Constitution Day in Italy? It is the first Sunday of June. 2. Why are there tricolored flags at the windows? 3. Can his father explain it to him? 4. He will explain it to him when he is ten years old. 5. Charlie's father took him to walk. 6. Charlie will become tired standing. 7. His father will take him to the café. 8. Will he give him [have him take] an ice? 9. He cannot have him take it because there is no room. 10. Now they have found a table and they can order it. 11. The waiter will bring it to them. 12. Charlie can hardly wait to sip it. 13. But his father

says: "Wait a moment. Let him bring it to you." 14. The waiter would not make them wait if he could hurry. 15. They like the ice very much. 16. They can sip it while they listen to the band. 17. Charlie's father thinks it is beginning to rain. 18. If it rained, they would leave the café. 19. Charlie does not wish it to rain. 20. He wishes to stay there where he can hear the band play. 21. We should like to hear them sing. 22. If it should thunder and lighten they would not be able to stay there. 23. There is the sun! It must have stopped raining.

## DIÀLOGO

## DALLA SARTA

È noioso d' andare dalla sarta, ma le signore ne hanno troppo bisogno.

— Dove sta la sua sarta? Ho sentito ch' è molto brava.

— Sta all' ultimo piano di una casa in Via Tornabuoni. L' avvertò che ci sono molte scale. Vuole che l' accompagni?

— Mi farebbe un vero piacere. Così mi aiuterà a scēgliere il figurino e la stōffa. . . . Vorrei un abito da passeggio.

— Come dev' essere, scuro o chiaro?

— Siccome sto per fare un lungo viaggio, me ne occorrerebbero due, uno d' inverno e uno di mezza stagione. Ho bisogno anche di un vestito da casa e un vestito scollato da sera.

— Cominciamo col vestito da casa. Lo farei di una stoffa mezza seta, con guarnizione d' un tōno più scuro.

— Gli abiti da passeggio li vorrei colla sottana a piēghe, molto sēmplice, all' inglese, e piuttosto corta, perch' è piu pratica. Mi ci metta nella giacchetta una fōdera bianca.

— Mi raccomando che la fodera sia forte, perchè quella dell' ultimo vestito che mi fece a me, mi si sciupò subito.

— Quanto al colore, ci penserò e glielo dirò quest' altra volta quando tornerò per la prova del vestito da casa.

## LESSON XXVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE VERB *DOLERE*

**169. The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses.** The subjunctive, generally speaking, is used to express uncertainty, or at most something less than certainty. It is required in dependent clauses,

*a.* After verbs of causation or prevention, desire or emotion, concession, doubt, opinion, or ignorance.

Il generale ha dato ordine <b>che non smontino</b> il campo	The general has given orders <b>not to break camp</b>
Impediranno <b>che</b> il nemico s' <b>avvicini</b>	They will prevent the enemy <b>from approaching</b>
Pregava <b>che</b> fossero generosi	He begged them <b>to be</b> generous
Si messe in testa <b>che</b> l' <b>avessero</b> fatto a posta	He took it into his head that they had done it on purpose
Credei d' indovinare <b>che</b> cercasse di morire	I fancied I had guessed that he sought to die
Di dove <b>esca</b> , dove <b>vada</b> , non lo so	Where he comes from, whither he is going, I do not know
Mi fa piacere <b>che</b> <b>vivano</b> lieti	I am glad they are living happily
Temo <b>che</b> il mio figliuolo <b>sia</b> ammalato	I am afraid my little boy is ill

1. Pleonastic **non** is commonly used in subordinate clauses after **temere**, **badare**, **mancar poco**, **non dubitare**, **non c' è dubbio**, and similar expressions.

Temo <b>che</b> il viaggio <b>non sia</b> troppo lungo	I am afraid the journey <b>will be</b> too long
<b>Poco</b> mancò <b>che</b> <b>non</b> cadesse	He came near <b>falling</b> (It lacked little that he should fall)
<b>Non</b> <b>dūbito</b> <b>che</b> <b>non</b> <b>sia</b> vero	I do not doubt that it <b>is</b> true

**b.** After a verb used negatively or interrogatively.

<b>Non è vero</b> che i ricchi <b>siano</b> sempre felici	It is not true that the rich are always happy
<b>Di rado avviene</b> che un forestiere parli italiano speditamente	It rarely happens that a foreigner speaks Italian fluently
<b>Chi direbbe</b> che <b>fossero</b> Inglesi?	Who would say they were English?

**c.** After conjunctions of time (before which), concession, and purpose (not yet accomplished), and those meaning 'as if,' 'whenever,' 'wherever,' 'without.' (Cf. 230, a.)

<b>Glielo dirò</b> prima che <b>vengano</b>	I shall tell you before they come
<b>Purchè</b> guarisca, non importa dell' altro	Provided he recovers, nothing else matters
<b>Benchè</b> lo dica lui stesso, non lo credo	Though he says so himself, I don't believe it
<b>Tentò</b> di comprare un vagabondo, perchè facesse una testimonianza falsa	He tried to pay a vagabond to give false testimony
<b>Stava</b> in pensiero, come se temesse qualche disgrazia	He was in anxiety, as if he feared some misfortune
<b>Dovunque</b> sia, lo troveremo	Wherever it is, we shall find it
<b>Passarono</b> diversi minuti <b>senza</b> che desse un segno di vita	Several minutes passed, without his giving a sign of life

**d.** In conditions whose conclusion is in past future (cf. 93, a).

<b>Se</b> rimanesse, farebbe piacere a sua madre	If he should remain, he would please his mother
---	--

**e.** After impersonal verbs or expressions.

<b>Si può dire</b> che l' uomo <b>abbia</b> due nature	It may be said that man has two natures
<b>Occorrerebbe</b> che <b>andasse</b> via subito	It would be necessary for him to go away at once

\*I. When the subordinate verb in the subjunctive has a subject, the order is often such as to make that subject appear to belong with the impersonal main verb.



Tutto il <b>paeſaggio</b> pareva che <b>dicesse</b> la tranquillità	All the landscape seemed to express tranquillity
La battaglia era venuta a quel punto in cui la <b>direzione</b> <b>biſogna</b> che sia supplita dal ſenno	The battle had reached the point where it is necessary that authority be replaced by judgment

*f.* After superlatives, and 'only' in relative clauses.

Lavora il <b>più</b> che sia poſſibile	He works the most he can
La <b>più</b> bella città ch' io abbia mai vista	The most beautiful city I have ever seen

\*1. Sometimes, for vivacity or emphasis, after comparatives.

Il brigandaggio è molto <b>meno</b> frequente che non lo <b>fosse</b>	Brigandage is much less frequent than it was
---	--

*g.* In an attributive clause which predicates of the antecedent something doubtful, limited, or not yet accomplished.

Un Americano che <b>vada</b> in Italia e <b>studi</b> il movimento politico	An American who should go to Italy and study the political situation (would find, etc.)
Cerca degli orecchini che <b>accompagnino</b> la collana	She is looking for earrings to match the necklace
Non c' è uno su dieci che la <b>pensi</b> come lui	There is not one in ten who is of his opinion

*h.* After indefinites.

Chi ci <b>avesse</b> visti dal basso, ci avrebbe <b>presi</b> per due pazzi	Any one who had seen us from below would have taken us for two madmen
Per quanto <b>patisse</b> , non si lagnò	No matter how much he suffered, he did not complain
Chiunque <b>venga</b> , non sarà ricevuto	Whoever may come, he will not be received

*i.* In indirect questions.

Tutti sanno <b>quale</b> famoso cacciatore egli <b>fosse</b>	Everybody knows what a famous hunter he was
Pagherei sapere quello che <b>faccia</b>	I wonder what he does

Sentì **quanta fosse** la grandezza di He realized how great was the  
quell' uomo nobility of that man

NOTE 1. For the subjunctive may usually be substituted the future, when it relates to future time. It is always future, when the matter is certain.

NOTE 2. **Che** is not infrequently omitted.

Una sera sembrò dicesse avessi dato One evening it seemed **that** he said  
retta ai suqi consigli! **that** if only I had given heed to  
his advice —!

**170. Sequence of Tenses.** *a.* A principal verb in the present, imperative, future, or present perfect is followed by the present or present perfect subjunctive.

Non <b>vuole ch' io rimanga?</b>	Do you not wish me to remain?
Dille che <b>venga</b>	Tell her to come
Non <b>crederà che sia venuto</b>	He will not believe I have come
Non <b>hò richiësto che vada</b>	I have not demanded that he go

*b.* A principal verb in any other past tense will be followed by the past or past perfect subjunctive.

Si <b>diceva che avesse</b> dei parënti pōveri	It was said that he had some poor relatives
<b>Bişognerebbe che partissi</b>	I should have to leave
Non <b>dicemmo che fosse mōrto</b>	We did not say he had died

1. The past tenses of the subjunctive may, of course, follow a present tense of the main verb, where the sense requires it.

<b>Crediamo che fossero partiti</b> prima che noi ne avessimo notizia	We believe they had gone before we had news of it
--	--

**171. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses.** The subjunctive is used in the independent clause,

*a.* To supply the missing third person of the imperative (cf. 92, *a*).

<b>Sia dëtto ad onor del vero</b>	Be it said out of respect for the truth
-----------------------------------	--

*b.* In the past tense to express an augury or imprecation, usually unlikely of fulfillment.

Ho due canarini. Tu vedessi come I have two canaries. If you could  
son graziosi! only see how pretty they are!

### 172. The Verb *dolere* 'grieve,' 'pain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Dolere, dolendo, dolgo, dorro, dolci, doluto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

*dolgo* (*doglio*) *dogliamo* (*dolghiamo*)  
*duqli* *dolęte*  
*duęle* *dōlgono* (*dōgliono*)

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*dolga* (*doglia*) *dogliamo* (*dolghiamo*)  
*dolga* *dogliate*  
*dolga* *dōlgano* (*dōgliano*)

### VOCABULARY

*la difesa* defense

*il dovere* duty

*la faccia* face

*la salvezza* safety

*lo scopo* purpose

*lo spirito* spirit

*militare* military

*mite* mild, gentle

*selvaggio* savage, wild

*umano* human

*vile* cowardly

*contro* against

*finchē* as long as

*finchē . . . non* (*w. subj.*) until

*qualora* whenever

*qualunque* (*adj.*) whatever

*sebbene* although

*accrēscere* increase

*alterare* alter

*comandare* command

*deprimere, depreſsi, depreſso* de-  
press, lower

*dimostrare* show, demonstrate

*eſitare* hesitate

*esporre, esponędo, esponęo, espoſi,*  
*espoſto* expose

*impedire* prevent

*importare* (*impers.*) be important

*lanciare* hurl

*punire* punish

*richiędere, richięsi, richięsto* de-  
mand

*sembrare* seem (*sembro*)

*sparire* disappear

## EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Lo scopo supremo delle istituzioni militari è la difesa del paese. 2. A questo scopo importa soprattutto che non sia depresso lo spirito militare. 3. Giuseppe Garibaldi ha sempre comandato forze troppo piccole perchè ci possa fornire insigni esempi di organizzazione; ma ha vinto. 4. Noi Americani possiamo dire sinceramente che non siamo militaristi; ma ci sembrerebbe un vile l'uomo che parlasse contro il dovere di esporre la vita, qualora sia necessario, per la patria. 5. Il nostro Lincoln era l'uomo più mite, più antimilitarista che sia stato al mondo. 6. Ma dimostrò che egli non avrebbe esitato un momento a lanciare il suo paese in una guerra tremenda, se la salvezza del paese stesso l'avesse richiesto. 7. Le guerre sono una cosa terribile, uno spettacolo selvaggio; speriamo che col tempo finiscano per sparire della faccia della terra. 8. Finchè il mondo rimane quello che è, bisognerebbe alterare profondamente la natura umana per impedire che la coscienza della superiorità nazionale non accresca le energie individue, in qualunque direzione esse vengano applicate.

## II

1. Let us hope that wars may disappear from the face of the earth. 2. As long as the world remains what it is, it is important that men should know how to fight for their country. 3. In whatever direction they are going, they wish the soldiers to follow them. 4. Do you think that the supreme purpose of military institutions is the defense of the country? 5. The general gave orders that his soldiers should not expose their lives that day. 6. We wish to prevent the military spirit from increasing. 7. It grieves us that you should speak of it. 8. It seems to us that the defense of the country is important above all. 9. Although he was a mild man, the safety of the country demanded that he should

fight. 10. They would talk against a soldier who should hesitate to expose his life. 11. We are afraid that he will seem a coward, although he has done his duty. 12. The general had him punished, although he had shown the military spirit. 13. He exposed his life whenever the safety of the country demanded it. 14. We must alter the world before wars can disappear. 15. He seems the greatest general that has ever commanded our soldiers. 16. If we could reduce the military spirit, we should prevent wars from increasing. 17. The general ordered us to follow him in order not to expose his soldiers.

## LESSON XXIX

THE INFINITIVE. THE VERB *DIRE*

173. **The Infinitive.** The infinitive may be used —

*a.* As a substantive, in all cases; it often best translates the English gerund in *-ing* (cf. 193, *d*).

Mi duole il dirlo	It pains me to say it
Non è assurdo lo sperare che si possa rinunciare alla guerra	It is not absurd to hope that war may be given up
La produzione dell' Inghilterra è lungi dal bastare ai suoi bisogni	The production of England is far from sufficing for its needs
Le arti giovano al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà	The arts are helpful to a country in its movement toward civilization
Stimava il ridere essere medicina sicura	He thought that laughing was a sure remedy
Al primo entrare	On first entering
Fu imprigionato per aver congiu- rato	He was imprisoned because of having conspired

*b.* As a verb, governing objects, etc., being substituted very often, especially where the subject is identical, for a dependent clause (usually in the subjunctive) of time, cause;



command, purpose, result, condition or concession, or indirect discourse or question.

Le donne, a vederci passare, piangevano	The women, as they saw us pass, were weeping
Mi telefoni prima di venire	Telephone me before you come
Ditegli di scrivermi	Tell him to write me
Ha promesso di mutar vita	He has promised to change his way of life
Chi è posto tanto in alto da non temere di cadere?	Who is so high that he need fear no fall?
L'ha detto in modo da farsi credere	He said it in such a way as to make them believe him
A sentirlo parlare, si direbbe che fosse Francese	If you heard him speak, you would say he was a Frenchman
Lo lasciarono partire, a patto di tornare l'indomani	They let him go, provided he should return next day
Credo di doverlo fare	I think I have to do it
Cercava qualche luogo ove fare il suo deposito	He was looking for some place where he might make his deposit

1. Or it may be at once substantive and verb, governing an object while itself an object.

Si propose di far un viaggio	He intended to make a journey
------------------------------	-------------------------------

c. Elliptically, with the force of a finite verb.

E poi da capo a parlare inglese	Then they began all over again to talk English
Ecco venire frettoloso un volontario	Here came up hastily a volunteer
Qui, il Griso a proporre, don Rodrigo a discutere finchè ebbero concertata la maniera di condurre a fine l'impresa	Hereupon Griso began to propose and Don Rodrigo to discuss, until they had arranged a method for bringing the enterprise to a conclusion
Che fare?	What is to be done?
Piuttosto morire che fare una tal cosa	I would rather die than do such a thing

**174. Government of the Infinitive.** The infinitive may depend upon —

**a.** A noun, by means of **da** or **di**.

Mācchina <b>da</b> scrivere	Typewriter
Ha intenzione <b>di</b> farlo	He intends to do it

**b.** An adjective.

1. By means of **a**.

Il coltello è adatto <b>a</b> tagliare	The knife is useful for cutting
Siamo pronti <b>a</b> partire	We are ready to leave
Fu il primo <b>a</b> entrare	He was the first to enter
Cose leggiadre <b>a</b> riguardare	Things lovely to look at

2. By means of **da**.

Il suolo è rīpido <b>da</b> doverci posare	The ground is so steep that we
i pièdi bēn pari	must plant our feet very evenly

3. By means of **di**.

Siamo felici <b>di</b> vederlo	We are happy to see him
--------------------------------	-------------------------

**c.** A verb.

1. Directly, upon the following :

ardire dare	occorrere be necessary
bastare suffice	osare dare
biognare be necessary	parere appear
convenire be suitable	potere be able
dovere owe, must, ought	sapere know how
essere d' uopo, essere (di) mestieri,	sentire hear, feel
be necessary	udire hear
fare make, cause, have done	vedere see
lasciare allow, let	volere wish, will

2. By means of **a**. Verbs of motion or rest, and many verbs signifying the source, beginning, continuance, or promotion of an action, take **a** before the infinitive.

Andò <b>a</b> chiamarla	He went to call her
Si misero <b>a</b> discorrere in italiano	They began to talk in Italian

Stette a sentire con aria di curiosità	He stood listening with an air of curiosity
Seguitavo a leggere ad alta voce	I went on reading aloud

3. By means of **di**. Most other verbs govern the infinitive by means of **di**.

Mi par di averlo veduto	It seems to me I have seen him
Promette di venire	He promises to come
M' ha scritto di mandarglielo	He has written me to send it to him
Dimostra di avere gran ricchezza	He appears to have great wealth

4. In special senses, by means of **per** and **da**. The infinitive with **per** expresses purpose; with **da** it expresses obligation, or propriety, and usually may be translated by the passive.

O anima che vai per esser lieta	O spirit who goest to (in order to) be joyful
Che resta da fare?	What remains to be done?
Ci sarà molto da aspettare?	Will there be long to wait?
Le costruzioni francesi sono da evitarsi	French constructions should be avoided

### 175. The Verb *dire* 'say,' 'tell.' (Cf. 130, e.)

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Dire, dicendo, dico, dirò, dissi, detto

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

dico	diciamo
dici	dite
dice	dicono

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dica	diciamo
dica	diciate
dica	dicano

#### VOCABULARY

il bilancio	balance, account	l' ordinamento	m. arrangement
la civiltà	civilization	la povertà	poverty
la coscienza	consciousness	il sostegno	support
l' esercito	m. army	la spesa	expense
il danno	damage	assurdo	absurd
l' evenienza	f. occurrence	civile	civilized, civil
l' onda	f. wave	fiacco	weak

appartenere	belong	trattarsi di	be a question of
diffondere, diffusi, diffuso	scatter	eroicamente	heroically
figurare	figure	forse	perhaps
rinunziare a	give up ( <i>sometimes</i> di <i>before an inf.</i> )	in quanto a	as for
		verso	towards

## EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Non è da dimenticare che in Italia lo spirito militare è molto fiacco. 2. Naturalmente, in quanto a spese militari, la miglior cosa sarebbe che se ne potesse fare a meno. 3. Forse potrà venire un giorno in cui queste spese non figureranno più nei bilanci delle nazioni civili. 4. Ma è assurdo il credere che una nazione possa rinunziare a tenersi pronta per ogni evenienza. 5. La relativa povertà dell' Italia moderna dipende soprattutto, come credo d' aver dimostrato, dai suoi cattivi ordinamenti amministrativi, ordinamenti che non servono di sostegno al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà. 6. Questa onda di sentimento, che si cerca di diffondere nel popolo italiano, contraria a tutto ciò che sa di vita militare, finirà per esser di grave danno al paese. 7. Non si tratta di fare del militarismo, ma di far sì che ogni buon figlio d' Italia abbia la coscienza d' appartenere a un grande popolo, e sia determinato a fare eroicamente il suo dovere. 8. Non sarebbe difficile far combattere i soldati quando l' esercito fosse condotto da buoni generali.

## II

1. We think we have shown that it is not a question of the military spirit. 2. We must not give up holding ourselves in readiness to defend our country. 3. It is to be hoped that war will vanish from the face of the earth. 4. We wished to go to France, although the expenses of the journey would be great. 5. It is absurd to think that the army is not led by good generals. 6. We are happy to know that they are talking against everything that smacks of war.

7. It is important that we should be ready to leave. 8. They ended by giving up following the army. 9. They would have told me to write them about it if they had wished to know. 10. He hesitates to leave, and we are trying to prevent him from leaving. 11. Would it be difficult to make the army leave before the general returns? 12. It pains us to see that he cannot write. 13. It pleases us to belong to a great people. 14. They have several letters to write. 15. They are glad to write them. 16. We cannot hear them sing.

## LESSON XXX

### NUMBER IN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. THE VERB *PIACERE*

**176. Invariables.** All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in a consonant, an accented vowel, *u*, *i*, or *ie* (except *moglie*), remain unchanged in the plural.

il *re* the king; *i re*  
 il *lapis* the pencil; *i lapis*  
 la *libertà* liberty; *le libertà*  
 il *chiù* the cue-owl; *i chiù*  
 la *crisi* the crisis; *le crisi*  
 la *sèrie* the series; *le sèrie*

**177. Feminine Plurals.** *a.* Feminine nouns, and feminine forms of adjectives, ending in unaccented *a*, change *a* to *e* in the plural.

la *spāzzola* the brush; *le spāzzole*

*1.* Those in *-ca* and *-ga* form the plural respectively in *-che* and *-ghe*, inserting the *h* to preserve the hard sound of *c* and *g*.

la *barca* the boat; *le barche*  
 la *bottèga* the shop; *le bottèghe*  
 la *mano bianca* the white hand; *le mani bianche*



2. Nouns (but not adjectives) in unaccented **-cia** and **-gia** preceded by a consonant drop **i** before the **e** of the plural.

**la provincia** the province; **le province**

**la spiaggia** the beach; **le piagge**

But

**la nostalgīa** homesickness; **le nostalgīe**

**la sottana grigia** the gray shirt; **le sottane grigie**

3. Feminine nouns in **o** and **e** (not **ie**) form their plural in **i**.

**la mano** the hand; **le mani**

**la lite** the lawsuit; **le liti**

**178. Masculine Plurals.** *a.* Masculine nouns in **a**, **o**, **e** (not **ie**), and masculine forms of adjectives in **o** or **e**, form their plural in **i**.

**il papa** the pope; **i papi**

**il problema** the problem; **i problemi**

**il socialista** the socialist; **i socialisti**

**il buono Inglese** the good Englishman; **i buoni Inglese**

**l'Italiano intelligente** the intelligent Italian; **gl'Italiani intelligenti**

1. Those in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural respectively in **-chi** and **-ghi**.

**il duca** the duke; **i duchi**

**il collega** the colleague; **i colleghi**

*Except* **Belga** 'Belgian,' of common gender, which has a masculine plural **Belgi**, and a feminine **Belghe**.

2. Those in unaccented **-io** change **io** to **i** (often written **ī**, **j**, or **ii**). Where the **i** is accented, the plural is always **ii**.

**lo studio** the study; **gli studi**

**il foglio** the sheet of paper; **i fogli**

But

**l'oblio** forgetfulness; **gli oblii**

3. When a noun in **-ista** refers to a woman and takes the feminine gender, its plural ends in **e**.

**la socialista** the woman socialist; **le socialiste**

**b.** Those in **-go** form their plural in **-ghi**.

*l' albergo* the hotel; *gli alberghi*

1. But those in unaccented **-fago**, and those in unaccented **-logo** when referring to scientists, form the plural in **-gi**.

*antropōfago* man-eating; *antropōfagi*  
*il filōlogo* the philologist; *i filōlogi*

But

*il diālogo* dialogue; *i diāloghi*

2. **Mago** has two plurals, differing according to meaning: **maghi** 'magicians' and **magi** 'Magi.'

**c.** Those in **-co** form their plural in **-chi** if the penult is accented; otherwise in **-ci**. Adjectives in **-co** likewise.

*il mēdico ricco* the rich physician; *i mēdici ricchi*  
*il fuoco māgico* the magic fire; *i fuochi māgici*  
*il cięco stanco* the tired blind man; *i cięchi stanchi*  
*il mōnaco austriaco* the Austrian monk; *i mōnaci austriaci*

1. The following words, though the penult is accented, form their plurals in **-ci**:

*amico* friend

*gręco* Greek

*nemico, inimico* enemy

*pōrco* pig

NOTE. **Greco** has a regular plural in the phrase *vini grechi* 'Greek wines.'

2. The following words, although the penult is unaccented, form their plural in **-chi**:

*cārico* loaded

*mānico* handle

*strāscico* train of gown

*dimēntico* neglectful

*pārroco* parish priest

*tōssico* poison

*fōndaco* warehouse

*stōmaco* stomach

*trāffico* traffic

*lāstrico* pavement

*stōrico* historic

NOTE. There are further exceptions under **b**, 1, and **c**, 2, but the words are obsolete or rare.

179. Irregular Plurals. *a.* Certain masculine nouns in *o* have an irregular plural in *a* with change of gender. These are

un centinaio about a hundred; delle centinaia  
 un migliaio about a thousand; delle migliaia  
 il miglio mile; le miglia  
 il paio pair; le paia  
 l' uovo egg; le uova

*b.* Many others have this feminine plural in *a* in addition to a regular masculine one in *i*. For most of the following words the form in *a* is very common; especially for those referring to parts of the body when taken collectively:

l' anello ring; gli anelli, le anella  
 il budello bowel; i budelli, le budella  
 il calcagno heel; i calcagni, le calcagna  
 il castello castle; i castelli, le castella  
 il dito finger; i diti, le dita  
 il ginocchio knee; i ginocchi, le ginocchia  
 il grido cry; i gridi, le grida  
 il labbro lip; i labbri, le labbra  
 l' osso bone; gli ossi, le ossa  
 il pugno fist; i pugni, le pugna  
 lo strido shriek; gli stridi, le strida

\*I. In the following nouns the plural in *a* has a different or more restricted meaning, usually more literal:

il braccio, i bracci, arm	le braccia arms of the body
il carro, i carri, wagon	il carro, le carra, wagon-load
il cervello, i cervelli, brain	le cervello brains in the physical sense
il ciglio, i cigli, visage	il ciglio, le ciglia, eyebrow
il coltello, i coltelli, knife	le coltella large knives
il corno, i corni, horn	le corna horns of an animal
il cuoio, i cuoi, leather	le cuoia hides, whole skins
il filo, i fili, thread	le fila collective
il fondamento, i fondamenti, foundation	le fondamenta foundations of a building

il frutto, i frutti, fruit	le frutta fruit served on the table
il fuso, i fusi, spindle	le fusa purring
il gęsto, i gęsti, gesture	il gęsto, le gęsta, exploit
il gōmito, i gōmiti, elbow	le gōmita elbows, <i>part of the body</i>
il lęgno, i lęgni, wood	le lęgna wood to burn
il lenzuolo, i lenzuoli, sheet	le lenzuola pair of sheets
il męmbro, i męmbri, member	le męmbra parts of the body, <i>collectively</i>
il muro, i muri, wall	le mura all the walls of a building or city, <i>collectively</i>
il riso, i risi, rice	il riso, le risa, laughter
il sacco, i sacchi, sack	il sacco, le sacca, sackful
lo staio, gli stai, barrel	lo staio, le staia, barreland
il suęlo, i suęli, ground, pavement	il suęlo, le suęla, sole of a shoe
l'urlo, gli urli, cry	le urla human cries

\*2. The following have the feminine plural in **a** only in poetry :

il fato fate	il pōmo apple
il peccato sin	il vestigio trace, footstep

### c. Plurals wholly irregular.

l'ala wing; le ali (le ale)	la mōglie wife; le mōgli
il bue ox; i buęi	l'uōmo man; gli uōmini
il dio god; gli dęi	

\*180. Plurals of Proper Names. **a.** Given names form their plurals according to the regular rules, except that masculines in **a** and feminines in **o** are invariable.

I Carli	The Charleses
I Geremīa	The Jeremiahs
L'Ēlene	The Helens
Le Clio	The Clios

**b.** Family names are invariable, unless ending in **o** and not compound.

Il Galilęo, i Galilęi	Galileo, the Galileos
Il Buondelmonte, i Buondelmonte	Buondelmonte, the Buondelmonte family
Il dęlla Rōbbia, i dęlla Rōbbia	Della Robbia, the Della Robbias

**181. Plural of Compound Nouns.** Compound nouns form their plural in one of four ways :

*a.* The second member only is variable.

il gentiluomo gentleman ; i gentiluomini  
il lavamano washstand ; i lavamani

*b.* The first member only is variable.

il capopopolo head of the popular party ; i capipopolo

*c.* Both members are variable.

la buonamano tip, fee ; le buonemani  
il palcoscenico proscenium arch ; i palchiscenici

*d.* Both members are invariable.

il lustrascarpe bootblack ; i lustrascarpe  
il portavoce megaphone ; i portavoce

**\*182. Defective Nouns.** *a.* The following nouns have no singular :

gli annali annals	le forbici scissors	gli occhiali spectacles
le busse beating	i maccheroni macaroni	le tenebre darkness
le esequie obsequies	le nozze wedding	etc.

*b.* The following have no plural :

la calvizie baldness	la fame hunger	la sete thirst
la canizie white hairs	la mane morning	etc.
la copia plenty	il pepe pepper	

Many names of metals, and many abstract nouns.

*c.* Many nouns, though not strictly defective, are used almost exclusively in either the singular or the plural. Such are

la progēnie, la prole, la stirpe, race, progeny	i rüderi ruins gli spinaci spinach
i pōsteri posterity	

*d.* Some nouns have a different meaning in the plural.

la molla spring, catch	le molle tongs
il rostro beak	i rostri tribune, rostrum
il vezzo custom	i vezzi caresses



**\*183. Collectives.** Collective nouns which are plural in meaning but singular in form take a verb or adjective in the singular.

Sono **gente** che non **viaggia** mai      They are people who never travel  
Avevo lasciato **tutta** la mia **roba** a      I had left all my things in Paris  
Parigi

**\*184. Distributive Singular.** The singular is used in Italian, of nouns referring to parts of the body or to clothing, to mean 'one each,' where the plural would be used in English.

Alzarono **la mano** **dęstra**      They raised their right **hands**  
Si levarono **il cappęllo**      They took off their **hats**

But

Fece tagliar loro **le mani**      He had their **hands** cut off (both  
hands of each)

**a.** Yet the adjective in such cases agrees in the plural.

L'idea d'uscirne **sani e salvi** non      The idea of getting out safe and  
passò per il **capo** a **nessuno**      sound never entered **their heads**

### 185. The Verb *piacere* 'please,' 'be pleasing.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Piacere, piacendo, piaccio, piacerò, piacqui, piaciuto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
piaccio	piacciamo	piaccia	piacciamo
piaci	piacęte	piaccia	piacciate
piace	piācciono	piaccia	piācciano

### VOCABULARY

l' <b>albergo</b> <i>m.</i> hotel	la <b>bottega</b> shop
l' <b>antologĭa</b> <i>f.</i> anthology	il <b>chirurgo</b> surgeon
l' <b>arancio</b> <i>m.</i> orange-tree	la <b>città</b> city
la <b>barca</b> boat	il <b>diālogo</b> dialogue
il <b>Bełga</b> Belgian	il <b>dito</b> finger

il domēstico domestic	l' uovo <i>m.</i> egg
le fōrbici scissors	la virtù virtue, power
il frutto fruit	
il fungo mushroom	antico ancient
la gente folk, people	austriaco Austrian
il ginōcchio knee	bēllico pertaining to war, of warfare
Giulio Cēzare Julius Cæsar	bellicoso warlike
la guancia cheek	britānnico Britannic
il labbro lip	caduco weak
il lapis pencil	cārico loaded
il lavamano washstand	cieço blind
il legno wood	clāssico classic
la letteratura literature	etrusco Etruscan
il luogo place, location	filosōfico philosophical
il lustrascarpe bootblack	forzato forced
la macchia brambles, thicket	grēco Greek
la marcia march	lāico laic, layman
la metrōpoli metropolis	ricco rich
la moglie wife	scārico run down, free, unloaded
la molla spring, mainspring	simpātico nice, congenial
le molle tongs	stanco tired
il muro wall	tīpico typical
il nemico enemy	ubriaco drunk
il paio pair	
il pāroco parish priest	accēndere, accēsi, accēso, light, kindle
il soprābito overcoat	caricare load, wind up
la spēcie kind, sort	lustrare black, polish
lo stivale boot	rōmpere, ruppi, rōtto break
il tacco heel	tagliare cut
la tēsta head	

## EXERCISE

## I

1. They have their boots blacked. 2. The Britannic kings were old. 3. The watches are run down, both of them. 4. They must be wound up. 5. The mainspring is broken. 6. The Greek boot-blacks had little shops in all the great metropolises. 7. Bring me

some wood for the fires. 8. Let us take a walk outside the walls. 9. The Etruscan cities have been dead for centuries. 10. She has burnt her fingers. 11. The philosophical Greeks studied political institutions. 12. Julius Cæsar tells us that the ancient Belgians were a warlike people. 13. I have lost two pairs of scissors, and all my pencils. 14. Her lips and cheeks are red. 15. The Austrian surgeons are very rich. 16. There are orange-trees in our garden. 17. Oranges are the fruit of the orange-tree. 18. The soldiers are not drunk but tired; they have made many forced marches. 19. Scissors are adapted to cutting. 20. The fires were kindled by hostile soldiers.

## II

1. The ancient Greeks were a very civilized people. 2. The boats are loaded. 3. Monks and laics are all enemies of the army. 4. Please give me the tongs. 5. The doctors finished their studies in two Austrian cities. 6. The old servants are not rich; they are blind. 7. It is difficult to find mushrooms. 8. They will search for them in the woods and other places. 9. My friends have some anthologies of Greek and Italian literature. 10. The rich politicians have taken off their overcoats. 11. In the hotels of French cities one is very comfortable. 12. The classic literatures were very congenial to him. 13. The Etruscan kings had domestic wives. 14. He had their heads cut off. 15. The virtues of the ancient Greeks were many. 16. He brought me several packages of fruit. 17. They are typical Englishmen. 18. By [with] dialogues one learns the spoken language. 19. I like Mrs. B., I think she is very nice. 20. Send me six eggs and three kinds of fruit. 21. My Greek friends will arrive to-morrow. 22. They seem typical parish priests. 23. It is absurd to say the ancient civilizations were not great. 24. The French are an agreeable people. 25. They are people who think the military spirit is an evil. 26. Her Austrian friends (*f.*) are very nice. 27. Surgeons and doctors become tired because of working too much. 28. Guns are instruments of warfare.

## LESSON XXXI

MODAL AUXILIARIES. THE VERB *DOVERE*

**186. Modal Auxiliaries.** *a.* The modal auxiliaries are *volere* 'wish,' 'will,' *potere* 'be able,' *dovere* 'be obliged,' expressing what *must, may, should, ought to, or is to* happen.

*b.* As these verbs are not defective like their English equivalents, *potere* and *dovere* may as auxiliaries be conjugated in the compound tenses. The dependent infinitive remains in the present tense, whereas in English it must be thrown into the compound past tense.

Avrebbe dovuto <b>farlo</b>	He ought to <b>have done it</b>
Non avrebbe potuto <b>venire</b>	He could not <b>have come</b>
Non ha <b>potuto</b> andarvi oggi	He has not <b>been able</b> to go there to-day

i. But cf. 140, c, 2.

*c.* These verbs follow the regular rules for the agreement of the past participle (cf. 194, b).

Ci sarebbero <b>voluti</b> pochi soldi	It would have taken but a few cents
Tali sono oggi, quali li hai <b>potuti</b> vedere	Such they are to-day as you have been able to see (them)

*d.* When governing an infinitive, these verbs may take the auxiliary of the dependent verb.

Non <b>era</b> voluto <b>partire</b>	He had not wished to leave
Non <b>hanno</b> potuto <b>lavorare</b>	They could not work
<b>Sarebbe</b> dovuto <b>venire</b>	He ought to have come
<b>È</b> cominciato a <b>ammalare</b>	He began to be taken ill

\*i. When the infinitive is passive, the modal auxiliary may be thrown into the passive and the infinitive remain active.

Non potè esser <b>portato</b>	} He could not be carried
Non fu potuto <b>portare</b>	

2. Used absolutely, without infinitive, the auxiliary is **avere**.

Ha voluto ma non ha potuto                      He wished to but could not

### 187. Special Uses of the Modal Auxiliaries.

#### a. Special uses of **volere**.

1. The past future means 'should like.'

Vorrei visitare la città                      I **should like** to see the sights of  
the city

2. 'Will you?' unless it means 'Do you wish?' 'Should you like?' is often best translated not by **volere** but by the present tense of the verb.

Mi fa il piacere di indicarmi la strada?      Will you do me the kindness to  
show me the way?

3. Cf. 133, a, 1 and 2.

#### b. Special uses of **potere**.

1. It translates 'may' or 'might' in independent clauses (the subjunctive translates them in dependent ones).

Si può dire che tutti i Tedeschi      It may be said that all Germans  
sappiano cantare                      know how to sing

Potrebbe darsi                              It might be, it might be the case

Potevano essere le due                      It might have been two o'clock

2. **Non poter a meno di** means 'not be able to help.'

Non potei a meno di ridere                      I could not help laughing

3. **Poter su** 'have power over,' 'influence.'

Sortì da natura fortissimo ingegno      He had by nature a powerful gen-  
e animo fiero. I casi della vita              ius and an intrepid spirit. The  
molto poterono sull'uno e sul-              chances of life **had great influ-**  
l'altro    **ence upon** both (*lit.* had much  
power over the one and the other)

4. Cf. 132, a, 1.



c. Special uses of *dovere*.

1. In the past future it means 'ought'; in the other tenses, 'must,' 'have to,' 'is to,' etc.

<i>Dovrebbe</i> pagarlo subito	He <b>ought</b> to pay it at once
<i>Deve</i> pagarlo subito	He <b>must</b> pay it at once
<i>Doveva</i> passare l'inverno a Nizza	He <b>was to</b> pass the winter at Nice

2. For the 'must' or 'must have' of probability is substituted the future or future perfect of the dependent verb (cf. 141, a, 1).

3. In the first person singular present indicative it translates 'Shall I?' in the sense of 'Do you wish me to?'

<i>Devo</i> fare i bauli?	<b>Shall I</b> pack the trunks? (Do you wish me, is it time, to pack the trunks?)
---------------------------	---

188. The Verb *dovere*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dovere*, *dovendo*, *dovrò*, *dèvo* or *dèbbo*, *dovèi*, *dovuto*

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>dèvo</i> , <i>dèbbo</i> , ( <i>dèggio</i> )	<i>dobbiamo</i>
<i>dèvi</i> , <i>dèi</i>	<i>dovete</i>
<i>dève</i> , ( <i>dèbbe</i> ), <i>dèc</i>	<i>dèvono</i> , <i>dèbbono</i> , ( <i>dèggiono</i> )

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>dèva</i> , <i>dèbba</i> , ( <i>dèggia</i> )	<i>dobbiamo</i>
<i>dèva</i> , <i>dèbba</i> , ( <i>dèggia</i> )	<i>dobbiate</i>
<i>dèva</i> , <i>dèbba</i> , ( <i>dèggia</i> )	<i>dèvano</i> , <i>dèbbano</i> , ( <i>dèggiano</i> )

Imperative wanting.

## VOCABULARY

il <i>chilo</i> kilogram	<i>dì là</i> on that side
il <i>conto</i> bill, account	<i>dì qua</i> on this side
la <i>corsa</i> run, course	<i>nemmeno</i> not even
il <i>fornaio</i> baker	<i>però</i> however
la <i>moneta</i> coin, piece	<i>soltanto</i> only
il <i>resto</i> change	<i>stretto</i> tight, narrow
il <i>servizino</i> little service	<i>tra</i> within, between
<i>difilato</i> straight ahead	

costare cost	rifare make again, rebuild
dubitare doubt	ripetere repeat
mormorare murmur	rivoltare turn back
osservare observe	sbagliare make a mistake
ricontare count over, recount	voltarsi turn

## EXERCISE

## I

— Egisto, va' qui dal fornaio a comprare mezzo chilo di pane, di quello da trenta centesimi il chilo. Eccoti una lira, sta' attento, fatti dare il resto. E mi raccomando, non ti fermare per la strada, eh? —

Queste parole erano dette a Egisto dalla mamma. Il bambino a cui non pareva vero di fare i servizini a sua madre, andò difilato dal fornaio; prese il pane e il resto della lira, e via verso casa, senza nemmeno voltarsi di qua o di là.

Quando fu a mezza strada ebbe un'idea: quella di ricontare i denari del resto; erano sei monete da dieci centesimi e due da un soldo, dunque il conto non tornava.

— Facciamolo meglio — mormorò tra sè Egisto — se un chilo di pane costa 30 centesimi, mezzo chilo costa 15. Il fornaio doveva darmi 85 centesimi di resto, invece me ne ha dati soltanto 70.—

Egisto non stette più a pensare; rivoltò, e tornò di corsa dal fornaio, e gli disse:

— Sa, Lei ha sbagliato, mi ha dato tre soldi meno di resto; guardi.

— Proprio, bambino? — rispose il fornaio — Li avrai persi per la strada.

— No, no, — ripeté il ragazzo con vivacità; — li tenevo stretti stretti in questa mano.

Il fornaio lo guardò; e gli lesse in viso un'aria tale di sincerità, che non dubitò più. Gli ridiede i soldi, ma gli osservò:

— Ho sbagliato, e lo riconosco; però un'altra volta sta' attento, e il conto rifallo subito qui in presenza mia.

## II

1. We must always count our money. 2. She could not do without bread. 3. He would not have been able to help losing his way. 4. Egisto's mother told him not to stop on the way. 5. She says to him: "Here are two lire for you. Don't forget to bring me the change." 6. Go to the baker's, hurry, and be careful. 7. He ought to have brought it to her. 8. Shall I light the fire in all the rooms? 9. The boy ought to have brought two lire; it might be that he had lost them on the way. 10. His mother told him to hurry, that he might bring her the bread before lunch. 11. He was not able to start before eleven, he could not have brought it to her in time. 12. He had the change given him. 13. It must be ten o'clock. 14. He had in his pocket three ten-centesimo pieces and four one-cent pieces. 15. I do not doubt that it is to happen. 16. He had to return at once to the baker's. 17. Egisto was not to stop on the way. 18. His mother feared, if he did not hurry, that he might lose his way. 19. They have not been able to rebuild the walls of those cities. 20. It would have taken ten years. 21. They ought to have told us so before beginning the work. 22. Bakers make bread. 23. It was twelve o'clock before he returned. 24. His mother thinks he has lost his way. 25. The baker might have made a mistake. 26. He might have given me two cents too little. 27. No, he has given me three cents too much.

## DIALOGO

## DAL SARTO

— Vuol venire con me dal sarto? Mi devo provare un abito da passeggio.

— Volentieri. Dev' essere pronto anche il soprabito che ho fatto pulire. Com' è il nuovo abito?

— È fatto di una stoffa di lana leggièra, a quadrettini neri e bigi. È un color pratico.

— Eccoci arrivati. Il sarto sta al terzo piano.

— Buon giorno, Signori. Sono venuti per la prova? Tutt' è pronto. Aspettino un momento che venga il giovane. Ecco. Come le piace?

— Mi pare che i calzoni siano un pochettino troppo lunghi. E la giubba non mi sta bene sulle spalle; è troppo attillata. Che ne pensa?

— Le maniche mi sembra che siano un po' troppo corte e anche larghe.

— Come crede, Signore. Lasci fare a me. Siamo in tempo a cambiar tutto facilmente. E Lei, Signore, non le occorre niente?

— Per dir la verità, ho proprio bisogno di una nuova *redingote*. Siccome non mi piace la roba bell' e fatta, devo ordinarlo. Può farmelo fra tre giorni? Sto per far un viaggio.

— Altro! Glielo farò trovare in casa giovedì sera. Ma ci vuole la misura. Prendiamola subito.

— Vabbene. Si deve pagare anticipatamente o dopo?

— Ma che Le pare! Un amico del Signor B. Mi pagherà quando Le converrà. Non ha bisogno di nient' altro?

— No, grazie. Andiamo dunque, e al ritorno devo far delle compre, mi occorre tanta roba da vestiario: delle scarpe basse colorate, un cappello sodo, e un altro a cencio, da viaggio. Il cilindro non lo prendo. Poi delle ciarpette di seta, chiare e scure.

— Come le piacciono le cravatte, rigate o scozzesi?

— Nè l' une nè l' altre. Le porto sempre lisce.

— Ecco una bottega che ha per insegna: *Novità da uomini*. Entriamoci.

## LESSON XXXII

RELATIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE  
PRONOUNS. THE VERB *UDIRE*

189. The Relative Pronoun. *a.* For the forms, see 114.

*b.* Special uses of *che* :

1. It is often used elliptically, without preposition, in adverbial or descriptive clauses.

Paese **che** vai usanza che trovi

**Whatever** country you go to, [follow] whatever customs you find.  
(In Rome, do as the Romans do)

È venuto nel momento **che** stavo mangiando

He came at the moment **when** I was eating

Una donna **che** tutti non facevano altro che dire che l'era tanto buona

A woman **of whom** every one did nothing but say how good she was

2. When its antecedent is a phrase, it must take the article.

Avevamo il largo e profondo fosso alle spalle con solo uno stretto ponte per passo, **il che** rendeva difficile la ritirata

We had behind us the wide, deep ditch, with only a narrow bridge for crossing, **which fact** made retreat difficult

*c.* **Cui**, which is usually used after prepositions, may be used as a direct object, where **che** (which may be either subject or object) might cause ambiguity.

E caddi come l'uom **cui** sonno piglia

And I fell like one **whom** sleep overtakes

*d.* **Il quale**, which is either adjective or pronoun, is used (because declinable) to avoid ambiguity, and it seems rather to be preferred for general use, especially with a plural antecedent.



Quelli non erano tempi nei quali un presidente di Consiglio potesse agevolmente venir mutato. Non ci maravigliamo che la scena de' *Promessi Sposi* sia stata posta dall' autore in quel di Lecco, nei luoghi ove lo riportavano le prime e le più care sue reminiscenze, dai quali egli si era dovuto staccare per sempre con un vivo dolore.

Those were not times in which a President of Council could easily be changed.

We do not wonder that the scene of "The Betrothed" was laid by the author in the territory of Lecco, in the places whither his earliest and dearest recollections bore him, from which he had to sever himself with sharp grief. (The masculine form *quali* can evidently refer only to *luoghi*)

### 190. The Demonstrative Pronoun. a. Questo, quello, cotesto.

1. For the forms of *questo* and *quello*, see 86; *cotesto*, *codesto*, is inflected like *questo*.

2. *Questo* refers to what is near the speaker; *cotesto*, *codesto*, to what is near the person addressed; *quello*, to what is more or less removed from both.

Che ne pensa di *questo* cavallo?  
Come si chiamano *quelle* colline?  
M' è piaciuto parecchio *codesto*  
abito

What do you think of **this** horse?  
What is the name of **those** hills?  
I greatly liked your costume, **that**  
costume of **yours**

3. *Quello* and *questo* mean respectively 'the former' and 'the latter'; but *questo*, 'the latter,' is always mentioned first.

Il cavallo e il bōve sono tutt' e due utilissimi all' uomo, ma si affeziona meno a *questo* che a *quello*

The horse and the ox are both extremely useful to man, but we have **more** affection for **the former** than for **the latter**

4. To mean 'this one' and 'that one' when speaking of things, *questo* and *quello* are usually reinforced by *altro*.

*Questo* libro non l' ho letto. Ho letto *quell' altro*

This book I have not read. I have read **that one**

5. Special uses of **quello** :

*a.* **Quel che** = 'what' when it can be resolved into 'that which.'

**Non credè quel che gli dissi**                      He did not believe **what** I told him

*b.* Before **di** or a relative, it means 'the one,' 'that one.'

**Hò prestato loro il mio cavallo e quello di mio fratello**      I have lent them my own horse  
and my brother's

**Quelli che vede non sono i Colli Euganei**      **The ones** you see are not the  
Euganean Hills

*c.* Elliptically.

**In quel (territorio) di Milano**                      In the country round about Milan

**Tu non sei più quello (medesimo, or di prima)**      You are no longer the same person

**In quella (ora)**    At that moment

*b.* **Questi, quegli, (quei, que')**. These forms are invariable masculine singulars, applicable to persons only, and used only as subject. **Questi** = 'this one,' 'this man'; and **quegli** = 'that one,' 'that man.' Restricted to literary usage.

**Questi, l'orme di cui pestar mi vedi**      This man in whose footsteps you  
see me tread

*c.* **Costui, colui**. These have the same meaning as **questi** and **quegli**, but are completely inflected and are used in all cases.

## 1. Forms :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
costui	costoro	colui	coloro
costei		colèi	

2. 'He who' is expressed by **colui che**, or preferably by **chi**.

**Colui che guadagna ha il diritto di spendere**      **He who** earns has the right to  
spend

**Il mondo è di chi se lo piglia**                      The world belongs to **him who**  
takes it

**Chi dice soldato, dice obbedienza**      **Who** says soldier, says obedience

\**a.* In this use, **chi** is sometimes equivalent to 'if one.'

<b>Chi</b> è entrato nella vita politica,	<b>If one</b> enters political life, it is not
non conviene che cerchi di arricchirsi	fitting that he seek to enrich himself

NOTE. These demonstratives referring to persons only all end in the singular in *i*.

**d. Ciò. Ciò** is a neuter of rather general meaning, referring not to a person or a thing, but to a whole idea, meaning 'this' or 'that.'

Gl' Italiani sognavano libertà, ma ciò dispiaceva agli Austriaci	The Italians dreamed of liberty, but that displeased the Austrians
--	--

**e. Desso, stesso, medesimo.** These words all mean 'same,' 'selfsame,' 'that very,' etc. **Desso** is used only substantively, as a predicate complement, and for the most part of persons. **Stesso** and **medesimo** are either substantives or adjectives, and refer to either persons or things.

Questi è <b>desso</b> , e non favella	This is he, and he speaks not
Il re <b>stesso</b> l' ha fatto	The king did it himself
La fortuna <b>medesima</b> è il nostro nemico	Fortune itself is our foe

### 191. The Interrogative Pronoun. The interrogatives are—

<b>chi</b> ? who? whom?	
<b>che</b> ? <b>che cosa</b> ? what? what thing? ( <i>pronoun</i> ), what kind of? ( <i>adjective</i> )	
<b>quale</b> ? ( <i>inflected</i> ) what? which? ( <i>adjective or pronoun</i> )	
<b>di chi</b> ? whose?	
<b>quanto</b> ? ( <i>inflected</i> ) how much? how many?	
<b>come</b> ? what did you say?	
<b>Chi lo sa</b> ?	Who knows?
<b>Che cosa ha detto</b> ?	What has he said?
<b>Che libro legge</b> ?	What kind of a book are you reading?
<b>Quale desidera</b> ?	Which (one) do you wish?
<b>Di chi sono questi fiori</b> ?	Whose are these flowers?
<b>Quanti ne vuole</b> ?	How many do you wish?

*a.* 'What a,' 'what,' in exclamations, is expressed by **che** without article (cf. 162, *f*).

**Chę** panorama stupęndo!

**What** a magnificent view!

*\*b.* The interrogatives may be reinforced by **mai**.

**Chi mai** l' avrebbe creduto?

**Who** would ever have believed it?

**Come mai** l' ha fatto?

**How** did you ever do it?

*\*c.* **Cosa?** for **che cosa?** is frequent in familiar speech, but is not elegant.

**Cos'** hai fatto?

**What** have you been doing?

## 192. The Verb *udire* 'hear.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Udire**, **udęndo**, **ędo**, **udirę** (**udrę**), **udii**, **udito**

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

ędo	udiamo
ędi	udite
ęde	ędono

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ęda	udiamo
ęda	udiate
ęda	ędano

## VOCABULARY

il cęrcere prison

la cęsta coast

il cuęre heart

il dęsso back

l' eręe *m.* hero

la fucilazęone execution, shooting

l' inganno *m.* deceit

l' ięola *f.* island

la marina navy

il pęrto port

lo řbarco disembarkation

la scintilla spark

la strage butchery

il supplizio punishment, torture

il tradimęnto treachery, betrayal

l' ufficiale *m.* officer

la vęla sail; far vęla set sail

la vergęna shame

attęndere, attęsi, attęso await

avviarsi take one's way, start

cavare take out

corrispęndere (*like* rispondere) correspond

effettuare effect

fuggire flee

řbarcare land

scuętere, scęssi, scęsso shake

assai much, very, rather

veneziano Venetian

## EXERCISE

## I

## I FRATELLI BANDIERA

I fratelli Attilio ed Emilio Bandiera, figli di nobile famiglia veneziana, erano ufficiali nella marina austriaca. Cuori generosi come quelli, al servizio dello straniero! — Vada la nostra vita, ma scuotiamoci da dosso tanta vergogna — devono aver pensato quei due giovani eroi. E fuggirono. Fuggirono in Grecia, nell' isola di Corfù. Di là, corrispondendo coi loro amici d' Italia, pensarono di effettuare uno sbarco sulle coste della Calabria, per accendere la prima scintilla di guerra in quel di Napoli. Fecero vela con pochi compagni, e sbarcarono al porto di Cotrone.

Ma l' inganno e il tradimento li aspettavano su quella terra; furono presto arrestati e immediatamente condannati alla fucilazione. La strage fu consumata nella città di Cosenza. Attesero calmi l' ora fatale, sentendo in cuore la gioia di dare il loro sangue alla patria. E quando i soldati del Borbone vennero a cavarli dal carcere per condurli a morte, essi e sette loro compagni si avviarono al luogo del supplizio, cantando serenamente: *Chi per la patria muor, vissuto è assai.*

## II

1. The Bandiera brothers, who were officers in the Austrian navy, wished to shake from their backs the shame of being in the service of the foreigner. 2. What awaited them in the territory of Venice? 3. Deceit and treachery awaited those brothers in the land of the Bourbon. 4. That is not what they hoped. 5. Who knows how many men have given their lives for their country? 6. He who reads the history of Italy must admire her heroes. 7. What a beautiful history! What do you think of it? 8. What I have read of it pleases me very much. 9. The heroes were taken out of prison to be led to the place of punishment. 10. Which of the Bandiera brothers was the older? 11. We sang as we took our



way to the place of punishment. 12. What did you sing? 13. We sang, "He who dies for his country, has lived enough." 14. They were arrested, and what is worse, sentenced to be shot. 15. The officers had them punished, which was not to be expected. 16. They do not believe that what you tell them is true. 17. We have sold our house, and that of our brother. 18. I have taken my new dresses out of the box. 19. I do not like this one; I think the other one is more beautiful.

## LESSON XXXIII

### PARTICIPLES. THE VERB *PORRE*

**193. The Present Participle.** The present participle has two forms: a form in *-ante*, *-ente*, which Italian grammar recognizes as the participle, and one in *-ando*, *-endo*, which Italian grammar calls the "gerundive."

*a.* The form in *-ante*, *-ente*, has the character of adjective, substantive, or verb, and is inflected like an adjective in *e*.

1. As adjective it is in frequent use.

Il grillo parlante

The talking cricket

I principi regnanti

The reigning princes

2. Any present participle with an article before it becomes a substantive, as *l' amante* 'the lover.'

3. As verb it is perhaps less common than the form in *-ando*, *-endo*, and rarely takes an object. It is used, with object, of the verbs *avere*, *contenere*, *fare*, *formare*, *indicare*, *rappresentare*, *tenere*, etc.

I treni aventi wagoni-letto

Trains having sleeping-cars

*b.* The form in *-ando*, *-endo*, has the character of verb or adverb, and is invariable.

1. As a verb it may replace a clause of time, cause, concession, condition, or simple explanation, and may always govern an object.

**Andando** insieme al teatro, chiacchieravano di molte cose

**Trovandomi** quell' autunno a casa, e ricordandomi di quel vecchio, andava spesso a visitarlo

**Sentendosi** incapace di muoversi, disse nonostante queste parole audaci

**Rimproverandolo**, potrà forse persuaderlo a mutar vita

**While they were going** to the theater they chatted of many things

**As I happened to be** at home that fall, and to remember the old man, I went often to visit him

**Knowing that he was** incapable of a movement, he yet spoke these audacious words

**If you reprove him**, you will perhaps be able to persuade him to change his way of life

**c.** To translate the English present participle,

1. With the verb 'to be,' cf. 102.

2. When standing alone or with object after a noun, it is often best to use a simple relative clause.

There is a lady **waiting**

And like a wasp **withdrawing** its sting

C'è una signora **che aspetta**

E come vespa **che ritragge** l' ago

3. After a verb of sensation use the infinitive.

They saw us **coming**

I heard her **singing**

Ci videro **venire**

La sentii **cantare**

**d.** To translate the English gerund,

1. In general, use the infinitive.

**Smoking** is forbidden

**Working** is praying

È vietato di **fumare**

**Lavorare** è pregare

2. After a preposition, use the form in **-ando**, **-endo**, without preposition, unless the latter be essential to the sense; when the preposition is essential to the sense, retain it, and translate the participle by the infinitive.

**On recognizing** him, I hastened to overtake him

**Riconoscendolo**, mi spicciai per raggiungerlo

One cannot make progress <b>without studying</b>	Non si può far progressi <b>senza studiare</b>
We talk of <b>waging war</b>	Parliamo <b>di muover guerra</b>

**194. The Past Participle.** *a.* The past participle may be used as adjective, noun, or verb.

Tutte le cose <b>narrate</b> si erano succedute con una rapidità <b>maravigliosa</b>	All the things narrated had succeeded each other with a marvelous rapidity
Il <b>condannato</b> era un povero <b>Veneziano</b>	The condemned man was a poor Venetian
<b>Finita</b> la messa	Mass being over

*b. Agreement.* As noun, as adjective, or when used without auxiliary, the past participle is always inflected. With auxiliary, it agrees —

1. After **essere**, in intransitive and passive verbs (cf. **99**).

2. After **avere** (cf. **122**) optionally with the object.

*a.* But it is usually invariable —

(1) When the object is part of a set phrase.

Ci ha <b>dato fede</b>	He has pledged his faith to it
Ho <b>avuto fame</b>	I was hungry

(2) When the participle has a dependent infinitive governing a noun object.

Non ho <b>voluto comprare</b> quelle scarpe	I did not wish to buy those shoes
---	-----------------------------------

(3) When **fatto** is substituted for the repetition of some other participle.

Certo negli ultimi venti anni si sono <b>salite</b> più montagne, che non s'era <b>fatto</b> in venti secoli	Certainly in the last twenty years more mountains have been scaled than in the preceding twenty centuries
--	---

*b.* Whereas it must usually agree —

(1) When the direct object is a personal pronoun or *ne*.

<i>Dove</i> li hanno veduti?	Where did they see them?
Mi hai portato (or portati) dei fiori?	Have you brought me any flowers?
Te <i>ne</i> ho portati molti!	I have brought you a great many!

(2) This is true even when the pronoun object belongs with a dependent infinitive.

Li avreste potuti vedere	You might have seen them
--------------------------	--------------------------

3. With reflexives (cf. 104, c, 1).

*a.* With impersonal forms, the participle agrees if the verb is normally conjugated with *essere*; if it is regularly conjugated with *avere*, there is no agreement.

Si è vissuti troppo	We have lived too long
Si è comprato molti cavalli per la cavalleria	Many horses were bought for the cavalry

*b.* When the pronoun is a dative "of reference or concern" (cf. 105, b, 3) it is not a true reflexive.

*c. Inversion.* In temporal clauses the past participle and its auxiliary are often inverted, *che* then taking the place of *quando*, *appena*, etc.

Liberato <i>che</i> fu	When he was liberated, as soon as he was liberated
Vinto <i>che</i> l'abbia, lo divorza	When [as soon as] he has conquered it, he devours it

**195. Absolute Constructions.** These are extremely common in Italian, and may take the place of almost any kind of clause.

Detto fatto	No sooner said than done
Giunto tardi a casa, ed acceso il lume, si accorse subito del furto	Arriving home late, and having lighted the lamp, he at once noticed the theft

Dopo occupato l'altipiano, gl' Italiani cominciarono a tirare

After occupying the elevation, the Italians began to fire

a. Cf. 136, *h*; 145, *d*.

### 196. The verb *porre* 'place.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Porre*, *ponendo*, *pongo*, *porrò*, *posi*, *posto*

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

*pongo*    *poniamo*, *ponghiamo*  
*poni*     *ponete*  
*pone*     *pōngono*

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*ponga*    *poniamo*, *ponghiamo*  
*ponga*    *poniate*  
*ponga*    *pōngano*

### VOCABULARY

il *bāvero* coat-collar

il *benefizio* benefit

il *cannone* cannon

il *cittadino* citizen

la *giacchetta* jacket

la *giovanetta* young girl

il *giovanetto* boy, young man

il *gruppo* group

l' *incasso* *m.* receipts

il *metallo* metal

il *nastrino* little ribbon

il *petto* breast

lo *scudo* shield

la *somma* sum

il *Turco* Turk

la *vēndita* sale

*acquistare* acquire

*andārsene* go away

*appuntare* pin

*dar* il buon anno wish a Happy  
 New Year

*formicolare* swarm

*offrire*, *offerirsi*, *offerito* offer

*puntare* aim

*sparare* fire, shoot

*ciascuno* each, every one

### EXERCISE

#### I

#### IL PICCOLO SCUDO

1. Era il primo giorno dell' anno 1912, l' anno della nostra guerra contro i Turchi. 2. La gente formicolava per le strade e si salutava dandosi il buon anno. 3. Qua e là le persone, che passavano per le vie, erano fermate da gruppi di giovanetti e giovanette



che offrivano, a chi voleva comprarli, dei piccoli scudi di metallo bianco, portanti un nastrino coi tre colori della bandiera nazionale. 4. Su ogni scudo si vedeva un soldato che sparava, e un altro che puntava il cannone. 5. Gli scudetti erano venduti da quei giovani a beneficio dei nostri soldati che combattevano in Libia. 6. Costavano non meno di due soldi, ma ciascuno, prendendoli, poteva offrire quello che voleva. 7. E tutti i cittadini li acquistavano volentieri, con entusiasmo, e se li mettevano al bavero della giacchetta. 8. Li compravano anche le donne, e se li appuntavano sul vestito. 9. Quasi tutti ebbero ben presto sul petto questi piccoli scudi col nastrino tricolore. 10. L'incasso della loro vendita dette una somma considerevole.

## II

1. The soldiers, while fighting in Libya, were led by the officers. 2. The combatants gave up firing, the cannon having been taken by the enemy. 3. That lady will pin the little shield upon her dress. 4. People flocking through the street and saluting each other wished each other a Happy New Year. 5. Having put the little ribbon on the collar of his coat, that citizen gave no less than three lire. 6. On New Year's Day of the year 1912, shields were sold for the benefit of the Italian soldiers. 7. As we entered the room, we found there a young girl singing. 8. We stayed, because we liked to hear her singing. 9. Having told us not to wait for them, they went away without speaking to him. 10. The shields bought, all soon had them at their breasts. 11. Little shields, on which was seen a soldier shooting, were offered by groups of young girls. 12. Do not go home before speaking to her. 13. Whoever wished to buy one, would pay not less than two cents. 14. By giving her two lire he won the approval of [made himself praised by] all the young people. 15. Have you bought a shield as you passed along the streets? 16. My brothers being both in Libya, I have bought two of them. 17. Having bought them, I shall give you one.

## DIALOGO

## DAL CALZOLAIO

— Ho da farmi fare un paio di scarpe. Andiamo in quella bottega di calzolaio ch'è sull'angolo di Via Parione. Ho sentito che quello lavora molto bene.

— Lo conosco di nome. Fa sempre le scarpe di lusso a una signora di mia conoscenza.

— Ecco il suo negozio. È davvero troppo grande ed elegante da chiamarlo bottega.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano?

— Io vorrei ordinare un paio di scarpe bianche, alte.

— Alte non si fanno le bianche, Signora. Ne ho viste delle signore americane che le portano, ma qui in Italia non si trovano mai. Però, potrei fargliene un paio su misura. Ma bisognerebbe prima fare delle forme. Prendiamo la misura del suo piede. Ecco presa la misura. Come le vuole? Di pelle?

— No, di tela, di buona qualità. Le porterò domani una mia scarpa per confrontarla colla forma. Ho sempre paura quando vado per la prima volta da un calzolaio, che mi faccia le scarpe troppo larghe e troppo corte.

— Non dubiti, Signora. Colle forme ben fatte non si può sbagliare.

— Mi dia due paia di stringhe, e faccia attenzione che non scricchiolino le scarpe. Questo paio che ho fu bagnato dalla pioggia la settimana scorsa, e d'allora scricchiolano ch'è un orrore.

— Ci baderò, Signora. E i tacchi come li vuole? Di tela?

— No, di cuoio, e piuttosto bassi. I tacchi alti sciupano i piedi.

— Baderò a tutto, Signora. Sono sicuro che rimarrà soddisfatta. Quanto al prezzo, ci accomoderemo quando saprò quanto tempo ci vuole per far le forme. Farò un prezzo discreto da venti a venticinque lire.

— Vabbene. Buon giorno.

— Arrivedella, Signora.

## LESSON XXXIV

GENDER OF NOUNS. THE VERB *USCIRE*

197. Gender Determined by Form. *a.* Cf. 80, *b.*

*b.* Feminine are the nouns ending in *ie*, *si* (*except il brîndiși* 'toast'), and accented *ice*; and abstract nouns when accented on the last syllable: *la specie* 'kind,' *la rădăce* 'root,' *la libertă* 'liberty.'

198. Gender Determined by Meaning. *a.* Cf. 80, *a.* Masculine are also—

1. Names of lakes; of mountains, *except le Alpi*, *le Ande*, *la Sierra Nevada*, and a few others; of rivers, unless ending in *a* (cf. *b*, 2); of empires, kingdoms, and provinces, unless ending in *a* or *de* (*except il Bengala*).

2. Names of trees, *except la quercia* 'oak,' *la palma* 'palm,' and *la vite* 'grapevine,' which are feminine, and *l'êlce* 'ilex,' of common gender.

3. Names of metals, *except la latta* 'tin.'

4. Names of months, and of all days *except domēnica*.

5. Other parts of speech used substantively.

*b.* Cf. 80, *a.* Feminine are also—

1. Names of fruits, which usually correspond to the names of the trees. If the latter end in *o*, *o* changes to *a*; if in *e*, there is merely a change of gender.

Il pșco, la pșca

Il noce, la noce

The peach-tree, the peach

The walnut-tree, the walnut

EXCEPTIONS. The following names, of masculine gender, are identical for tree and fruit :

l' ananasso pineapple	il limone lemon
il cedro lime	il pistacchio pistachio nut
il dattero date	il pomo apple
il fico fig	il ribes currant

2. Names of cities, except **il Cairo** 'Cairo'; and of rivers ending in **a**, except **il Niagara**, **il Vqlga**, and a few others.

la Lōira the Loire	il Danubio the Danube
--------------------	-----------------------

### 199. Nouns having Two Genders with Different Meanings :

il cārcere imprisonment, prison	la cārcere, oftener le cārceri, prison
il dramma drama	la dramma dram
il fine purpose	la fine (il fine) end
il pianeta planet	la pianeta priest's cope
il prigiōne prisoner	la prigiōne prison
il tema theme	la tema fear

*a.* Some nouns, such as **fōnte** 'spring,' **fōlgore** 'thunderbolt,' **trave** 'beam,' etc., are of common gender without change of meaning.

**200. Gender of Names of Animals.** *a.* Of such as change their form with change of gender, those ending in **o** change **o** to **a**, and those in **e** change **e** to **essa**, rarely **a** :

cavallo, cavalla, horse	gatto, gatta, cat
signale, signala, wild boar	leone, leonessa, lion
colombo, colomba, dove	lupo, lupa, wolf
elefante, elefantessa, elephant	pavone, pavona, pavonessa, peacock

1. Irregular are —

cane, cagna, dog	gāmbro, gamberessa, crawfish
gallo, gallina, cock, hen	and others

2. Defective are —

toro, vacca	bull, cow
montone, ariete ; pēcora	ram ; (sheep), ewe
verre ; troia or scrofa	boar ; sow

*b.* Some of those ending in *e* or *u* are of common gender, and distinguished only by the article.

il *șerpe*, la *șerpe*, serpent                      il *gru*, la *gru*, crane

*c.* Others have but one gender for both sexes.

1. Masculine are —

il <i>coniglio</i> rabbit	il <i>serpente</i> serpent
il <i>delfino</i> dolphin	il <i>sōrcio</i> mouse
il <i>luccio</i> pike	il <i>tōpo</i> rat
lo <i>scarafaggio</i> beetle	il <i>tōrdo</i> thrush

2. Feminine are —

l' <i>āquila</i> eagle	la <i>rōndine</i> swallow
la <i>balēna</i> whale	la <i>scīmnia</i> monkey
la <i>formica</i> ant	la <i>tōrtora</i> turtle-dove
la <i>lucērtola</i> lizard	la <i>vīpera</i> viper
la <i>mōsca</i> fly	la <i>vōlpe</i> fox
la <i>pantēra</i> panther	

### 201. Names denoting Sex in Human Beings :

<i>maschio</i> , <i>fēmmina</i> , male, female	<i>gēnero</i> , <i>nușra</i> , son-in-law, daughter-in-law
<i>padre</i> , <i>madre</i> , father, mother	<i>cognato</i> , <i>cognata</i> , brother-in-law, sister-in-law
<i>figlio</i> , <i>figlia</i> , son, daughter	<i>fratellastro</i> , half-brother
<i>fratello</i> , <i>sorella</i> , brother, sister	<i>patrigno</i> , <i>matrigna</i> , stepfather, stepmother
<i>nonno</i> , <i>nonna</i> , grandfather, grandmother	<i>figliastro</i> , <i>figliastro</i> , stepson, stepdaughter
il <i>nipote</i> , la <i>nipote</i> , grandson, granddaughter; nephew, niece	<i>compare</i> , <i>madrina</i> , godfather, godmother
<i>zio</i> , <i>zia</i> , uncle, aunt	<i>figlioccio</i> , <i>figlioccia</i> , godson, goddaughter
<i>cugino</i> , <i>cugina</i> , cousin	
<i>suōcero</i> , <i>suōcera</i> , father-in-law, mother-in-law	

**202. Masculines in *a*.** The following nouns, though ending in *a*, are of masculine gender :

Il *boia* 'executioner,' il *duca* 'duke,' il *monarca* 'monarch,' il *poeta* 'poet,' *qualcōsa* 'something'; nouns in *-ista* denoting the



professions, sects, etc., when referring to men; **il colera** 'cholera,' **lo scià** 'shah,' **il sofà** 'sofa,' and some other words of foreign origin; **l' enigma** 'enigma,' **il problēma** 'problem,' and other words from the Greek in **-ma**; and many geographical names.

### 203. Feminine Forms of Words Expressing Professions, Rank, or Character.

abate abbot, **abbadessa** *or* **badessa** abbess  
 barone baron, **baronessa** baroness  
 cameriere waiter, **cameriera** waitress, chambermaid, stewardess  
 canōnico canon, **canonichessa** canoness  
 cantore singer, **cantante** (**cantatrice**)  
 capitano captain, **capitanessa** (*burl.*), captain's wife  
 conte count, **contessa** countess  
 diavolo devil, **diavolessa**  
 dio god, **dea**, **diva**, goddess  
 dottore doctor, learned person, **dottora**, **dottoressa** (*often burl.*)  
 duca duke, **duchessa** duchess  
 eroe hero, **eroīna** heroine  
 fante page, **fantessa** maidservant  
 fattore steward, (**fattora**), **fattoressa**, steward's wife  
 filōsofo philosopher, **filōsofa** (*burl.*), **filosofessa**  
 forestiere foreigner, **forestiera**  
 governatore governor, **governatrice**; **governatora** governor's wife  
 imperatore emperor, **imperatrice** empress  
 istitutore teacher, tutor, **istitutrice** teacher, governess  
 marchese marquis, **marchesa** marchioness  
 mēdico physician, **medichessa**  
 padrone master, **padrona** mistress  
 papa pope, **papessa**  
 patriarca patriarch, **patriarchessa**  
 pittore painter, **pittrice**  
 principe prince, **principessa** princess  
 priore prior, **priora**, **prioressa**, prioress  
 professore professor **professoressa**  
 profeta prophet, **profetessa** prophetess  
 re king, **regina** queen

sacerdote priest, sacerdotessa priestess  
 scolare scholar, pupil, scolara  
 servo servant, sèrva  
 stiratore launderer, stiratora, stiratrice laundress  
 traditore traitor, traditora, traditrice traitress  
 uditore auditor, uditrice

## 204. The Verb *uscire* 'go out.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *uscire, uscendo, esco, uscirò, uscii, uscito*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
esco	usciamo	esca	usciamo		usciamo
esci	uscite	esca	usciate	esci	uscite
esce	ēscano	esca	ēscano	esca	ēscano

## VOCABULARY

acciaio steel	rame copper
argento silver	Reno Rhine
ferro iron	scarafaggio beetle
fico fig	Senna Seine
gallina hen	socialista socialist
gēnero son-in-law	suocero, -a father-in-law, mother-in-law
gru crane	Tamigi Thames
istitutore, -trice teacher	tēma theme
latta tin	Tēvere Tiber
limone lemon	traditore, -tora traitor, traitress
pēcora sheep	uva grape
noce walnut-tree; nut, walnut	vacca cow
nuora daughter-in-law	vite grapevine
olmo elm	mācchia thicket, brambles
oro gold	cogliere, cogliendo, cogli, coglierò,
padrone landlord, proprietor	cogli, cogli to gather
pero pear-tree	uscire di go out of
pescio peach-tree	
problema problem	
quercia oak	generalmente usually

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Beetles are usually black. 2. The grape is the fruit of the vine. 3. He has bought himself three cows and some hens. 4. Gold and silver are precious metals. 5. It is said that figs are not gathered from brambles. 6. My father-in-law and mother-in-law, having risen early, left this morning at seven. 7. The Spaniard aimed the gun at the cranes. 8. Grapes are gathered from grapevines, peaches from peach-trees, pears from pear-trees, and walnuts from walnut-trees. 9. His theme was the problem of the socialists. 10. The cows are hungry. 11. What kind of fruit is there on the table? There are figs and lemons. 12. Sheep and cows are usually bought at the village.

## II

1. Iron, steel, tin and copper are not precious metals. 2. My son-in-law, having gathered some walnuts and having given us some, has carried the rest home in his basket. 3. As I went out of the house, I saw them returning. 4. At the end of the year 1870 the hostile soldiers came out of Rome. 5. Having gone away before half past ten, I did not hear them talking about it. 6. Hurry, sir, if you wish to arrive before the train leaves. 7. Here are some grapes; let us gather some. 8. I do not doubt the proprietor will permit us to carry some home. 9. Traitors and traitresses are to be punished in whatever places they are found. 10. Elms and oaks are found in America. 11. The Rhine, the Thames, the Seine, and the Tiber are rivers of Europe.

## LESSON XXXV

## INDEFINITES. THE VERB SCEGLIERE

## 205. Alphabetical List of Indefinites.

- alcuno, -i, -a, -e 'some,' 'any.' (Adj. or pron., used often with **non** to mean 'not any.')
- altrettanto, -i, -a, -e (pron. or adj.) 'as much more,' 'as many more'
- altri (pron.) 'another,' used of persons
- altri . . . altri (pron.) 'some . . . others,' used of persons (also sing.)
- altro (pron.) 'something else,' 'anything else'
- altrui (pron.) 'to, of, *or* for another,' or 'others,' used of persons, and never in the nominative
- certuni, -e (pron.) 'certain ones,' used of persons
- checcchè, checchessìa (pron.) 'whatever,' 'anything whatever'
- chi . . . chi (pron.) 'some . . . others,' 'one . . . another'
- chicchessìa, chiunque (pron.) 'whoever,' 'any one whatever'
- ciascuno, -a, ciascheduno, -a (pron.) 'each one,' used of persons
- cosiffatto, -a, -i, -e (adj.) 'such'
- nessuno, -a, niuno, -a (pron. or adj.) 'not one,' 'no one'
- ogni (adj.) 'every'
- ognuno, -a (pron.) 'every one,' used of persons
- parècchi, -ie (pron. or adj.) 'several'
- per quanto (adv.) 'however'
- i più (pron.) 'most,' 'most people'
- qualche (adj.) 'some'
- qualcheduno, -a, qualcuno, -a (pron.) 'some one'
- qualcosa (pron.) 'something'
- qualsiasi, qualsisìa, qualsivoglia (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' never used in the nominative
- qualunque (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever'
- tale, -i (adj. or pron.) 'such'
- tale . . . quale 'such . . . as'
- tanto, -i, -a, -e 'so much,' 'so many'
- tanto . . . quanto 'as much . . . as'
- uno, -a (pron.) 'one'; (adj.) 'one,' 'a single'

**un che, un non so che** 'a something,' 'something or other'

**una cosa** 'something,' clear in the speaker's mind

**un tale** (adj.) 'such a'; (pron.) 'so-and-so,' 'such a one'

**l' uno e l' altro** 'both'

**nè l' uno nè l' altro** 'neither'

**l' uno o l' altro** 'either'

**veruno, -a** 'no one,' 'any one,' used in negative or doubtful sentences or expressions of doubt

**a.** An indefinite followed by an adjective requires **di**.

Niente **di** nuovo

Nothing new

Qualcosa **di** bello

Something beautiful

**206.** **Alcuno**, etc., 'some,' 'any.' **a.** **Alcuno** is either adjective or pronoun. In affirmative sentences its use is confined chiefly to the plural.

**Alcuni** lo dicono

**Some** say so

Ho **alcuni** libri russi

I have **some** Russian books

**1.** With **non**, **alcuno** in the singular regularly means 'none,' 'not any,' and follows the noun.

Nella regione devastata dal terremoto, **non** rimane più casa **alcuna**

In the region devastated by the earthquake, there is not a house remaining

**2.** 'Anything,' 'anybody,' in questions, are translated by the negative indefinites (cf. **210**) **nulla**, **nessuno**, etc.

È venuto **nessuno**?

Has **any one** come?

Di quest' affare ne sa **nulla**?

Do you know **anything** of this matter?

**3.** 'Any one else' is **ogni altro**.

Ha fatto più di **ogni altro**

He has done more than **any one** else

**4.** For the translation of 'any' as pronoun, cf. **124**.



**b.** *Qualcuno, qualcneduno*, are singular substantive forms, meaning 'some one,' commonly preferred to *alcuno* in affirmative sentences.

*C'è qualcuno che vorrebbe parlarle*      There is **some one** who would like to speak to you

*Scelga qualcuno di questi quadri*      Choose **some one** of these pictures

**c.** *Qualche, certo*, are adjectives meaning 'some,' 'certain,' 'a certain.'

1. *Qualche* is used only in the singular, even when the idea is plural.

*A quel pōvero si dēve qualche aiuto*      That poor man should have some help

*Vi stēttero qualche giorno*      They stayed there some **days**

2. *Certo* requires *un* in the singular.

*Certe abitudini sono da riprovarsi*      **Certain** habits are blameworthy

*Un certo Ciceruacchio menò i Romani alla rivolta*      **A certain** Ciceruacchio led the Romans to revolt

**d.** *Qualcosa*, meaning 'something,' is always used substantively.

*Mi hanno detto che ha qualcosa per me*      They tell me you have something for me

1. When referring to something in the mind, 'something' is translated *una cosa*.

*Mi permetta di dirle una cosa*      Allow me to tell you **something**

2. In an abstract sense, it is translated *un che, un non so che, un certo che*.

*Nella sua prōsa c'è sempre un che di artificioso*      In his prose there is always **something** artificial

*In questo paesaggio trovo un non sō che di pittoresco*      I find **something** picturesque in this landscape

*e.* 'Some . . . others' is translated by *alcuni . . . altri, altri . . . altri, gli uni . . . gli altri, chi . . . chi*, and sometimes *quale . . . quale*. *Chi* and *quale* take the verb in the singular.

<i>Alcuni</i> combattēvano sēmpre, <i>altri</i> la dāvano vinta	<i>Some</i> continued to fight, <i>others</i> gave up
<i>Chi</i> lo compiangeva, <i>chi</i> lo deri- deva	<i>Some</i> pitied him, <i>others</i> laughed at him
<i>Qual</i> fiōr cadea sul lēmbō, <i>qual</i> sulle trēcce bionde	<i>Some</i> flowers fell on her robe's hem, <i>some</i> on her blond tresses

**207.** *Uno* 'one,' etc. *a.* The pronoun 'one,' in the general sense of 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' is translated by *uno*, or by the third person of the reflexive (cf. 106, *b*).

Quand' <i>uno</i> si trōva in un paēse straniēro, dēve studiarne i cos- tumi	When <i>one</i> is in a foreign country, he should study its customs
Dōve si ēntra ?	Where does <i>one</i> enter ?

*b.* Before a proper name, *un* is equivalent to *un certo*.

Fu il tēzō triūmviro <i>un</i> Carlo Armellini	The third triumvir was <i>a certain</i> Carlo Armellini
---	--

*c.* *Uno* sometimes means 'one single,' 'one and the same.'

La pōvera vēcchia non ha <i>un</i> sōldo	The poor old woman has not <i>a</i> ( <i>single</i> ) penny
Amōre e 'l cōr gentil son <i>una</i> cōsa [DANTE]	Love and the gentle heart are <i>one</i> <i>same</i> thing [ROSSETTI]

*i.* In the feminine singular it modifies some word like *azione* 'action' or *truffa* 'trick,' understood. Cf. 146, *k, i*.

Ce <i>ne</i> ha fatta <i>una</i>	He has played us <i>one</i> of his tricks
----------------------------------	---

*d.* 'The . . . one,' with an adjective between, often takes a demonstrative where it would not be needed in English; the word 'one' is omitted in translation.

Non mi piace queſt' ombrellino.	I do not like this parasol. I shall
Prendo quello ſcuro	take the dark one
Codęſta pera non ę buona; prenda	This pear is not good; take the
quell' altra	other one
Mi piacciono quelle belle	I like thoſe pretty ones ( <i>f.</i> )

*e.* 'Each one,' 'every one,' are translated by *ciascuno*, *ciascheduno*, and *ognuno*, pronoun. *Ogni*, 'each,' 'every,' is an adjective. For *tutti*, 'everybody,' *tutto*, 'everything,' cf. 160.

Ciascuno di quei principi fu degno	Each of thoſe princes was worthy
d' onore	of honor
Ogni casa aveva un giardinetto	Each houſe had a little garden
In ogni caſo	In any caſe
Ognuno agiſce come crede	Every one acts as he thinks beſt

*i.* 'Apiece' is translated by *per uno*, *per ciascuno*.

Dięde loro ſei lire per uno	He gave them ſix lire apiece
-----------------------------	------------------------------

*f.* *Uno* correlative with *altro*.

Saper l' un dell' altro	To know one from the other
L' uno e l' altro	Both
L' un lito e l' altro vidi infin la	Both ſhores I ſaw as far as Spain
Spagna	
Nę l' uno nę l' altro	Neither
L' uno o l' altro	Either
Gli uni . . . gli altri	Some . . . others

Used reciprocally, cf. 104, *b.*

*i.* Except in the phrase *gli uni . . . gli altri*, *uno* has no plural. Its plural is ſupplied by *alcuni*.

**208.** *Altro* 'other,' etc. *a.* *Altri* is a ſingular pronoun, referring to perſons; it means 'another,' 'ſome one elſe,' and is often uſed in contrast.

Nę tu nę altri	Neither you nor any one elſe
----------------	------------------------------

**b.** *Altrui* is like *altri*, except that it may have a plural meaning, and is never nominative.

Non si deve bramare i beni altrui      One should not covet the goods of  
others

**c.** *Altro* as pronoun refers only to things, and means 'something else,' 'anything else,' 'else.'

Ci vuole altro?	Is <b>something else</b> needed?
Nient' altro	Nothing <b>else</b>
Che altro?	What <b>else</b> ?
Non desidero altro	I do not wish <b>anything else</b>

1. With the article, or in the plural, it refers to persons.

L' altra è colei che s' ancise amorosa	The other is she who killed her- self for love
Un altro, che forata avea la gola	Another, who had his throat pierced

2. With numbers, *altro* usually precedes.

Altri quattro	Four <b>others</b>
---------------	--------------------

**d.** *Altro* as adjective means 'other,' and has some special uses.

1. With *noi* and *voi* it is reënforcing.

Noi altri Russi	<b>We</b> Russians
Voi altri Ingleſi	<b>You</b> English

2. In the partitive construction it means 'some more.'

Desidera dell' altro vino?	Do you wish <b>some more</b> wine?
Dell' altr' acqua calda, per piacere	<b>Some more</b> hot water, please
Le piacciono le susine? Si serva delle altre	Do you like the plums? Take <b>some more</b>

3. Expressions of time.

L' altro anno	<b>Last</b> year
Quest' altra settimana	<b>Next</b> week

4. For its use correlatively and reciprocally, cf. 207, *f*.

5. For its adverbial use, cf. 215, *e*; 216, *f*.

**e. Altrettanto**, a pronoun referring to things, means 'as much *or* as many more.'

Diède cinque soldi al ragazzo e altrettanti alla sua sorellina	She gave five pennies to the boy, and <b>as many more</b> to his little sister
Legò tre mila lire a lui, e <b>altret- tanto</b> a me	He left three thousand lire to him, and <b>as much more</b> to me
Le auguro cento di questi giorni. Grazie, <b>altrettanto</b> a Lei	I wish you many happy returns of the day. Thank you, <b>the same</b> to you

**209. Some More General Indefinites. a. Tale 'such,' tanto 'so much,' etc.**

1. **Tale, un tale**, means 'one,' 'a certain one.'

Tal si partì da cantare alleluia	<b>One</b> left off singing alleluia
Quel tal Sandro, autor d' un ro- manzetto	<b>A certain</b> Sandro, author of a tale

2. 'Such a' is translated **un tale**.

Non potēvano continuare a com- battere dopo <b>una tale</b> sconfitta	They could not continue fighting after <b>such a</b> defeat
--	--

3. **Tal quale** may mean 'a kind of' or 'like.'

Questi uccelli producono una <b>tal qual</b> armonia che piace	These birds produce <b>a kind of</b> pleasing harmony
Come gli somiglia il suo gemello. È <b>tal quale</b> !	How much his twin brother re- sembles him! He is <b>exactly like</b>

4. **Tale . . . quale** means 'such . . . as,' and in long poetic comparisons **quale** often precedes.

<b>Tal</b> mi fec' io <b>quai</b> son color che stanno, Per non intēder quel ch' è lor risposto	I became <b>as those</b> who stand still because of not understanding what is replied to them
<b>Qual</b> è quel cane ch' abbaiando agugna . . . <b>Cotai</b> si fecer quelle facce lorde	<b>Like</b> the dog which barking craves . . . <b>such</b> those foul faces became



5. **Tanto . . . quanto** are similarly correlative, and mean 'as much . . . as.'

<b>Quanto</b> gli prestai, <b>tanto</b> mi restituì	He returned me <b>as much as</b> I lent him
---	---

6. Special uses of **tanto**.

<b>Ai tanti</b> del mese	<b>On such a day</b> of the month
<b>Un tanto</b> la settimana	<b>So much</b> per week
Vi si t̄ la Turchia agli <b>ottanta tanti</b>	He visited Turkey in the <b>eighties</b>

**b. Chiunque, qualunque, etc., 'whoever,' 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' etc.**

1. **Chiunque** and **chicchessia** are pronouns referring to persons; **chicchessia** and **checchessia** are not used in the nominative. **Cecchè** is preferred to **checchessia**.

Non lo farò, <b>chiunque</b> me lo consigli	<b>Whoever</b> advises it, I shall not do it
Non lo darei a <b>chicchessia</b>	I should not give it to <b>anybody at all</b>
<b>Cecchè</b> avvenga, non abbandoneranno la posizione	<b>Whatever</b> happens, they will not abandon the position

2. **Qualunque, qualsivoglia, and qualsiasi** are adjectives.

Garibaldi ritirandosi da Roma, si sarebbe rifugiato in <b>qualsiasi</b> paesetto	Garibaldi, when retreating from Rome, would have taken refuge in <b>any village whatever</b>
<b>Qualunque</b> ne sia il motivo, è un'azione indegna	<b>Whatever</b> may be its motive, it is an unworthy action

3. **Per quanto** is an adverb, meaning 'however.'

<b>Per quanto</b> il capitano fosse magnanimo, non potè perdonare un tale insulto	<b>However</b> magnanimous the captain might be, he could not forgive such an insult
---	--

**c. Cf. 169, h.**

**210. Negative Indefinites.** *a.* **Nessuno, niuno, veruno,** are pronouns or adjectives referring to persons or things. **Nessuno** is the most common.

<b>Nessun</b> erōe fu mai piū valorōso di Orlando	No hero was ever braver than Roland
<b>Nessuno</b> ci si mōsse	No one stirred

1. **Nulla, niente,** are pronouns meaning 'nothing.'

<b>Non c' è nulla</b> da mangiare	There is nothing to eat
<b>Non vōglio nulla</b>	I wish nothing
<b>Di niente</b>	Not at all, don't mention it

2. When one of these negatives follows the verb, **non** must precede. If the negative precede, **non** is not required.

<b>Non fa niente</b>	Never mind
<b>Non ci si vede niente</b>	There is nothing to be seen
<b>Nessuno</b> era arrivato prima delle sette	No one had arrived before seven
<b>Non c' è nessuno</b> de' miei	Not one of my relatives is here

3. Used absolutely, without verb, these words are negative in meaning.

Chi c' è? <b>Nessuno</b>	Who is there? No one
--------------------------	----------------------

4. Cf. 206, *a*, 1.

## 211. The Verb *scegliere* 'choose.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Scēgliere, scegliendo, scelgo, sceglierò,**  
**scēlsi, scēlto**

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

scelgo	scegliamo, scelghiamo
scegli	scegliete
sceglie	scēlgonο

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

scelga	scegliamo
scelga	scegliate
scelga	scēlgano

## VOCABULARY

la carezza	caress	accōrgersi, accōrsi, accōrto	perceive
la chicca	sweetmeat	avvezzare	accustom
la collera	anger	corrēggere, corrēssi, corrētto	correct
la colpa	fault, blame	corrēggersi di un difetto	correct a fault
il difetto	defect, fault	durare	last, hold out
la fede	faith	principiare	begin
i genitori	parents	rimproverare	reprove (rimprōvero)
il nipotino	little nephew	riuscire ( <i>like</i> uscire)	succeed; non mi riesce I can't
la pace	peace	tornar conto	be of advantage
il rimprōvero	reproof	alcuno, -i, -a, -e	some, any
il segno	sign	altrettanto	as much more
allora	then	nessuno	no, not any, no one
dentro di	within, inside of	niēte	nothing
dovunque	wherever		
spesso	often		

## EXERCISE

## I

## DAL GIORNALE DI GIGI

Tutte le volte che ho da fare qualche cosa di nuovo, dico subito dentro di me — Non mi riesce! — e trovo gran fatica a principiare. Ma appena ho cominciato, spesso mi accorgo che quello che mi pareva impossibile è possibilissimo, e che, qualche volta, è anche facile. Ho poco fede nelle mie forze, e voglio correggermi di questo difetto.

Tutti mi rimproverano perchè sono troppo facile a lasciarmi prendere dalla collera. Se tutti mi dicono questo, è segno che deve esser vero. Specialmente la mamma non mi dà mai pace coi suoi rimproveri. Ma la mamma la voglio contentarla, e ora che son grande mi voglio correggere.

Questa è una cosa che non la sa nessuno; ma io la so. Una gran parte di quelle carezze che faccio ai nonni e ai miei genitori,

le faccio perchè mi torna conto. Ma io non ci ho colpa. Mi ci devono avere avvezzato da piccino, e più di tutti mi ci deve avere avvezzato la povera zia Francesca, buon' anima, che mi diceva sempre — Se mi dai un bacio, ti do una chicca. — E io, allora, duravo a dargliene finchè ci eran chicche; ma quando le chicche della zia Francesca eran finite, finivano subito i baci del nipotino Gigi.

## II

1. Whenever one has something new to do, one should not say "I can't do it." 2. No one could make me begin it. 3. Do not say it to any one. 4. In this book there is nothing good. 5. My parents gave my little brother three cents, and they gave me as many more. 6. Wherever you go, you will find no one who loves you as they do [like them]. 7. Everybody reproved him for being easily made angry. 8. Has any one spoken of it to you? No one. 9. However bad your defects may be, you can correct them. 10. Do you wish anything else? Nothing else. 11. I had already perceived it last year. 12. I was not speaking of this book, but of the new one. 13. Let us try to correct our faults. 14. Some praised him for accustoming himself to working; others reproved him for not correcting his faults. 15. They will never give you peace as long as you let yourself become angry easily. 16. But it is not your fault. 17. Have you any nuts? Let me give you some more. 18. No, thank you, but I should like some more coffee. 19. Come with us, gentlemen; have you noticed what time it is? 20. However difficult those lessons are, he will have them learned within a few days.

## III

## L' AUTOMOBILE

Il mio amico Giācomo ha comprato un' automōbile. Siccome non sa ancora troppo bene condurla, gli cāpita di quando in quando qualche malanno. La prima volta ch' è rimasto in panna, fu per mancanza di benzina, il che può succedere anche agli automobilisti

esperti. Un'altra volta una persona sul marciapiede gli fece segno che uno dei copertoni delle ruote era consumato. Era sgonfio. Immediatamente dopo, uno schianto come un tuono lo avvertì che un altro pneumatico era scoppiato. Si dovè fermare dieci minuti a pompare. Poi tirò via, sonando la cornetta da svegliare i Sette Dormienti. Poco dopo gli è successo un accidente, di quelli gravi. Fu così: Il mātice, che generalmente lo teneva giù, era stato alzato per la pioggia; perciò non poteva vedere bene come al solito. A un tratto s'accorse che un bambino gli traversava la strada proprio davanti. Cercando di evitarlo, dette il freno, ma il freno, per la prima volta, non andava. Allora cercò di sterzare più presto che poteva, ma nell'eccitamento girò un po' troppo il volante; e l'automobile, che stava in cima alla salita, s'voltò improvvisamente a destra, andando a sbattere su quel po' di muricciuolo all'orlo della strada, il quale cedette, e l'automobile slittò giù fino al fiume. Si fermò per fortuna proprio sull'orlo del torrente, e benchè tutti fossero spaventati da morirne, non ci fu nessuna disgrazia.

## LESSON XXXVI

ADVERBS. THE VERB *VALERE*

**212. Position of Adverbs.** *a.* Rules for position are not very strict, but most adverbs, except *non*, follow the verb.

<i>Non</i> lo trovò	He did not find it
Lo trovò <i>immediatamente</i>	He found it immediately

*b.* An adverb modifying an adjective, another adverb, or a phrase, usually precedes.

È <i>troppo</i> difficile	It is too difficult
Riuscì <i>singolarmente</i> bene	He succeeded singularly well
Viaggiando, <i>specialmente</i> con un compagno simpatico, se ne gode moltissimo	When one travels, especially with a congenial companion, one has much enjoyment



213. Comparison of Adverbs. Cf. 115, 116, 117.

214. Adverbs of Manner. *a.* These are almost all formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine of the adjective.

*Premuroso* 'eager,' *premurosamente* 'eagerly'

1. If the feminine of the adjective ends in *-le* or *-re*, the *-e* is dropped before *-mente*.

*Facile*, *facilmente*; *particolare*, *particolarmente*

2. Certain adverbs ending in *-one*, *-oni*, indicate the posture of the body.

*Bocconi* 'flat on one's face,' *carponi* 'on all fours'

*b.* A few adverbs end in *-i* or *-e*; as *altrimenti* 'otherwise,' *bene* 'well,' *volentieri* 'willingly,' etc.

*c.* Certain adjectives in *-o* are used as adverbs; as *alto* 'high,' *presto* 'quick,' *sicuro* 'sure,' *sūbito* 'sudden.'

1. Certain others, when so used, continue to agree with their noun. Such are *caro*, *grande*, *mezzo*, *solo*, *tutto*, *primo*, and *ultimo*.

<i>Mezza</i> morta	Half dead
<i>Desidero</i> due sole paia	I wish only two pairs
<i>Questa</i> catena l' ho pagata cara	I paid dear for this chain

2. *Bello* is used adverbially along with the past participle.

<i>La</i> rōba bell' e fatta	Ready-made goods
<i>Lo</i> scorpionē era bell' e morto	The scorpion was good and dead

3. Certain adverbial phrases are used adjectively to modify nouns.

<i>Il</i> piede di dietro	The hind foot
<i>Un</i> uomo per bene	An honorable man
<i>Una</i> cosa da nulla	A trifle

215. Adverbs of Affirmation. *a.* *Sì* is 'yes' in answer to a question.

<i>Verrà</i> stasera? <i>Sì</i>	Shall you come this evening? Yes
---------------------------------	----------------------------------

**b.** *Già* is 'yes' in simple confirmation or agreement.

Piùve a diròtto. *Già* It is pouring. Yes, it is

1. In such confirmatory phrases as 'I think so,' 'I hope so,' 'so' is expressed by *lo* (cf. 100, e, 1).

*Lo spero* I hope so

**c.** *Pure* adds emphasis, and is equivalent to 'do,' 'pray do.'

*Venga pure* Do come

**d.** *Pur troppo* assents with regret, meaning 'only too much,' 'only too well,' 'yes, unfortunately.'

*Lò conosce? Pur troppo* Do you know him? Only too well

**e.** The following are emphatic affirmatives :

<i>Altro!</i>	By all means!
<i>Appunto</i>	Exactly
<i>Davvero</i>	It is true. Really?
<i>Certo, sicuro, sì bene</i>	Yes, indeed
<i>Lò crèdo!</i>	I believe you!

**f.** *Ma sì* affirms while contradicting.

*Non è mai stato in Amērica, crèdo. Ma sì, più vòlte* You have never been in America, I think. O yes, several times

**g.** *Altro che* not only answers in the affirmative, but adds something not implied in the question.

*Non s'è visto ancora il mēdico? Altro che visto! C'è!* Nothing has been seen yet of the doctor? Better than that! He's here!

*Conosce quella signorina? Altro che conoscerla! È mia sorèlla!* Do you know that young lady? Rather! She is my sister!

**h.** *Signora sì* and *Signor no* are equally admissible with *Sì Signora* and *No Signore*, though less usual.

**216. Adverbs of Negation.** *a.* **Non** immediately precedes the verb, or the object pronoun if there be one.

<b>Non</b> voglio	I will not, I refuse
<b>Non</b> lo trovò	He did not find it

*b.* **Non . . . che** means 'only,' 'but.'

<b>Non</b> ne desidero <b>che</b> due	I wish <b>only</b> two of them
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------

*i.* In the locutions **non . . . che**, **non . . . mai**, the verb stands between.

<b>Non</b> lo fece <b>mai</b>	He never did it
<b>Non</b> chiede <b>che</b> un po' di pane	She asks only a bit of bread

*c.* 'Neither . . . nor' is **nè . . . nè**.

<b>Nè</b> più <b>nè</b> meno	Neither more nor less
------------------------------	-----------------------

*d.* **No** is 'no' spoken in reply to a question, and is used instead of **non** in the phrases **o no** 'or not,' **se no** 'if not,' and sometimes in antithetical phrases, where a part only of the proposition is contradicted.

Verrò domani, <b>o no</b> ?	Shall I come to-morrow or not?
<b>Se no</b> , verrò domani l'altro	If not, I will come day after to-morrow
Prendo il bianco e il marrone, ma <b>non</b> il rosso	I'll take the white one and the brown, but not the red one
Vengo volentieri al teatro, ma in platea <b>no</b>	I will go to the theater gladly, but not in the orchestra seats

*i.* **Di** is required with the adverbs of affirmation or negation in such expressions as the following:

Cre <sup>do</sup> <b>di no</b>	I think <b>not</b>
Rispose <b>di sì</b>	He said <b>yes</b>

*e.* For the negatives 'nothing,' 'nobody,' etc., cf. **210**.

*i.* **Niente** is often used adjectively in conversation to mean 'not any.'

<b>Niente</b> frutta, grazie	No fruit, thank you
------------------------------	---------------------

*f.* The principal adverbs of negation are

**nò** no, not

**nòn** not

**nòn . . . mai, non . . . giammai** never

**nòn . . . più** no longer, never again

**nòn . . . punto, non . . . mica** (*contradicting*) not at all

**niènte affatto** nothing at all, not at all

**per niènte** not in the least

**tutt' altro** by no means, on the contrary

**Non** lo farò più

**Non** lavora più

Suo zio **non** le legò **niènte affatto**

Ma **non** c'è nulla, proprio **nulla**

Pensa insomma di farlo? **Per niènte!**

Le dà **nò** se apro la finestra?

**Tutt' altro**; ci fa caldo

I shall never do it again

He is no longer working

Her uncle left her nothing at all

But there is nothing there, nothing at all

You *are* thinking of doing it after all? Not for anything

Will it disturb you if I open the window? On the contrary, it is too warm here

1. **Mai** and **punto**, used absolutely and without verb, have negative value; but **mai** alone in comparative or interrogative sentences means 'ever.'

Le piace questo paesaggio? **Punto**

Il migliore ch'io abbia **mai** visto

Ha **mai** visitato la Cina? **Mai**

Do you like this view? Not at all

The best I ever saw

Have you **ever** visited China? **Never**

**217. Adverbs of Place.** *a.* 'Here,' 'there,' etc., when at all emphatic, are expressed by the following adverbs, which are to be carefully distinguished according to whether the place indicated is near the speaker, near the person spoken to, or remote from either.

1. **Near the speaker:** **qua** means 'here,' 'here in this room or place'; **qui** means 'here by me'; **quaggiù**, **quassù**, mean respectively 'down here,' 'up here.'

2. Near the person addressed: *costì, costà*, 'there where you are'; *costaggiù* 'down there where you are'; *costassù* 'up there where you are.'

3. Remote from either: *là, colà, lì, ivi, quivi*, 'there' (*là* and *colà* being further removed than *lì*); *laggiù* 'down there' and *lassù* 'up there'; *indi, quindi*, 'thence.'

4. Special uses: *di qua, quaggiù*, mean 'here below,' 'on this earth'; *di là, costà, quassù*, 'above,' 'in the other world.'

Essere più *di là* che *di qua*

To be more **dead** than **alive**

*Di lì* a due giorni

Two days **from then**

Stare *lì lì* per far una cosa

To be on the **very point** of doing a thing

Essere in *là* cõgli anni

To be **well on** in years

*b.* When not emphatic, or when referring to a place already mentioned, 'here,' 'there,' and 'thence' are expressed respectively by *ci, vi, ne* (cf. 126).

1. Special uses of *ci*. *Ci* is used very often with apparent redundancy, as if to reinforce or enrich the meaning of the verb.

Non *ci* sento niente

I hear nothing

*Ci* hõ due mila lire

I have two thousand lire (in the house, on my person)

Iddio *c'è*

God is

*c.* 'Here is,' 'there is,' when demonstrative, are translated by *ecco* (cf. 100, *a*); when not demonstrative, by *c'è, ci sono, v'è, vi sono*. *Ecco* answers 'where?' *c'è* etc., 'what?'

*Ecco* una farfalla!

**There is** a butterfly

*Ci sono* tanti olivi sulle colline

**There are** many olive-trees on the hillsides

*d.* *Altrove, altrõnde*, are adverbs of place meaning 'elsewhere.'

*e.* *Dove* and *quando* are used correlatively: *dove . . . dove* meaning 'here . . . there,' and *quando . . . quando* 'now . . . now.'



**218. Adverbs of Quantity. a. Cf. 160.**

**b. Troppo** is followed by **da** (or **per**) to mean 'too much . . . to.'

È **troppo** buono **da** farlo                      He is **too** kind to do it

1. **Troppo** followed by **più** has the meaning of **molto**.

È **troppo** più difficile che non crede      It is **much** more difficult than you think

**c.** 'The more . . . the more' is translated by **più . . . e più**.

Più vò innanzi cogli anni e più amo      **The older** I grow **the more** I love  
i giòvani    the young

**219. Lists of Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases. (Cf. 227.)****a. Adverbs of Manner.**

Adagio	With ease, slowly, softly
Ad alta voce	Aloud
All' aperto, al fresco	In the open
A bell' agio	At ease, conveniently, comfortably
A braccetto	Arm in arm
Alla buona	In a familiar way, after a fashion
Alla carlona	Carelessly
A suo comodo	At one's convenience
Alla deriva	Adrift, to leeward
Affatto	Entirely, at all ( <i>usually negative</i> )
A galla	Afloat
A gara	In competition
All' improvviso	Unexpectedly
Alla lunga	Long drawn out
A lutto	In mourning
Alla macchia	In secret
A malincuore	Against one's will
Alla meglio	For the best, as best one can
Alla peggio	The worst possible, very badly
Al possibile	The most possible
A quattr' occhi	Tête-à-tête
Alla rinfusa	Helter-skelter; abundantly
A rovescio	Upside down, wrong end to

Alla sfuggita	On the fly, at a glance
Al sōlito, come al sōlito	As usual
A soqqadro	Topsy-turvy
Alla stracca	Listlessly, unwillingly
Alla s̄velta	Cursorily, hastily
Alla s̄vogliata	Heedlessly, indifferently
All' ūltime	At last
A un tratto	Suddenly, at once
A vicēnda	In turn; mutually
Da capo	Over again
Da sēnno	In earnest
Di nascōsto	Secretly
Di nuōvo	Again
Deł rēsto	For the rest, in other respects
Di sōlito	As a rule
Deł tutto	Altogether
Forse	Perhaps
In complesso	Everything considered
Indarno	In vain
Infatti	In fact
In fine	In short
In frētta	In haste
In ogni caso	Anyway, in any case
In pūbblico	In public
In tanto	After all, meanwhile
In vano	In vain
Piano	Softly, gently, slowly
Per altro	In other respects, for that matter
Per dispetto	For spite
Sēnz' altro	Without delay; purely and simply
Sēnza dubbio	Without doubt
Sì e nō	Approximately
Sotto sopra	Upside down, helter-skelter
Sul sērio	Seriously, in good earnest
Suo malgrado	In spite of him
Bocconi	Flat on one's face
Carponi	On all fours
Ciondoloni	Dangling

In ginocchioni	On one's knees
Penzoloni	Hanging
Ruzzoloni	Head over heels
Tastoni	Gropingly, feeling one's way

### b. Adverbs of Place.

Abbasso	Downstairs, down
Accanto	Next, next door
Al di dentro	Inside
Al di fuori	Outside
A dritto	Straight ahead
All' indietro	Backward
All' in giù	Downward
All' in su	Upward
Da ciascuna parte	On each side
Dappertutto	Everywhere
Davanti	Ahead, in front
Di contro } Di faccia }	Opposite
Di dentro	Inside
Difilato	Straight ahead without stopping
Diritto	Straight ahead
Di fuori	Outside
Di là	On that side, that way
Di qua	On this side, this way
Di qua e di là	On both sides
Di sopra	Upstairs, above
Di sotto	Below, down
Fin dove?	How far?
Fuori di porta	Outside the walls
Giù	Down, below
In giù	Downward
Innanzi	Ahead
In su	Upward
Intorno	Around
Per ogni dove	Everywhere
Qua e là	Here and there

Su	Up, above, upstairs
Su e giù	Up and down
Su per giù	Roughly, approximately

## c. Adverbs of Time.

Alla fine	At last
A giorni	At times
Al giorno d'oggi	Nowadays
A momenti	In a moment, presently
Appena	No sooner, hardly
A tempo	On time
A volte	At times, sometimes
Da mane a sera	From morning till night
Da oggi in poi	Henceforth, from now on
Da qui innanzi	
D'ora innanzi	
Da qui ad un mese	A month from now
Da un momento all'altro	At any moment
Da un pezzo	For some time past
Dianzi	Before, a little while ago
Di buon'ora	Early
Di quando in quando	Now and then
Di rado	Seldom
Di recente	Recently
Delle volte	Sometimes
Fino a quando?	Until when?
Fin dal principio	From the first
Fra breve	In a little while
Fra giorni	In a few days
Fra quanto?	How soon?
In giornata	In the course of the day
In men che non si dice	In no time
In oggi	Nowadays
In principio	At first
In quel mentre, in questo mentre	In the meanwhile
In seguito	Afterwards, in the future
In un batter d'occhio	In a flash
Nel frattempo	Meanwhile

Ogni quanto?	How often?
Ogni tanto	Every so often
Or ora	Just now
Per ora	For the present
Per tempo	Early
Più qua	Later
Poc' anzi	A little while ago
Prima o poi	Sooner or later
Quanto prima	As soon as possible
Su due pièdi	Then and there, on the instant
Sull' ultimo	At the last moment
Talvolta	Sometimes
Tempo fa	A while ago
Tempo indietro	Before this, in the past, some time ago
Una volta ogni tanto	Once every so often

## 220. The Verb *valere* 'be worth.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *valere, valendo, valgo, varrò, valsei, valuto or valso*

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

valgo	valiamo, valghiamo
vali	valete
vale	vãlgono

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

valga (vaglia)	valghiamo (vogliamo)
valga (vaglia)	valghiate (vagliate)
valga (vaglia)	vãlgano (vagliano)

## VOCABULARY

il *bòia* executioner

Ciro Cyrus

la *fedeltà* fidelity

Francesco Francis

l' *ingegno* *m.* talent

il *marito* husband

il *mãrtire* martyr

la *mãschera* mask

il *mòstro* monster

*scellerato* criminal, wicked

*buttare* throw away

*giurare* swear

*impiccare* hang

*intravedere* glimpse

*salvare* save

*şbarazzare* rid, disembarass

*tradire* betray

*valersi di* avail oneself of

*abbasso* down, downstairs

*alla fine* at last

*all' improvviso* suddenly, unexpectedly



a lutto in mourning	di nuovo again, once more
a momenti in a moment	di rado seldom
a quattr'occhi tête-à-tête	di recente recently
a tempo on time	fin dal principio from the beginning
bocconi flat on one's face	fin dove? how far?
carponi on all fours	ginocchioni on one's knees
da mane a sera from morning till night	infatti in fact
dappertutto everywhere	in ogni caso in any case
di nascosto secretly	quanto prima as soon as possible
	sul serio seriously

## EXERCISE

## I

## CIRO MENOTTI

Ecco un' altra vittima illustre della tirannia straniera, un altro martire, tradito, imprigionato e impiccato da quel ridicolo mostro che fu Francesco IV, duca di Modena. La sua elevata posizione sociale, il suo ingegno, il suo cuore, l' essere marito e padre, nulla gli valse per salvarlo. Conoscendo quanto fosse ambizioso quel Duca scellerato, gli fece intravedere la possibilità, se si fosse messo alla testa del movimento rivoluzionario, di diventar lui il Re della nuova Italia. E il Duca si mise alla testa dei rivoluzionari modenesi e giurò fedeltà. Ma questo forse egli fece per conoscer meglio gli uomini dei quali avrebbe dovuto sbarazzarsi. Infatti, colto il momento opportuno, buttò via la maschera, li fece tutti arrestare, e nel medesimo tempo scrisse al Governatore austriaco di Reggio: *Mandatemi il boia.*

## II

1. Duke Francis availed himself of the mask of fidelity, in order to rid himself of the revolutionists. 2. The wicked man sought secretly, from morning till night, to rid himself of them. 3. At last, suddenly, he had them taken, and had the executioner come

as soon as possible. 4. He had the martyrs of Italian independence hanged, and many Italian women dressed once more in mourning. 5. After the battle the soldiers were found not seldom on their knees, on all fours, or flat on their faces. 6. One easily sees that you have studied seriously. 7. Was Duke Francis of Modena born in 1779? Yes. 8. Here it is said that Prince Louis is a monster; what do they say of him up there where you are? 9. How far shall we follow this road before turning to the left? 10. In any case we must start early, because it has rained recently. 11. Are you too tired to accompany me? On the contrary, I should like to go. 12. *Ciro Menotti* died a martyr. Yes. 13. Do you like Mrs. C.? Not at all. She is not at all congenial. 14. Shall we take a walk in the public gardens? By all means!

## LESSON XXXVII

### PREPOSITIONS

**221. The Simple Prepositions.** *a*. The simple prepositions *a*, *con*, *da*, *di*, *in*, and *per* should as a rule be repeated before every noun or pronoun which they govern.

Ne ha dato <i>a</i> Giovanni e <i>a</i> Luigi	He gave some to John and Louis
Parlarono <i>di</i> te e <i>di</i> me	They spoke of you and me

*b*. The prepositions *contro*, *dentro*, *dopo*, *oltre*, *presso*, *senza*, *sopra*, *sotto*, *su*, *verso*, and sometimes *fra*, take *di* before a personal pronoun.

Non parta <i>senza di</i> me	Do not leave without me
Arrivai <i>dopo di</i> lui	I arrived after him

**222. Compound Prepositions.** The great majority of Italian prepositions are compound, being composed usually of an

adverb and a preposition, but sometimes of two prepositions together: *fuori di* 'outside,' *intorno a* 'around.'

<b>Su per le vie</b>	Up and down the streets
<b>Al di dentro</b>	Inside

*a*. The prepositions compounded with *a*, when governing a pronoun, drop *a*; the pronoun (cf. 136, *a*) becomes conjunctive in the dative case.

<b>Mi vidi innanzi una sentinella</b> ( <i>not vidi innanzi a me</i> )	I saw <b>in front of me</b> a sentinel
<b>Gli andai incontro</b> ( <i>not incontro a lui</i> )	I went to <b>meet him</b>
Due battaglioni gli vengono sopra	Two battalions came <b>upon him</b>
Cadēvagli poco discosto Torquato	Torquato fell <b>not far from him</b>
Ci fa segno di andargli dietro	He makes a sign to us to <b>follow him</b>

*b*. **Lungi, lontano, discosto**, meaning 'far,' which usually are compounded with *da*, take *di* before an adverb.

Lungi <b>di</b> qui	Far from here
Lontano <b>di</b> là	Far from there

But	
Lontano <b>dal</b> centro	Far from the center

**223. The Preposition with Adjectives.** *a*. Many adjectives take *di* before a noun of material, characteristic, etc.

Una catinella piena <b>d'</b> acqua	A basin full <b>of</b> water
I monti neri <b>di</b> pini	The mountains black <b>with</b> pines
Il sentiero ingombro <b>di</b> sassi	The path cumbered <b>with</b> stones

Others, which would not take 'of' in English, are

<b>abbondante</b> ( <b>di</b> ) abundant (in)	<b>pōvero</b> ( <b>di</b> ) poor (in)
<b>ammalato</b> ( <b>di</b> ) ill (with)	<b>ricco</b> ( <b>di</b> ) rich (in)
<b>contento</b> } ( <b>di</b> ) contented (with)	<b>soddisfatto</b> ( <b>di</b> ) satisfied (with)
<b>pago</b> }	<b>vestito</b> ( <b>di</b> ) clothed (in)

*b.* Many, such as *fedele* 'loyal,' *pericoloso* 'dangerous,' *pronto* 'ready,' *simile* 'similar,' *utile* 'useful,' take *a*, as their English equivalents 'to.'

*c.* A few, such as *alieno* 'foreign,' 'averse (to),' *diverso* 'different (from),' *indipendente* 'independent (of),' take *da*.

**224. The Preposition with Verbs.** *a.* For the use of prepositions before infinitives, cf. 174.

*b.* Many verbs which in English are transitive, in Italian require a preposition before their object, and the reverse is equally true. Those verbs which take *a* take the conjunctive in the dative; when the object is a thing, the pronoun is *ci*. *Ne* is used as the pronoun object of the verbs that take *di*.

Ubbidisce <i>al</i> padre	She obeys her father
Il principe successe <i>al</i> re	The prince succeeded the king
Giocare <i>alla</i> pallacorda	To play tennis
Se <i>ne</i> accorse subito	He perceived it immediately
<i>Ci</i> devo rinunciare	I must give it up
Cambierà <i>d'</i> opinione	He will change his mind
Domandi <i>a</i> Margherita	Ask Margaret
Lo cerco	I am looking <i>for</i> it
La guardano	They are looking <i>at</i> her
Ascoltano la musica	They are listening <i>to</i> the music
Non lo ammette	It does not admit <i>of</i> it
Ho sognato <i>te</i>	I dreamed <i>of</i> you

1. Sometimes the preposition is merely different.

Domandano <i>di</i> Lei	They are asking <i>for</i> you
Pensare <i>a</i> una cosa	To think <i>of</i> a thing
<i>Ci</i> penso	I am thinking <i>of</i> it
Ridere <i>di</i> una cosa	To laugh <i>at</i> a thing
<i>Ne</i> ridevano tanto	They laughed <i>at</i> it a great deal

**225. Compound Nouns.** English compound nouns are usually translated by means of a prepositional phrase.

**a.** If the modifying member of the compound be merely descriptive, the preposition is **di**, sometimes **a**.

biglietto <b>di</b> vīsita	visiting-card
gallerīa <b>di</b> cuadri	picture-gallery
libro <b>di</b> scuōla	schoolbook
libro <b>di</b> tēsto	textbook
a prōva <b>di</b> bōmba	bomb-proof
orolōgio <b>a</b> svehlia	alarm clock
schioppo <b>a</b> due canne	double-barreled gun

**b.** If it indicates means, the preposition is **a**.

barca <b>a</b> vēla	sailboat
mācchina <b>a</b> vapōre	steam-engine

**c.** If it indicates purpose, the preposition is **da**.

cani <b>da</b> caccia	hunting-dogs
tazza <b>da</b> caffè. (But 'tazza <b>di</b> caffè' is 'cup of coffee')	coffee-cup
mācchina <b>da</b> cucire	sewing-machine
carta <b>da</b> lēttre	letter-paper
servizio <b>da</b> tè	tea-service

**d.** For the formation and pluralizing of Italian compound nouns, cf. 181.

## 226. List of Prepositions. **a.** English-Italian.

about, approximately	<b>circa, prēso a pōco</b>
about, around	<b>intōrno a, dintōrno a, attōrno a, per</b>
about, concerning	<b>di</b>
above	<b>sopra</b>
according to	<b>secondo</b>
across	<b>a traverso</b>
after	<b>dōpo</b> ; <i>before an infinitive</i> <b>dōpo di</b>
against	<b>contra, cōtro</b>
along	<b>lungo</b>
among	<b>fra, tra</b>
as far as	<b>fino a, sino a</b>



- as for *per*, in quanto a  
as to *in riguardo a*, *in rispetto a*  
at *a*  
at the rate of *a ragione di*  
because of *a causa di*, *a motivo di*, *per motivo di*, *a ragione di*  
before, in front of *davanti a*, *innanzi*  
before (*time*) *prima di*, *innanzi*  
behind *dietro*  
below, beneath *sotto*  
beside, besides, in addition to *oltre (a or di)*  
beside, next to *accanto a*  
between *fra*, *tra*  
beyond *oltre*, *al di là di*, *di là da*  
by (*agent*) *da*  
by (*instrument or means*) *di*  
by, beside *accanto a*  
by dint of *a forza di*  
by means of *per mezzo di*  
during *durante*  
except *eccetto*, *fuori di*, *tranne*  
for *per*  
for (*with measure of time*) *da*  
from *da*  
from (*used of abstract things*, 'from that time,' 'from the beginning')  
*fin da*  
in *in*; *after a superlative di or fra*  
inside of *dentro di*  
instead of *invece di*  
in the midst of *in mezzo a*  
into *in*  
near *vicino a*, *presso a*  
of *di*  
on *su (sur)*, *sopra*  
on this side of *al di qua di*  
on the other side of *al di là di*  
opposite to *dirimpetto a*, *in faccia a*  
outside of *fuori di*  
over *sopra*

through **per, attraverso**  
 to a; *before the name of a country in; before that of a person da, a*  
 toward **verso**  
 under **sotto**  
 until **fino a, sino a**  
 with **con**  
 within, inside of **dentro (di or a)**  
 within, in the course of (*time*) **fra**  
 without **senza**  
 without, outside of **fuori di**

### b. Italian-English.

**a, ad** at, to  
**a beneficio di** for the benefit of  
**a causa di** because of  
**accanto a** } beside, next to  
**accosto a** }  
**addosso a** on, on top of, on the back of  
**a dispetto di** in spite of  
**ad onore di** in honor of  
**ad onta di** in spite of  
**a favore di** in favor of  
**a forza di** by dint of  
**al di là di** beyond  
**al di qua di** on this side of  
**allato a** by the side of  
**all' infuori di** outside of  
**a malgrado di** notwithstanding  
**appetto a** facing, opposite  
**appiè di** at the foot of  
**a pro di** to the advantage of  
**a ragione di** because of; at the rate of  
**attorno a** around, round about  
**attraverso a** across, through  
**con** with  
**contra, contro (a or di)** against  
**da** by, from  
**davanti a** before, in front of

dentro a	(or di)	within, inside of
di		of
dietro	(a or di)	behind
di là da		on the other side of
dinanzi a		in front of
dintorno a		around
di qua da		on this side of
dirimpetto a		opposite, facing
discosto a		away from
dopo, dopo di		after
durante		during
eccetto		except
entro a		within ( <i>time</i> )
fin da		from ( <i>time</i> )
fino a		until, up to
fra		between, among; within ( <i>time</i> )
fuori di		outside of
giusta		according to, conformably to
in		in, into
in cambio di		in exchange for
in capo a (di)		at the end of, at the head of
in cima a		at the summit of
incontro a		against
in faccia a		opposite, facing
in fondo a		at the end of, at the back of, at the bottom of
in luogo di		instead of
in mezzo a		in the midst of
innanzi a		in front of
in quanto a		as to
in riguardo a	}	with respect to
in rispetto a		
insieme a (con)		together with
intorno a		around
invece di		instead of
lontano da (di)		far from
lungi da (di)		far from
lungo		along
malgrado		in spite of

**mediante** by means of  
**mercè** thanks to  
**oltre a** beyond  
**per** through, for  
**per mezzo di** by means of  
**per motivo di** because of  
**presso a** near  
**prima di** before (*time*)  
**raşente a** close to, grazing  
**salvo** except

**secondo** according to  
**senza** without  
**sino a** up to  
**sopra (a)** above  
**sotto (a)** below  
**su (sur)** on  
**tra** between, among  
**tranne** except  
**verso** towards  
**vicino a** near

**227. Idiomatic Use of Prepositions.** The correct use of prepositions is one of the most delicate and difficult things in the study of any foreign language. The uses of a given preposition overlap, and it is not easy to determine the limits of each. 'To' and 'from,' for example, may each be translated variously, according to the shade of meaning, by **a**, **di**, or **da**. No rules can be formulated in this matter, practice and observation being the only guides. A careful reading and rereading of the examples assembled below will, however, show which is the preposition to be used in a good many typical cases.

**a.** Phrases with **a**, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'on,' 'to,' 'with,' 'within.'

**A bocca aperta**

**A bordo**

**Al buio**

**A capo chino**

**A che cosa pensa?**

**Al chiaro di luna**

**A contanti**

**A cõttimo**

**A danaro sonante**

**Alla destra, alla sinistra**

**A due per due**

**With open mouth**

**On board**

**In the dark**

**With bowed head**

**Of what are you thinking?**

**By moonlight**

**In cash**

**By the piece, piecework**

**In cash**

**To the right, to the left**

**Two by two**

<b>A due per volta</b>	<b>Two at a time</b>
<b>A giornata</b>	<b>By the day</b>
<b>Alla giornata, vivere</b>	<b>To live from day to day, from hand to mouth</b>
<b>All' ingrosso</b>	<b>At wholesale</b>
<b>A macchina</b>	<b>By machine</b>
<b>A mano</b>	<b>By hand</b>
<b>Al mare</b>	<b>By the sea</b>
<b>A mente</b>	<b>By heart</b>
<b>A migliaia</b>	<b>By thousands</b>
<b>A minuto</b>	<b>At retail</b>
<b>A modo suo</b>	<b>In one's own way</b>
<b>A nolo, prēndere <i>or</i> dare</b>	<b>To rent <i>or</i> let</b>
<b>A olio</b>	<b>In oils</b>
<b>A ora</b>	<b>By the hour</b>
<b>A orecchio</b>	<b>By ear</b>
<b>Alla pioggia</b>	<b>In the rain</b>
<b>A portata di mano</b>	<b>Within reach of one's hand</b>
<b>A posta</b>	<b>On purpose</b>
<b>A che pro?</b>	<b>To what end?</b>
<b>Al sole</b>	<b>In the sun</b>
<b>A volo</b>	<b>On the wing</b>
<b>A volta di corriere</b>	<b>By return mail</b>
<b>La morte lo rapiva alla famiglia</b>	<b>Death took him from his family</b>
<b>La riconosco alla voce, al color dei capelli</b>	<b>I recognize her by her voice, by the color of her hair</b>
<b>L'ho sentito dire a degli altri</b>	<b>I have heard it said by others</b>
<b>Ai tempi di cui parlo</b>	<b>At the time of which I am speaking</b>
<b>La minestra sembra buona all'odore</b>	<b>The soup seems good by the odor of it</b>

**b.** Phrases with **da**, meaning 'as,' 'at,' 'at the house of,' 'by,' 'characteristic of,' 'for,' 'from,' 'like,' 'on,' 'such as to,' 'to,' or 'with.'

<b>Da padre</b>	<b>Like a father</b>
<b>Dalla parte nostra</b>	<b>On our side</b>
<b>Lettere da casa</b>	<b>Letters from home</b>



Materiale da costruzione	Construction materials
Vini da pasto	Table wines
Ha una famiglia da mantenere	He has a family to maintain
Vede il bambino dai capelli ricciuti?	Do you see the child with curly hair?
Dimora da nostro cugino	He lives at our cousin's
Passi dalla posta	Stop at the post office
Non vuol essere da meno degli altri	He does not wish to be inferior to others
Si crede da più degli altri	He thinks himself superior to others
La chiesa ha tutto da guadagnare, nulla da perdere	The church has everything to gain and nothing to lose
Non dipende da lui	It does not depend on him
Fa da interprete	He acts as interpreter
Abbiamo sostenuto da soli una dura guerra	We have carried on by ourselves a hard war
Non è da dimenticare	It is not to be forgotten
È organizzato in modo da stimolare le energie individuali	It is organized in a manner to stimulate individual efforts
Non sembra cosa da vergognarsi	It does not seem to be a thing to be ashamed of
Lo guardano dall'alto in basso	They look down on him
Va da sé	It goes without saying
Non mi sento da tanto	I do not feel equal to so much
Non è da tutti	Not every one is capable of it
Dei francobolli da dieci centesimi	Some ten-centime postage stamps

c. Phrases with **di**, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Di corsa	At a run, on the run
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di giorno in giorno	From day to day
D' estate	In summer
Di gennaio	In January
Fuori d' uso	Out of date
Più lungo di due metri	Longer by two meters
Prēndere di mira	To take aim at
Di seconda mano	At second hand

La strada <b>di</b> Firenze	The road <b>to</b> Florence
Rideva <b>di</b> gioia	She laughed <b>for</b> joy
Fu punito <b>di</b> morte	He was punished <b>with</b> death
Che facesti <b>delle</b> forbici?	What did you do <b>with</b> the scissors?

**d.** Phrases with **in**, **per**, and **su**.

In capelli	Bare-headed
In casa	<b>At</b> home
In chiesa	<b>To</b> church
In mare	<b>At</b> sea
In punta di piedi	<b>On</b> tiptoe
Andare <b>in</b> Francia	To go <b>to</b> France
Tenere <b>in</b> poco conto	To consider <b>of</b> small importance
Per mare, <b>per</b> terra	<b>By</b> land, <b>by</b> sea
Per la posta	<b>By</b> mail
Per la strada	<b>In</b> the street, <b>on</b> the way
Lo sceglie <b>per</b> amico	He chooses him <b>as</b> a friend
Sui libri, sui giornali	<b>In</b> books, <b>in</b> the newspapers
Tre metri <b>su</b> sei	Three meters <b>by</b> six
<b>Su</b> misura	<b>To</b> order
Due <b>su</b> tre	Two <b>out of</b> three
La camera guarda <b>sul</b> davanti	The room is <b>on</b> the front

1. Notice that 'to' before the name of a person is **da** (or **a**); before that of a country, **in**; and before that of any other place, **a**.

Va **da** Maria, **in** Italia, **alla** posta      He goes **to** **Mary's**, to Italy, to the post-office

Va **a** Maria      He goes **to** **Mary**

2. 'From,' with a word referring to a place, is **di** when the limits of the place are more strictly conceived, otherwise **da**. If the article is present, **da** is required.

Esce <b>di</b> chiesa	He is coming <b>out of</b> church
Vengo <b>da</b> chiesa	I am coming <b>from</b> church
Viene <b>di</b> Firenze	He comes <b>from</b> Florence (from within the very walls)
Viene <b>da</b> Firenze	He comes <b>from</b> Florence, or its vicinity

Morì di fame, **dalla** fame                    He died **from** hunger  
Viene di Germania *or* **da** Germania        He comes from Germany

But

Viene **dall'** Alta Bretagna                    He comes from Upper Brittany  
(because the modifying word requires the article, and the article requires **da**).

## VOCABULARY

l' <b>ambizione</b> <i>f.</i> ambition	<b>addosso a</b> on the back of, on the top of
<b>Aristotile</b> Aristotle	<b>dentro di</b> within, inside of
il <b>duomo</b> cathedral	<b>dietro a</b> behind
la <b>gōndola</b> gondola	<b>di là da</b> beyond, on the other side of
il <b>lago</b> lake	<b>dinanzi a</b> before, in front of
l' <b>operaio</b> <i>m.</i> workman	<b>di qua da</b> on this side of
la <b>parte</b> side, share	<b>discosto a</b> away from
il <b>piattino da tazza</b> saucer	<b>fin da</b> from (time)
il <b>remo</b> oar	<b>fino a</b> up to, until
la <b>sarta</b> dressmaker	<b>in faccia a</b> opposite
la <b>scala a chiōcciola</b> winding stair	<b>in fondo a</b> at the back of, at the bottom of, at the end of
la <b>scala a piuoli</b> ladder	<b>in mezzo a</b> in the middle of
lo <b>spedale</b> hospital	<b>lontano da</b> far from
il <b>tè</b> tea	
l' <b>unità</b> <i>f.</i> union, unity	
<b>adriatico</b> Adriatic	<b>a capo chino</b> with bowed head
<b>drammatico</b> dramatic	<b>a contanti</b> in cash
<b>fino</b> fine	<b>a cōttimo</b> by the piece
<b>occidentale</b> western, west	<b>a giornata</b> by the day
<b>pieno</b> full	<b>a mano</b> by hand
<b>cadere, cadrò, caddi, caduto</b> fall	<b>al mare</b> by the sea
<b>rīdere, risi, riso</b> laugh	<b>di seconda mano</b> at second hand
<b>salire, salgo (salghiamo), salii</b> <i>or</i>	<b>in mare</b> at sea
<b>salsi, salito</b> climb, go up	<b>indarno</b> in vain

## EXERCISE

## I

1. Bring me a teacup, child, and two saucers. 2. They both work: she has a sewing-machine and works at home, and he works by the day at the baker's. 3. The Spaniard was coming behind us, with his head bowed. 4. See how fine this lace is! It is made by hand. 5. They are all against me. 6. Where is the cathedral? We were near it just now. Now we are two miles away from it. 7. Are we far from the walls? No, the walls are not far from here. 8. They will not be able to do without us. 9. At first the Italians dreamed in vain of independence and unity. 10. You will arrive after us. 11. His theme was the dramatic unities of Aristotle. 12. Winding stairs are easier to climb than ladders. 13. Here there is nothing to sell. 14. Sailboats, steamboats and rowboats were following the gondolas. 15. Who are the gentleman with the white hair and the lady with the blue eyes? 16. The soldiers were falling on top of us. 17. On which side of the lake do you live? 18. We live on the other side of the lake. 19. I prefer to live on this side of it. 20. Are you acquainted with the hospital for children? Our house is opposite it. 21. How long shall you stay? From the first of April to the eleventh of May. 22. The dress-maker is in the middle of the city, at the end of Via Roma. 23. By dint of money one can do much.

## II

1. They live outside the gates. I thought they lived inside. 2. As we were coming out of church, they passed us, coming from home. 3. We spent two months by the sea, near one of the Adriatic ports. 4. That is a thing to remember. 5. We were not able to have the criminal imprisoned. 6. I bought these books at second hand; I shall pay for them to-morrow in cash. 7. Wait for us inside the church. 8. Children obey their parents. 9. Come

to our house, all of you, at twenty minutes before five. 10. He spoke these terrible words before her and me. 11. Do not look at these pictures; they are ugly. 12. He will change his mind and renounce his ambitions. 13. Instead of sending it to us now, he will bring it to us when he comes to Florence. 14. Those workmen are working by the piece. 15. Look for us outside the cathedral, on the west side. 16. The lakes are full of water at this season. 17. The prisoner stood before him. 18. You cannot do without it. 19. They were laughing at us. 20. We were two weeks at sea. 21. I have received by mail some letters from home. 22. Some ladies are here who are asking for you. 23. You cannot give it up. 24. We always spend a month by the sea in summer.

## DIALOGO

## DALLA MODISTA

— Vuol accompagnarmi dalla modista?

— Volentieri. Dove sta?

— Vicino, a due passi. Nella prima via a destra, numero 20.

— Già vedo il suo cartello: *Sorelle Chiarini. Cappelli da Signore*. Entriamo.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che cosa mi comandano?

— Io non voglio niente, ma questa signora desidera un cappello da viaggio. Non è pratica di Firenze e le ho detto che Lei la servirà bene.

— Grazie, Signora. Proverò di meritare la Sua raccomandazione.

— Ci faccia vedere dei figurini.

— Siamo a mezza stagione. Lo desidera di paglia o di feltro?

— Di feltro, di forma piccola.

— Le mostrerò prima dei fondini. Eccone uno. Proviamolo.

— Non mi piace. La tesa è troppo larga e il capino troppo tondo. Mi stringe alla fronte, mi darà mal di testa.



— Questo Le starebbe bene, mi pare.

— Mi sta bene, davvero. Solo sarebbe un po' sfacciato per il colore. Per il viaggio ci vuole qualcosa di più modesto.

— Ecco la stessa forma di un colore più scuro.

— Benissimo. E la guarnizione?

— Per guarnizione, Signora, io direi un fiocco di nastro di seta nera, ovvero una piccola fantasia. Con questa forma non sta bene la piuma.

— Preferisco il fiocco. Quando sarà finito?

— Per domani.

— Vabbene. Badi di non mancare, io parto alle sette della mattina seguente.

— Non abbia paura. L'avrà senza fallo. A rivederla, Signora.

## LESSON XXXVIII

### AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

**228. Augmentatives and Diminutives.** Terminations modifying the meaning of nouns and adjectives are very common in Italian, and with nouns may take the place of the corresponding adjective at the will of the speaker, unless the idea of size is to be emphasized. These terminations are augmentative or diminutive, caressing or disparaging, most diminutives combining with the idea of small size that of affection or disparagement.

**a.** The most important augmentatives are *-one*, *-a*, *-otto*, and *-occio*.

1. *-One* means 'very large,' and it may be masculine even when added to a feminine noun; but it has a feminine form in adjectives,

abstract nouns, and those describing persons as to age or family relationship.

<b>Una donna</b> ; un donnone ( <i>burl.</i> )	A woman; an enormous woman
Un uomo; un omone	A man; a large man
<b>Una strada</b> ; uno stradone	A road; a highway
Una figliuola; una figliuola	A little daughter; a tall, or overgrown, little daughter
Una vecchia; una vecchiona	An old woman; a very tall old woman

2. **-Otto, -occio**, mean 'rather large' with nouns, and with adjectives modify the meaning like 'rather.' With names of animals, **-otto** is a diminutive meaning the young of the species.

Una casa; un casotto	A house; a somewhat large house
Grasso; grassotto <i>or</i> grassoccio	Fat; plump
La tigre; il tigrotto	The tiger; the tiger's cub

**b.** The most important diminutives are **-ino** (**-cino, -icino, -olino**), meaning diminutiveness, charm, and affection; **-etto** and **-ello** (**-cello, -erello, -icello**), implying compassion or indulgence in addition to the idea of small size; **-uccio, -uzzo, -uzzolo, -uolo** (**-olo**), which imply endearment when applied to persons and disparagement when applied to things; and **-accio, -astro, and -azzo**, which are terms of unqualified dislike and disparagement.

La mano; la manina	The hand; the pretty little hand
La povera; la poverina	The poor woman; the poor dear woman, the poor thing
La casa; la casuccia	The house; the poor little house
La viola; il violino	The viol; the violin
Il figlio; il figliuolo	The son; the young son
Cantare; cantarellare	To sing; to warble
Bello; bellino	Beautiful; pretty
Caro; carino	Dear; charming
Un mēdico; un medicastro	A doctor; a poor, unskillful doctor

Il cavallo ; il cavallaccio	The horse ; the bad-tempered, wretched horse
L' āsino ; l' asinēllo	The donkey ; the small, or young, donkey

**229. Rules of Formation.** These terminations cannot be used indiscriminately, but must be chosen in accordance with precedent and euphony. The ear is a sufficient guide in this matter to the Italian, but the foreigner must use great discretion and will find it safest to confine himself to forms he has met with.

**a.** If the normal ending of a word chance to be one of these terminations, then not that one but some other must be chosen as diminutive or augmentative.

Il ruscello ; il ruscellēto	The brook ; the small brook
L' uccello ; l' uccellino	The bird ; the young bird
La cugina ; la cuginētta	The cousin ; the attractive little cousin

**b.** If the word end in **-one**, the terminations **-one**, **-ino**, and **-ello** become respectively **-cione**, **-cino**, and **-cello**.

Il bastone ; il bastoncione	The stick ; the great stick
Il padrone ; il padroncino	The master ; the young master
Il violone ; il violoncello	The bass viol ; the violoncello

**c.** These terminations may be combined.

Un pochino, un pochettino	A little bit
Un figliuolo ; un figliolino	A little son ; a dear little son

**d.** The augmentative or diminutive sometimes loses its character of termination, and the modification becomes a permanent new word.

L' acqua ; l' acquerello	Water ; the water-color
La suora ; la sorella	The nun ; the sister
Il frate ; il fratello	The friar ; the brother
Il cavallo ; il cavalletto	The horse ; the saw-horse or easel

## VOCABULARY

il bastone	cane, stick	grasso	fat
il cane	dog	ignorante	ignorant
la facoltà	division of university	sapiente	wise, sapient
il salotto	sitting-room	annoverare	enumerate, count
la scala	stairs	porgere, porsi, porto	hold out
lo scalino	step of stair	presumere, presunsi, presunto	assume
Tommaso	Thomas	oramai	now, in view of this
l' università	f. university	in salvo	in safety

## EXERCISE

## I

1. In Italia lo studio della medicina dura sei anni; a New York, tre o, al più, quattro. 2. Quali sapientoni di medici devono uscire dalle università americane! 3. Ma in Italia i due primi anni della Facoltà medica sono esclusivamente dedicati allo studio delle scienze naturali. 4. Nelle università americane, invece, si presume che il giovane che vuole entrare in una Facoltà di medicina abbia già di queste materie quelle nozioni che oramai fanno quasi parte della cultura generale. 5. In Italia non trovate una cittaduzza di diecimila abitanti che non abbia l'onore di annoverare entro le sue mura qualche dozzina di avvocantucci e di medicastri. 6. La famiglia reale ha dovuto fuggire, per mettere in salvo i principini. 7. Un grand' artista fiorentino, il quale morì giovane, è conosciuto ai pōsteri sotto il nome di Masaccio, cioè, Cattivo Tommaso! 8. Non si può confrontare la mia casuccia con quel palazzone! 9. Come sta, amico mio? Benone! 10. I canini giuocano coi gattini. 11. Ho comprato qualche cosuccia per la bambina.

## II

1. As one enters the hall, there is a stairway which leads upstairs to the drawing-room, with a sitting-room next it. 2. The steps of the stairs are rather high. 3. The young man has a cane, and

his little brother has a little cane. 4. Her father is fat, and she is already plump. 5. We shall take the big dog with us, and leave the puppies at home. 6. Unskillful poets are not to be praised. 7. The little peasant boy carries a great stick. 8. These horrid big books are heavy to carry. 9. She has small hands. 10. My little son, you will one day be a big man like me. 11. We live near the great gate. 12. The baby put out its little hands to us. 13. In the Italian universities are found many students.

## DIALOGO

## SI FANNO LE COMPRE

— Vuol venire con me fino al centro? Ho tante commissioni da fare.

— Volentieri.

— Strada facendo, ci fermeremo dal gioielliere, dove ho lasciato il mio orologio per farlo riparare. Non va bene. Un giorno va troppo avanti, un altro giorno troppo indietro. Non va mai giusto. In questo momento fa cinque minuti il giorno.

— Anch' io voglio andarci. Devo lasciare il mio fermaglio da raccomandare. Non si chiude bene, e la pietra non è incassata a dovere.

— Poi andremo dal merciaio, dove ho bisogno di comprare tante cosine. Prima vorrei un metro di seta uguale a questo campione. Poi occorre tutta la roba da cucire, per un astuccio da viaggio che voglio preparare per un' amica. Comprerò un paio di forbicini, degli aghi di diverse grossezze, dei rocchetti di cotone e di seta, un ditale, e degli spilli e dei ganci. È tanto comodo viaggiando di poter trovare tutto l' occorrente in caso di bisogno.

— Al ritorno passiamo dal cartolaio, per prendere della carta protocollo della quale mi servo per copiare.

— Io ho bisogno dell' inchiostro per la penna a serbatoio, della carta da lettere, e della cartasuga.



— La carta come la compra? Sciolta o in scatola?

— Sempre sciolta. Non mi piace quella in scatola; ce ne danno meno, e non è sempre di buon gusto. Mi occorre anche un pacchetto di buste assortite colla carta, e non ci sarà altro da fare.

## LESSON XXXIX

### CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS

**230. Conjunctions.** The conjunctions, like the prepositions, are frequently compound. The following lists are offered for ready reference in translation. The Italian-English list is much the longer, the English-Italian being confined to the more common conjunctions which the student will find useful. Those which require the subjunctive are indicated.

#### a. List of Conjunctions, English-Italian.

after *dopo chę*

also *anche, pure*

although *benchę, sebbęne (w. subj.)*

and *e*

as, since *poichę, siccome*

as (*after tanto*) *quanto*; (*after tale*) *quale*; (*after cosi*) *come*

as if *come se, quasi, quasi chę (w. subj.)*

as fast as *via via chę*

as long as *tanto chę, fintantochę*

as well as *come anco*

because *perchę, perciocchę*

before *avanti chę, prima chę (w. subj.)*

both . . . and *e . . . e*

but *ma*; but if *chę se*

but rather, but indeed *bensi*

either . . . or *o . . . o*

even if *anche se; ancorchę, quando anche (w. subj.)*

except that **se non chę**, **tranne chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 for **chę**, **poichę**  
 granting that **dato chę**, **sempre chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 however, nevertheless **perđ**, **pure**, **tuttavía**  
 however (*before adj. or adv.*) **per quanto**, **quantunque** (*w. subj.*)  
 if **se**  
 if only **solo chę**, **purchę** (*w. subj.*)  
 in case **caso mai**, **nel caso chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 in order that **acciocchę**, **affinchę**, **perchę** (*w. subj.*)  
 in spite of the fact that **malgrado chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 much less **non chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 neither . . . nor **nę . . . nę**  
 nevertheless **perđ**, **tuttavía**, **nondimęno**, **ciđ non ostante**  
 nor . . . either **nemmeno**, **neppure**  
 nor even **neanche**, **neppure**  
 not to say . . . but even **non chę . . . ma**  
 notwithstanding that **nonostante chę**, **malgrado chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 on condition that **a patto chę**, **a condizione chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 or **o**  
 or else **oppure**, **ossia** (*equivalence*), **ovvero** (*difference*)  
 provided that **purchę** (*w. subj.*)  
 rather than **piuttđsto chę**  
 since (*causal*) **poichę**, **siccome**, **giacchę**  
 since (*temporal*) **dacchę**  
 so, so then **dunque**  
 so that, in order that **perchę**, **affinchę**, **acciocchę** (*w. subj.*)  
 so that (*result*) **di modo chę**, **sicchę**  
 supposing that **posto chę**, **supposto chę** (*w. subj.*)  
 than **chę**, **chę non**, **di quel chę** (*cf. 115, b, c, d*)  
 that **chę**  
 that, in order that **perchę** (*w. subj.*)  
 that is **cioę**  
 the more as, the more that **tanto piđ chę**  
 then, accordingly **dunque**  
 therefore **perciđ**, **perđ**, **dunque**, **adunque**  
 though *see* although  
 too **anche**, **pure**  
 unless **senza chę**, **a meno chę non** (*w. subj.*)

until *finchè non*  
 when *quando*  
 whence *donde*  
 where *dove, là dove, ove*  
 whereas *considerando che*  
 wherefore *onde (w. subj.), per lo che*  
 wherever *dovunque (w. subj.)*  
 whether *se, sia, sia che*  
 while *mentre, mentre che*  
 yet *nondimeno, tuttavia, però, pure, nulladimeno*

*b.* List of Conjunctions, Italian-English.

*acciò, acciocchè (w. subj.)* so that, in order that  
*a condizione che (w. subj.)* on condition that  
*adunque* then, so then  
*affinchè (w. subj.)* in order that  
*a mano a mano che* proportionately as, as fast as  
*a meno che non (w. subj.)* unless  
*anche* also  
*anche se* even if  
*ancora* yet, still, again  
*ancorchè (w. subj.)* even if, although  
*anzi che* rather than  
*a patto che (w. subj.)* on condition that  
*avanti che (w. subj.)* before  
*avvegna che (w. subj.)* although  
*benchè (w. subj.)* although  
*bensi* but rather, nay indeed  
*caso, caso mai (w. subj.)* in case  
*che* that  
*che, che non* than  
*chè* for  
*ciò* that is  
*ciò non ostante* notwithstanding  
*come* as, as it were  
*come anco* as well as  
*come se (w. subj.)* as if  
*conciossiachè* although

considerando che whereas  
 con questo che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that  
 così as (*after come*)  
 dacchè since (*temporal*)  
 dato che (*w. subj.*) granting that  
 di modo che so that (*result*)  
 d'onde whence  
 dopo che after  
 dovunque (*w. subj.*) wherever  
 dunque then, so then  
 e and  
 e . . . e both . . . and  
 eccetto che (*w. subj.*) unless  
 finchè as long as  
 finchè non until  
 fintantochè as long as  
 fuorchè (*w. subj.*) except that  
 giacchè since (*causal*)  
 in guisa che so as to  
 là dove where  
 làonde wherefore  
 ma but  
 malgrado che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that  
 mentre, mentre che while  
 nè nor  
 nè . . . nè neither . . . nor  
 nel caso che (*w. subj.*) in case  
 nemmeno nor, nor . . . either  
 neppure nor, nor . . . either  
 non che (*w. subj.*) much less  
 non che . . . ma not to say . . . but even  
 nondimeno, non perciò, nulladimeno nevertheless  
 non ostante che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that  
 non solo . . . ma not only . . . but  
 o or  
 o . . . o either . . . or  
 onde (*w. subj.*) wherefore, because of which, so as to  
 oppure, ossia, ovvero or else

perchè because; (*w. subj.*) in order that  
perciò therefore  
perciocchè because  
per lo chè wherefore, because of which  
però however  
perocchè because  
per quanto (*w. subj.*) however (*before adj.*)  
piuttosto chè rather than  
poichè since (*causal*)  
pòscia chè after  
pòsto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that  
prima chè (*w. subj.*) before  
purchè (*w. subj.*) provided that  
pure however, also  
quale as (*after tale*)  
qualora (*w. subj.*) whenever, as often as  
quando when  
quando anche (*w. subj.*) even if  
quanto as (*after tanto*)  
quantunque (*w. subj.*) whenever  
quaşi, quaşi chè (*w. subj.*) as if  
se if  
sebbene (*w. subj.*) although  
secondochè according as  
semprechè (*w. subj.*) granting that  
se non chè except that  
senza chè (*w. subj.*) unless  
se pure (*w. subj.*) if only  
sia, sia chè whether  
sicchè so that (*result*)  
siccome as, since  
sòlo chè (*w. subj.*) if only  
supposto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that  
tanto chè as long as  
tanto più chè the more that  
tranne chè (*w. subj.*) except that  
tuttavìa however, anyway  
via via chè as fast as



1. Certain conjunctions, as **anche se**, **di modo che**, etc., which are usually followed by the indicative, are sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

2. Questions and exclamations are introduced sometimes, for greater vivacity, by **o** or **che**, used pleonastically.

Dimmi, Santino, <b>che</b> ti piace più la frutta fresca o quella secca?	Tell me, Santino, do you like fresh fruit better, or dried?
<b>O</b> provatevi anche voi! È tanto facile	Try it yourself! It is very easy
<b>O</b> credete chi ci fosse?	Now who do you think was there?

3. A clause is introduced sometimes by **sì che**, as a strengthening or contrasting form.

E <b>sì che</b> di amministrazioni libere agli uomini di stato italiani non mancavano esempi!	And yet Italian statesmen did not lack for examples of liberal administration!
Se, per esempio, il giovane leg- gesse un' orazione di Cicerone, alcune odi di Orazio, un libro di Virgilio . . . allora <b>sì che</b> egli avrebbe un' idea, tutt' altro che completa, ma almeno rispettabile, della letteratura classica	If, for example, the youth should read a speech of Cicero, a few odes of Horace, a book of Vir- gil . . . then he would indeed have an idea, far from complete, but at least tolerable, of classic literature

4. The conjunction **che** is often used alone in familiar speech to mean 'so that,' 'such that.'

Cantavano <b>ch'</b> era un piacere	They sang so that it was a delight (to listen)
Parlava italiano <b>ch'</b> era un orrore	He spoke Italian horribly

**231. Interjections.** The following are the more frequent interjections in Italian:

**a.** Expressing joy, admiration, enthusiasm, and the like:

Bene!	Well! Good!
Bravo! Brava!	Well done! Good for him (or her)!

Oh giøia!	What joy! How delightful!
Viva! Evviva!	Hurrah!
Beato te!	Happy you!

**b. Grief, pain, compassion, anger, and the like :**

Ahi! Ohi! Deh! Ahimè! Ohimè!	Alas!
Guai!	Woe! Beware!
Peccato! Che peccato!	What a pity! What a shame!
Pōvero a me!	Poor me
Oh, poverino!	Oh, the poor thing!
Pietà!	Mercy!
Dio ci aiuti!	Heaven help us!
Oibò! Vergogna!	Shame!
Maledetto! Diāvolo!	Zounds! The deuce!

**c. Surprise :**

Diāmine! Per bacco!	Is it possible! Of course!
Oh bella! Curiōso!	How strange!
Mah! Ma che!	But —! How absurd!
Çome mai!	How in the world? How can it possibly be?

**d. Encouragement :**

Paziēza!	Have patience! Resignation!
Speriamo!	Let us hope so!
Coraggio! Ānimo!	Courage!
Orsù!	Come now!
Su!	Here! Come!

**e. Miscellaneous :**

Ecco!	There! Exactly!
Via!	Come, come! Oh, come now!
Ben venuto! Ben venuta!	Welcome!
Largo!	Make way!
Magari!	Rather! Would to God!
Zitto!	Hush!
Chi lo sa!	Who knows!
Piano!	Softly! Gently!

Basta!	Enough!
Al ladro!	Stop thief!
All' armi!	To arms!
Abbasso la tirānnide!	Down with tyranny!
Viva l' Italia!	Long live Italy!

## VOCABULARY

l' ālbero <i>m.</i> tree, mast	a mēno chę unless
la bręccia breach	a patto chę on condition that
la cima summit	a vicęnda in turn; mutually
la ferita wound	caşo mai in case
la finzione pretense	đacchę since ( <i>time</i> )
Livorno Leghorn	in cima a on the top of
il marinaio sailor	malgrado chę notwithstanding that
la pōlvēre powder	neppure not even
il rīschio risk	nondimęno nevertheless
il sepolcřeto cemetery	piuttostō chę rather than
il sogno dream	poichę since ( <i>cause</i> )
lo strapazzo abuse, neglect	prima chę before
avverare fulfill	purchę provided that
deplorare regret	siccome as
gridare shout	tranne chę except that
redimere, redęnsi, redęnto redeem	irredęnto unredeemed
saltare in aria be blown up	

## EXERCISE

## I

## ULTIMI ANNI DELLA GUERRA

Nel 1866, alla battaglia navale di Lissa, Alfredo Cappellini livornese, un eręe da paragonarsi ai pių grandi dell' antichità, piuttosto che veder cadere nelle mani dei nemici la sua nave, 'Palestro', dette fuoco alle polveri e saltò in aria con tutti i suoi marinai, i quali morirono gridando dalle cime degli alberi: *Viva l' Italia!*

A Villa Gloria cade Enrico Cairoli, e vi resta malamente ferito Giovanni Cairoli, il quale morì poi, nel 1869. Nomi di una famiglia

sacra alla patria, di una famiglia che per questa patria dette la vita di quattro sopra cinque che erano i suoi figli generosi. Ernesto muore combattendo a Varese; Luigi muore a Napoli per gli strapazzi della guerra del 1860; Benedetto solo, carico di ferite, sopravvive dopo tanti rischi a conforto della madre. Onore alla memoria di Adelaide Cairoli, di questa fortissima donna, che dorme ora nel sepolcreto di Gropello, in mezzo a quei figli, che, educati da lei, seppero dare tanta gloria al loro nome e all' Italia.

Oggi, al fine, dopo tante fatiche, tanti sacrifici, e tanti martirî, eccoci arrivati alla nostra capitale, ecco finalmente avverato il sogno di tanti secoli! Ci saremmo dovuti entrare senza le armi, ma le armi ci vollero. Il 20 settembre, 1870, i cannoni dell' esercito italiano tuonavano dinanzi alle mura di Porta Pia. Breve fu la finzione di resistenza da parte dei soldati che la difendevano, e una larga breccia aprì il passo nella città eterna al trionfo dell' Italia redenta.

Viva Roma capitale d' Italia! Ci siamo e ci resteremo!

## II

1. The sailors, on top of the masts, were awaiting death. 2. Alfred Cappellini of Leghorn preferred to set fire to the powder and be blown up, rather than let his ship be taken. 3. Since I have been in Italy, the great war has begun. 4. Since they are to arrive so soon, let us not go away before they come. 5. Of the sailors of the ship ' Palestro ' not one was left [remained] alive. 6. They were all blown up. 7. Benedetto Cairoli saw his four brothers die in the war. 8. Only he survived them. 9. Unless many men know how to die for their country, Italy can never be united. 10. The Italian soldiers may say: Italy's dream of so many centuries could not have been fulfilled without us. 11. Nevertheless, it is to be regretted that arms were necessary. 12. Enrico was glad to die fighting, provided that Italy might be free and united. 13. The soldiers opened several breaches in the walls of the city. 14. Few

cities have survived longer than [more than] Rome. 15. She has survived in spite of governments having been changed and wars having been fought [in spite of (the fact) that, notwithstanding that, governments have been, etc.]. 16. Italian soldiers and sailors were glad to fight to capture Rome, on condition that their sons should know how to defend it. 17. For many years this country which you see was called by the Italians "Unredeemed Italy." 18. Here we are arrived in that part of Italy of which we have so often thought. 19. The physicians ought to have visited the soldiers in the hospital before their wounds became so dangerous. 20. Although they were covered with wounds, the soldiers opened the way into the Eternal City, crying, "Long live Italy!"



## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS (CF. 96, 120, 130)

accēndere, <i>light, kindle</i>	acceſi	acceſo
acclūdere, <i>inclose</i>	accluſi	accluſo
accōrgersi, <i>be aware</i>	mi accōrſi	accōrtōſi
addurre, <i>produce, convey</i>	adduco, adducēdo	addōtto
	adduſſi, addurrō	
affliggere, <i>afflict</i>	affliſſi	afflitto
ālgere, <i>be cold</i>	alſi	<i>Defective. Rare</i>
allūdere, <i>allude</i>	alluſi	alluſo
andare, <i>go</i>	<i>Ind. pres. vō or vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno. Fut. anderō, andrō. Past fut. anderēi or andrēi. Subj. vada etc., andiamo, andiate, vādano. Imp. va', andate</i>	
annēttre, <i>combine</i>	<i>Past abs. annettei or annēſſi, annettē or annēſſe, etc. Past part. annēſſo</i>	
apparire, <i>appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres. apparisco or appaio, apparisci or appari, apparisce or appare; (appariamo), apparite, appariscono or appāiono. Past abs. apparii, apparvi, apparsi, etc. Subj. apparisca or appaia. Past part. apparito or apparso</i>	
appartenere, <i>belong</i>	<i>See tenere</i>	
appēndere, <i>hang</i>	appēſi	appēso
applaudire (applaudere, <i>poetical</i> ), <i>applaud</i>	applaudo, applaudisco	
aprire, <i>open</i>	<i>Pres. ind. apro. Past abs. apēſi or aprii. Past part. aperto</i>	
ārdere, <i>burn</i>	arſi	arso
ardire, <i>be bold</i>	<i>Defective in parts which are identical with ardere</i>	
arrēndere, <i>comply</i>	<i>See rendere</i>	
arrōgere, <i>add</i>	arrōſi	arrōſo or arrōto. <i>Defective. Rare</i>
ascōndere, <i>hide</i>	<i>See nascondere</i>	
aspērgere, <i>scatter, sprinkle</i>	aspēſi	aspēſo

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

assalire, <i>assail</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> assalgo or assalisco, assali or assalisci, etc., assaliamo or assalghiamo, assalite, assālgono or assalisco, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> assalii or assalsi. <i>Subj.</i> assalga or assalisca. <i>Past part.</i> assalito
assidersi, <i>besiege</i>	mi assiși assișo
assistere, <i>assist</i>	assistito
assolvere, <i>absolve</i>	assolvei, assolveŕti or assolsi, assoluto or assolto
assorbire, <i>absorb</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> assorbisco or assorbo etc. <i>Subj.</i> assorbisca or assorba etc. <i>Past part.</i> assorbito or assorto
assumere, <i>assume</i>	assunsi assunto
avere, <i>have</i>	See 120
avvertire, <i>warn</i>	avverto, avvertisco, etc.
benedire, <i>bless</i>	<i>Past descr.</i> benedicęvo or benedivo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> benedissi or benedii. <i>Imp.</i> benedici etc. <i>Past part.</i> benedętto
bęvere or bere, <i>drink</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> bęvo or bęo, bęvi or bęi, bęve or bęe, bęvono or bęono. <i>Past abs.</i> bęvvi or bęvętti. <i>Fut.</i> bęverę or bęrrę
bollire, <i>boil</i>	<i>Pres. ind.</i> bollo etc.
cadere, <i>fall</i>	caddi, caduto <i>Fut.</i> cadrę
calere, <i>matter</i>	3 sg. (mi) cale, <i>poet.</i> caglia, <i>poet.</i> calse, <i>poet.</i> caluto. <i>Defective. Impersonal</i>
capire, <i>be contained in</i>	3 pers. cape, cāpono
cędere, <i>yield</i>	cęssi ( <i>poet.</i> ) <i>Regular in prose</i>
chiędere, <i>ask</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> 1 sg. chiędo or chięggo, 3 pl. chiędono, chięggono. <i>Past abs.</i> chięsi. <i>Subj.</i> chięda or chięgga, chiediamo, chiędano or chięggano. <i>Past part.</i> chięsto
chiudere, <i>close</i>	chiusi chiuso
cingere, <i>gird</i>	cinsi cinto
circoncidere	See decidere
cogliere or cęrre, <i>pluck</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cęlgo, cęgli, cęglie, cogliamo or colghiamo, coglięte, cęlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> cęlsi. <i>Fut.</i> coglierę or corrę. <i>Imp.</i> cęgli. <i>Subj.</i> cęlga etc., cogliamo or colghiamo, cęlgano. <i>Past part.</i> cęlto cęlto or culto. <i>Rare</i>
cęlere, <i>revere</i>	
comparire, <i>appear</i>	See apparire

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

compire <i>or</i> cōmpiere, <i>fulfill</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> compisco <i>or</i> cōmpio, compisci <i>or</i> cōmpi, <i>etc. Imp.</i> compisci <i>or</i> cōmpi. <i>Subj.</i> compisca <i>or</i> cōmpia <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> compissi <i>or</i> compiessi <i>etc.</i> <i>Pres. part.</i> compiendo; <i>past</i> compito <i>or</i> compiuto
comprimere, <i>compress</i> concedere, <i>concede</i>	compreſsi concedei, concedetti <i>or</i> concessi, conceduto <i>or</i> concesso
concepire, <i>conceive</i>	(concepe, concepa, concepto, <i>poetic forms</i> )
concludere, <i>conclude</i>	<i>See</i> accludere
condurre, <i>conduct</i>	<i>See</i> addurre
connettere, <i>connect</i>	<i>See</i> annettere
conoscere, <i>be acquainted</i>	conobbi conosciuto
conquidere, <i>conquer</i>	conquisi conquisto
consistere, <i>consist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere
consumare, consumere, <i>consume, finish</i>	<i>Past abs.</i> consumai <i>or</i> consunsi, consumò <i>or</i> con- sunse, consumarono <i>or</i> consunsero. <i>Past part.</i> consumato <i>or</i> consunto
contēssere, <i>entwine</i>	<i>Part.</i> contesto
contundere, <i>bruise</i>	contuſi contuſo
convertire, <i>convert</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> converto <i>or</i> convertisco. <i>Past abs.</i> con- vertii <i>or</i> converſi. <i>Past part.</i> convertito, converſo
corrēggere, <i>correct</i>	<i>See</i> reggere
cōrrere, <i>run</i>	corſi corſo. <i>Like</i> correre <i>are</i> accorrere, decorrere, percorrere, <i>etc.</i>
cospērgere, <i>sprinkle</i>	<i>See</i> aspergere
costringere, <i>compel</i>	<i>See</i> stringere
costruire, <i>construct</i>	costruui <i>or</i> costrussi costruito <i>or</i> costrutto
crēscere, <i>grow</i>	crebbi cresciuto
cucire, <i>sew</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cucio, cūciono. <i>Subj.</i> cucia <i>etc.</i>
cuocere, <i>cook</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cuocio, cuoci, cuoce, cuōciono. <i>Past abs.</i> cōssi. <i>Fut.</i> cocerò. <i>Imp.</i> cuoci. <i>Subj.</i> cuocia <i>Past part.</i> cotto
dare, <i>give</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> do, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno. <i>Past</i> <i>descr.</i> davo, davi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> detti <i>or</i> diēdi, deſti, deſte <i>or</i> diēde, demmo, deſte, deſterro <i>or</i> diēdero. <i>Fut.</i> darò. <i>Imp.</i> da', date. <i>Pres. subj.</i> dia <i>etc.</i> , diamo, diate, diano; <i>past</i> deſſi. <i>Pres.</i> <i>part.</i> dando; <i>past</i> dato
decidere, <i>decide</i>	deciſi deciſo

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

delūdere, <i>delude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
deprīmere, <i>depress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
desūmere, <i>infer</i>	<i>See</i> assumere	
difēndere, <i>defend</i>	difēsi	difeso
dipēndere, <i>depend</i>	dipēsi	dipeso
dipīngere, <i>paint</i>	dipinsi	dipinto
dire, ( <i>dīcere</i> ), <i>say</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dico, dici <i>or</i> di', dice, diciamo, dite, dicono. <i>Past descr.</i> dicevo <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> dissi. <i>Fut.</i> dirò. <i>Imp.</i> di', dite. <i>Subj. pres.</i> dica <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> dicessi <i>etc.</i> <i>Part. pres.</i> dicendo, dicente; <i>past detto.</i> <i>Compounds of dire have dici in 2 sg. imp.</i>	
dirīgere, <i>direct</i>	dirēssi	dirētto
discōrrere, <i>converse</i>	<i>See</i> correre	
discūtere, <i>discuss</i>	discussi	discusso
dissōlvere, <i>dissolve</i>	dissolvēi <i>or</i> dissōlsi	dissoluto
dissuadere, <i>dissuade</i>	<i>See</i> persuadere	
distīngere, <i>distinguish</i>	distinsi	distinto
divertire, <i>divert</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> diverto <i>etc.</i> ; "turn aside," regular	
dividere, <i>divide</i>	diviși	divișo
dolere, <i>grieve, pain</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dolgo, duqli, duqle, dolghiamo <i>or</i> dolghiamo, dolēte, dōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> dolsi. <i>Fut.</i> dorrò. <i>Subj.</i> dōlga. <i>Past part.</i> doluto	
dormire, <i>sleep</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dormo. <i>Subj.</i> dorma. <i>Imp.</i> dormi. <i>Part. pres.</i> dormēte <i>or</i> dormiēte	
dovere, <i>owe</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> devo <i>or</i> dēbbo ( <i>poet.</i> dēggio); dēvi <i>or</i> dēi; dēve, dēbbe ( <i>rare</i> ), <i>or</i> dē; dobbiamo; dovete; dēvonō <i>or</i> dēbbono ( <i>poet.</i> dēggiono), <i>etc.</i> <i>Fut.</i> dovrò. <i>Subj.</i> dēva <i>or</i> dēbba	
elīdere, <i>elide</i>	eliși <i>or</i> elidēi	elișo
elūdere, <i>elude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
emērgere, <i>emerge</i>	emērsi	emērso
empire <i>or</i> ĩmpiere, <i>fill</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ĩmpio, ĩmpi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> ĩmpii, ĩmpiēi, ĩmpiētti; ĩmpisti, ĩmpiēsti, <i>etc.</i> <i>Fut.</i> ĩmpirò. <i>Imp.</i> ĩmpi, ĩmpite. <i>Subj.</i> ĩmpia <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> ĩmpissi, ĩmpiēssi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Part. pres.</i> ĩmpiēndo; <i>past</i> ĩmpito <i>or</i> ĩmpiuto.	
ērgere, <i>erect</i>	ērsi	( <i>adj.</i> ērto). <i>Rare in prose</i>
erīgere, <i>erect</i>	<i>See</i> dirīgere	

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

esclūdere, <i>exclude</i>	See accludere	
eşigere, <i>exact</i>	eşigei	eşatto
eşimere, <i>exempt</i>	eşimeî (Past abs. and past part. from eşentare.)	
eşistere, <i>exist</i>	See assistere	
espëllere, <i>expel</i>	espulsi	espulso
esplōdere, <i>explode</i>	esplōşi	esplōşo
esprimere, <i>express</i>	See comprimere	
ēssere, <i>be</i>	See 96	
estinguere, <i>extinguish</i>	See distinguere	
evādere, <i>escape</i>	See invadere	
fare, (fācere), <i>do, make</i>	Ind. pres. fō or faccio, fai, fa (poet. face), facciamo, fate, fanno. Past descr. facevo etc. Past abs. feçi. Fut. farō. Imp. fa', fate. Subj. faccia etc. Part. pres. facēte, facendo; past fatto	
fedire (defective and poetical for ferire), <i>strike</i>	Ind. pres. fiēdo, fiēdi, fiēde, fiēdono. Subj. fiēda, fiēdano	
fēndere, <i>split</i>	fendei or fēssi	fenduto or fēso
fērvere, <i>glow</i>	Defective. Lacks compound tenses and past part.	
fīggere, <i>fix</i>	fissi	fisso or fitto
fīngere, <i>pretend</i>	finsi	finto
flēttere, <i>bend</i>		flēso. Defective. Poetical
fōndere, <i>melt</i>	fuşi	fuşo
frāngere, <i>break</i>	fransi	franto
frīggere, <i>fry</i>	frissi	fritto
fuggire, <i>flee</i>	Ind. pres. fuggo, fuggi, fugge, etc. Imp. fuggi. Subj. fugga etc.	
genuflēttare, <i>kneel</i>	genufleşsi	genufleşso Rare
giacere, <i>lie</i>	Ind. pres. giaccio, giaci, giace, giacciamo or giacciamo, giacete, giācciono. Past abs. giacqui. Subj. giaccia etc.	
giocare, <i>play</i>	Ind. pres. giuoco, giuochi, etc. See rotare.	
gire, <i>turn</i>	Ind. pres. and Imp. 2 pl. gite. Past descr. givo etc. Past abs. gisti, gimmo, girono. Fut. girō (rare). Past part. gito Defective	
giūngere, <i>arrive</i>	giunsi	giunto
godere, <i>enjoy</i>	Fut. goderō or godrō	
illūdere, <i>illude</i>	See alludere	
immērgere, <i>immerse</i>	See emergere	



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

imprimere, <i>print</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
incidere, <i>engrave</i>	incişi	incişo
includere, <i>include</i>	<i>See</i> accludere	
incorrere, <i>incur</i>	<i>See</i> correre	
incutere, <i>instil</i>	incuţei or incussi	incusso
indulgere	indulsi	indulto <i>Poetical. Rare</i>
indurre, <i>induce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre	
infocare, <i>inflamm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> infuço, infuçi, etc. <i>See</i> rotare.	
inghiottire, <i>swallow</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> inghiottisco or inghiotto. <i>Subj.</i> inghiottisca or inghiotta etc. <i>Imp.</i> inghiottisci or inghiotti	
insistere, <i>insist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
intessere, <i>interweave</i>		intessuto or intesto
intridere, <i>knead</i>	intrişi	intrişo
intrudere, <i>intrude</i>	intruşi	intruşo
invadere, <i>invade</i>	invaşi	invaşo
ire, <i>go</i>	<i>Pres. ind. ite. Past descr.</i> ivo, ivi, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> isti, iste, irono. <i>Past part.</i> ito. <i>Poet. Defective</i>	
istruire, <i>instruct</i>	<i>See</i> costruire	
lędere, <i>offend</i>	leşi ( <i>rare</i> )	leşo
lęggere, <i>read</i>	leşsi	leşto
licere or lęcere, <i>allow</i>	<i>Past part.</i> lęcito or lícito <i>Impersonal. Defective</i>	
lúcere, <i>shine</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> luci, luce, lūcono. <i>Past descr.</i> lucęvo, lucęvano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> luca, lūcano; <i>past</i> lucessi etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> lucęndo ( <i>adj.</i> luçente). <i>Defective</i>	
lūdere, <i>play</i>	luşi	luşo <i>Rare</i>
maledire, <i>curse</i>	<i>See</i> benedire	
mantere, <i>maintain</i>	<i>See</i> tenere	
mentire, <i>lie, deceive</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> męnto, mentisco. <i>Subj.</i> męnta, mentisca. <i>Imp.</i> męnti etc.	
męrgere, <i>plunge</i>	męrsi	męrso
męscere, <i>mix</i>		misto or mesciuto
męttre, <i>put</i>	mişi or męşi	męsso
mqlcere, <i>soothe</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mqlci, mqlce. <i>Past descr.</i> molçevo etc. <i>Imp.</i> mqlci. <i>Subj. past</i> molçessi etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> molçęndo <i>Defective. Poetical</i>	
mqrđere, <i>bite</i>	mqrđi	mqrđo

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

morire, <i>die</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> muōio, muōri, muōre, moriamo, morite, muōiono. <i>Fut.</i> morrò, morirò. <i>Imp.</i> muōri. <i>Subj.</i> muōia, mōra ( <i>poet.</i> ), moriamo, moriate or moiate, muōiano, mōrano ( <i>poet.</i> ). <i>Part. pres.</i> morēnte, moriēnte; <i>past</i> mōrto	
mūngere, <i>milk</i>	mungsi	munto
muōvere, <i>move</i>	mōssi	mōsso
nāscere, <i>be born</i>	nacqui	nato
nascōndere, <i>hide</i>	nascōsi	nascōsto or nascōso
neglīgere ( <i>cf. 5, c</i> ), <i>neglect</i>	neglēssi	neglētto
nuōcere, <i>harm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nuōco or nōccio, nuōcono or nōcciono, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> nōcqui. <i>Past part.</i> nociuto	
nutrire, <i>nourish</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nutro, nutrisco. <i>Subj.</i> nutra, nutrisca	
offēndere, <i>offend</i>	offēsi	offēso
offrire or offerire, <i>offer</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> offro, offerisco. <i>Past abs.</i> offer̄si or offrii. <i>Subj.</i> offra, offerisca. <i>Past part.</i> offer̄to	
opprimere, <i>oppress</i>	<i>See comprimere</i>	
ottenere, <i>obtain</i>	<i>See tenere</i>	
parere, <i>appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> paio, pari, pare, paiamo, parēte, pāiono. <i>Past abs.</i> parvi or parsi. <i>Fut.</i> parrò. <i>Imp.</i> lacking. <i>Subj.</i> paia etc., pāiano. <i>Past part.</i> parso or paruto	
partire, <i>leave, go away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> parto; "share," partisco	
patire, <i>suffer</i>	<i>Rare forms:</i> pato, pati, pate, pātono; <i>p. part.</i> passo.	
pentirsi, <i>repent</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mi pento etc. <i>Imp.</i> pēntiti. <i>Subj.</i> si pēnta etc.	
percipere, <i>perceive</i>	<i>Past part.</i> percetto	<i>Defective. Rare</i>
percuōtere, <i>strike</i>	percōssi	percōsso
	<i>The diphthong is preserved in the ind. pres. whenever the tonic accent falls upon the o.</i>	
pērdere, <i>lose</i>	pērsi, perdei, or perdet̄ti; pērsō or perduto. <i>The compounds disperdere and sperdere have only the irregular forms.</i>	
permēttre, <i>permit</i>	<i>See mettere</i>	
persistere, <i>persist</i>	<i>See assistere</i>	
persuadere, <i>persuade</i>	persuași	persuașo
pervertire, <i>pervert</i>	<i>See avvertire</i>	

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

piacere, <i>please</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> piaccio, piaci, piace, piacciamo, piacetē, piācciono. <i>Past abs.</i> piacqui. <i>Subj.</i> piaccia; piacciamo, piacciate, piācciano. <i>Past part.</i> piaciuto	
piāngere, <i>weep</i>	piansi	pianto
pīngere, <i>push</i>	<i>See</i> dipingere	<i>Rare in prose</i>
piq̄vere( <i>impersonal</i> ), <i>rain</i>	piqvve	piovuto
plāudere, <i>applaud</i>	<i>See</i> applaudire	<i>Poetical</i>
pōrgere, <i>stretch forth</i>	pōrsi	pōrto
poṛre (pōnere), <i>place</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> pōngo, pōni, pōne, poniamo or ponghiamo, pōnete, pōngono. <i>Past abs.</i> pōsi. <i>Fut.</i> porrò. <i>Imp.</i> pōni. <i>Subj.</i> pōnga; poniamo or ponghiamo, poniate, pōngano. <i>Part. pres.</i> ponendo; <i>past</i> pōsto	
possedere, <i>possess</i>	<i>See</i> sedere	
potere, <i>be able</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> pōsso, puqi, puq̄, possiamo, potete, pōsono (pōnno, <i>poet.</i> ). <i>Fut.</i> potrò. <i>Imp.</i> wanting. <i>Subj.</i> pōssa; possiamo, possiate, pōssano. <i>Past part.</i> potuto	
precēdere, <i>precede</i>	preçessi or precedetti	preceduto
prediligere, <i>prefer</i>	predilèssi	predilètto
prelūdere, <i>prelude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
prēmere, <i>crush</i>	preçsi, premei, premetti	
prēndere, <i>take</i>	preçi	preço
	Comprendere, sorprendere, imprendere, <i>are conjugated like</i> prendere	
presūmere, <i>assume</i>	presunsi	presunto
produrre, <i>produce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre	
profferire, <i>proffer</i>	<i>See</i> offerire	
promēttēre, <i>promise</i>	<i>See</i> mettere	
protēggere, <i>protect</i>	protēssi	protētto
pūngere, <i>prick</i>	punsi	punto
rādere, <i>shave</i>	rasi	raso
recidere, <i>sever</i>	<i>See</i> decidere	
redimere, <i>redeem</i>	redēnsi	redēnto
redire or riēdere, <i>return</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> riēdo, riēdi, riēde; riēdono. <i>Past descr.</i> redivo. <i>Past abs.</i> redirono. <i>Subj.</i> ( <i>rare</i> ) riedesse and riedessero	<i>Defective. Poetical</i>
rēggere <i>rule</i>	rēssi	rētto
	<i>Compounds conjugated like</i> reggere	

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

rēndere, <i>render</i>	rēsi, rendeī or rendeṭti; reṣo or renduto. Arrēndere, arreṣo	
reprīmere, <i>repress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
resistere, <i>resist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
respīngere, <i>repulse</i>	<i>See</i> spingere	
richiēdere, <i>demand</i>	<i>See</i> chiedere	
rīdere, <i>laugh</i>	risi	riso
ridurre, <i>reduce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre	
riflēttere, <i>reflect</i>	riflessi	riflesso
	<i>In sense of "consider" regular</i>	
rifūlgere, <i>shine</i>	rifulsi	<i>Part. wanting</i>
rilūcere, <i>shine</i>	rilussi	<i>Part. wanting</i>
rimanere, <i>remain</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> rimango, rimani, rimane, rimaniamo or rimanghiamo, rimanete, rimāngono. <i>Past abs.</i> rimasi. <i>Fut.</i> rimarrò. <i>Imp.</i> rimani. <i>Subj.</i> rimanga. <i>Past part.</i> rimasto or rimaso	
ripōnere, <i>replace</i>	<i>See</i> porre. <i>More usual form, riporre</i>	
risolare, <i>re-sole</i>	risuolo, risuqli, etc.; <i>diphthong occurs wherever o is accented</i>	
risōlvere, <i>resolve</i>	<i>See</i> assolvere	
rispōndere, <i>reply</i>	risposi	risposto
riuscire, <i>succeed</i>	<i>See</i> uscire	
rōdere, <i>gnaw</i>	rōsi	rōso
rōmpere, <i>break</i>	ruppi	rōtto
rotare, <i>turn, whirl</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ruqto, ruqti, etc.; <i>diphthong occurs wherever o is accented</i>	
salire, <i>go up</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> salgo, sali, sale, salghiamo or sagliamo, salite, sālgono. <i>Past abs.</i> salii or salsi. <i>Imp.</i> sali. <i>Subj.</i> salga, salghiamo, sālgano, etc. <i>Past part.</i> salito	
sapere, <i>know</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sq, sai, sa, sappiamo, sapete, sanno. <i>Past abs.</i> seppi. <i>Imp.</i> sappi, sappiate. <i>Subj.</i> sappia. <i>Fut.</i> saprò. <i>Part. pres.</i> sapiēnte; <i>past</i> saputo	
scēgliere (scērre), <i>choose</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> scēlgo, scēgli, scēglie, sceghiamo or scelghiamo, scegliete, scēlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> scēlsi. <i>Subj.</i> scēlga etc. <i>Past part.</i> scēlto	
scēndere, <i>descend</i>	scēsi	scēso
scērnere, <i>discern</i>	scērsi or scerneī	<i>Past part. wanting</i>

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

scîndere, <i>sever</i>	scissi	scisso	
	Prescindere <i>has</i> prescindetti <i>also</i>		
sciōgliere <i>or</i> sciōrre, <i>loosen</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sciōlgo, sciōgli, sciōglie, sciogliamo, sciogliete, sciōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> sciōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> scioglierò <i>or</i> sciorrò. <i>Imp.</i> sciogli. <i>Subj.</i> sciōlga. <i>Past part.</i> sciōlto		
scolpire, <i>carve</i>	scolpii <i>or poet.</i> culsi	scolpito <i>or poet.</i> sculto	
sconnētere, <i>disconnect</i>	<i>See</i> anettere		
scoprire, <i>discover</i>	scopersi	scoperto	<i>So</i> coprire
scōrgere, <i>perceive</i>	scōrsi	scōrto	
scrivere, <i>write</i>	scrissi	scritto	
scuōtere, <i>shake</i>	scōssi	scōsso	
	<i>Diphthong</i> <i>uo</i> <i>preserved only where the accent falls</i> <i>on it</i>		
şdrućire, <i>rip</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> şdrućio <i>or</i> şdrućisco. <i>Subj.</i> şdrućia <i>or</i> şdrućisca		
sedere, <i>sit</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seġgo <i>or</i> siēdo, siēdi, siēde, sediamo, sedete, seġgono <i>or</i> siēdono. <i>Past abs.</i> sedēi. <i>Imp.</i> siēdi. <i>Subj.</i> seġga <i>or</i> siēda, seġgano <i>or</i> siēdano. <i>Past part.</i> seduto		
sedurre, <i>seduce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre		
seguire, <i>follow</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seġuo, seġui, <i>etc.</i> <i>Subj.</i> seġua <i>etc.</i> <i>Imp.</i> seġui. <i>Consequire in sense of "obtain," regular.</i> <i>Esequire regular</i>		
sentire, <i>feel, smell</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seņto, seņti, <i>etc.</i> <i>Subj.</i> seņta <i>etc.</i> <i>Imp.</i> seņti		
seppellire, <i>inter</i>		sepolto <i>or</i> seppellito	
servire, <i>serve</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seŗvo, seŗvi. <i>Subj.</i> seŗva. <i>Imp.</i> seŗvi		
sodisfare, <i>satisfy</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sodisfō <i>or</i> sodisfaccio, sodisfi, sodisfa, sodisfacciamo, sodisfate, sodisfano. <i>Subj.</i> so- disfi <i>or</i> sodisfaccia <i>etc.</i> , sodisfacciamo, sodisfac- ciate, sodisfino <i>or</i> sodisfacciano. <i>Imp.</i> sodisfa, sodisfate. <i>See</i> fare		
soffōlcere, <i>support</i>	soffōlse	soffōlto <i>Defective. Rare</i>	
soffrire, <i>suffer</i>	<i>See</i> offrire		
solere ( <i>defective</i> ), <i>be wont</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> soġlio, suōli, suōle, soġliamo, solete, soġliono. <i>Subj.</i> soġlia <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs., fut., past</i> <i>fut., imp., wanting; supplied by</i> <i>esser solito.</i> <i>Past part.</i> soġlito		
soļvere, <i>undo</i>	solvei (solvetti)	soluto	<i>Poetical</i>



## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

sonare, <i>ring</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> suonò, suonì. <i>Diphthong occurs wherever the accent falls on o</i>	
sopprimere, <i>suppress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
sorbire, <i>sip</i>	<i>See</i> assorbire	
sorgere, <i>arise</i>	sorsi	sorto
sospēndere, <i>suspend</i>	sospesi, sospeso. <i>So</i> appendere, impendere; pendere <i>is reg.</i> , dipendere <i>either reg. or irreg.</i>	
sostenere, <i>sustain</i>	<i>See</i> tenere	
spāndere, <i>spill</i>		spanduto or <i>poet.</i> spanto
spārgere, <i>spatter</i>	sparsi	sparso or <i>rare</i> sparto
sparire, <i>disappear</i>	<i>See</i> apparire	
spēndere, <i>spend</i>	spesi	speso
spēngere or spēgnere, <i>extinguish</i>	spensi	spento
spērdere, <i>lose</i>	<i>See</i> perdere	
spērgere, <i>disperse</i>	spersi	perso <span style="float: right;"><i>Rare</i></span>
spīngere, <i>push</i>	spinsi	spinto
spōrgere, <i>project</i>	sporsi	sporto
stare, <i>be, stay</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> stò, stai, sta, stiamo, state, stanno. <i>Past descr.</i> stavo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> stetti, stesti, stette or ( <i>poet.</i> ) stiè, stemmo, steste, stettero. <i>Imp.</i> sta', state. <i>Subj.</i> stia etc., stiamo, stiate, stiano; <i>past</i> stessi etc. <i>Past part.</i> stato. <i>Ri-stare and sopra-stare, like stare:</i> ristò, ristai, etc.	
stēndere, <i>extend</i>	<i>See</i> tendere	
strīngere, <i>press</i>	strinsi	stretto
strūggere, <i>melt</i>	strussi	strutto
	<i>Distruiggere like</i> struggere	
succēdere, <i>succeed</i>	<i>See</i> concedere	
sūggere, <i>suck</i>	suggei or sussi. <i>Past part. lacking.</i> <span style="float: right;"><i>Rare</i></span>	
sussistere, <i>subsist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
švēllere or švēlgere (švērre), <i>uproot</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> švēlgo, švēlgi or švēlli, švēlge or švēlle: švelgiamo or švelghiamo, švelgete, švēlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> švēlsi. <i>Fut.</i> švellerò. <i>Subj.</i> švēlga, švelghiamo, švēlgano. <i>Past part.</i> švelto	
švenire, <i>swoon</i>	<i>See</i> venire. <i>Fut.</i> švenirò, šverrò	
tacere, <i>be silent</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> taccio, taci, tace, tacciamo, tacete, tacciono. <i>Past abs.</i> tacqui. <i>Imp.</i> taci. <i>Subj.</i> taccia; tacciamo, tacciate, tacciano. <i>Past part.</i> taciuto	

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

tēndere, <i>extend</i>	teŋsi	teŋso	
tenere, <i>hold</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> teŋgo, tiēni, tiēne, teniamo or tenghiamo, tenete, tēngono. <i>Past abs.</i> tēnni. <i>Fut.</i> terrò. <i>Imp.</i> tiēni. <i>Subj.</i> teŋga, teniamo or tenghiamo, etc. <i>Past part.</i> tenuto		
tērgere, <i>wipe</i>	tęrsi	tęrso	<i>Rare</i>
tīngere, <i>tint</i>	tinsi	tinto	
tōgliere or tōrre, <i>take away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōlgo, tōgli, tōglie, togliamo, togliete, tōlgoŋo. <i>Past abs.</i> tōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> torrò or toglierò. <i>Imp.</i> tōgli, tō'. <i>Subj.</i> tōlga etc. <i>Past part.</i> tōlto		
tonare, <i>thunder</i>	<i>Pres.</i> tuŋno. <i>Diphthong occurs on the accent.</i>		
tōrcere, <i>twist</i>	tōrsi	tōrto	
tossire, <i>cough</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōsso. <i>Subj.</i> tōssa. <i>Imp.</i> tōssi. ( <i>Rarely</i> tossisco etc.)		
tradurre, <i>translate</i>	<i>See addurre</i>		
trarre (trāere), <i>drag</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> traggo, trai, trae, tragghiamo, traete, trāggoŋo. <i>Past abs.</i> trassi, traesti, trasse, traemmo, traeste, trāssero. <i>Fut.</i> trarrò. <i>Imp.</i> trai. <i>Subj.</i> tragga etc., tragghiamo, trāggano. <i>Part. pres.</i> traendo; <i>past</i> tratto. <i>The compounds</i> attrarre, contrarre, distrarre, ritrarre, etc., <i>like</i> trarre		
uccidere, <i>kill</i>	uccisi	ucciso	
udire, <i>hear</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ūdo, ūdi, ūde, udiamo, udite, ūdono. <i>Subj.</i> ūda; udiamo, udiatē, ūdano. <i>Imp.</i> ūdi, udite. <i>Fut.</i> udirò or udrò. <i>Past abs.</i> udii. <i>Past part.</i> udito		
ūngere, <i>anoint</i>	unsi	unto	
ūrgerere, <i>urge</i>	<i>Forms in use:</i> <i>Ind. pres.</i> urge, ūrgono. <i>Past descr.</i> urgevo, urgēvano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> urga, ūrgano; <i>past</i> urgesse, urgēssero. <i>Part. pres.</i> urgēte, urgēndo. <i>Fut.</i> urgerà, urgeranno <i>Defective</i>		
uscire ( <i>rarely</i> escire), <i>go out</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> esco, esci, esce, usciamo, uscite, ēscono. <i>Subj.</i> esca; usciamo, usciate, ēscano. <i>Imp.</i> esci, uscite. <i>Past abs.</i> uscii. <i>Past part.</i> uscito		
valere, <i>be worth</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> valgo, vali, vale, vogliamo or valghiamo, valēte, vālgoŋo. <i>Past abs.</i> valsi. <i>Fut.</i> varrò. <i>Imp.</i> vali. <i>Subj.</i> valga or vaglia, valghiamo or vagliamo, valghiate, vālgoŋo or vāgliano. <i>Past part.</i> valso or valuto		

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

vedere, <i>see</i>	<p><i>Ind. pres.</i> vëdo or vëggo, vëdi, vëde, vediamo, vedete, vëdono or vëggono (<i>poet.</i> vëggio, vëggiono). <i>Past abs.</i> vidi. <i>Fut.</i> vedrò. <i>Imp.</i> vëdi or vë', vedete. <i>Subj.</i> vëda or vëgga, <i>poet.</i> vëggia; vediamo, vediate, vëdano or vëggano, <i>poet.</i> vëggiano. <i>Part. pres.</i> vedente or veggente; <i>past visto or veduto.</i> Prevedere and provvedere have futures prevederò and provvederò. <i>Other compounds of vedere, like vedere</i></p>
venire, <i>come</i>	<p><i>Ind. pres.</i> vëngo, viëni, viëne, veniamo, venite, vëngono. <i>Past abs.</i> vënni. <i>Fut.</i> verrò. <i>Imp.</i> viëni, venite. <i>Subj.</i> vënga, <i>poet.</i> vëgna. <i>Part. pres.</i> veniente or vengente; <i>past venuto.</i> <i>Compounds of venire conjugated like venire</i></p>
vestire, <i>dress</i>	<p><i>Ind. pres.</i> vësto, vësti, vëste, etc. <i>Past part.</i> vestito, <i>poet.</i> vestuto</p>
vilipëndere	See appendere
vincere, <i>conquer</i>	vinsi
vivere, <i>live</i>	<p style="text-align: right;">vinto</p> <p><i>Past abs.</i> vissi. <i>Fut.</i> vivrò. <i>Past part.</i> vissuto (<i>rarely vivuto</i>)</p>
volere, <i>wish, will</i>	<p><i>Ind. pres.</i> vòglio or vò', vuqi, vuqle, vogliamo, volete, vògliono. <i>Past abs.</i> vòlli. <i>Fut.</i> vorrò. <i>Imp.</i> vògli, vogliate. <i>Subj.</i> vòglia etc., vogliamo, vogliate, vòglio</p>
vòlgere, <i>turn</i>	vòlsi
vòlvere, <i>turn</i>	<p>vòlsi</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Rare</i></p>
votare, <i>empty</i>	<p style="text-align: center;">Devolvere has a <i>past part.</i> devoluto</p> <p><i>Ind. pres.</i> vuqto, vuqti, etc., <i>diphthong occurring whenever the accent falls on o.</i></p>



## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- a, ad (39), at, to  
 abbandonare abandon  
 abbasso below; downstairs  
 abbiamo *1 pl. pres. ind. of avere*  
 abitante *m.* inhabitant  
 abitare dwell, reside  
 ābito *m.* coat  
 abituarsi (a) accustom oneself  
 (to)  
 accadere happen  
 accanto (a) next, next door (to)  
 accendere light, kindle  
 accettare accept  
 acciaio *m.* steel  
 accidente *m.* accident  
 accomodarsi make oneself comfort-  
 able, sit down  
 accompagnare accompany; match  
 accordarsi agree  
 accordo *m.* agreement  
 accorgersi di notice, become aware  
 of  
 accrescere increase  
 acqua *f.* water  
 acquistare acquire  
 acre sharp, bitter  
 adatto adapted, suitable  
 addosso (a) on top, on the back  
 (of)  
 adriatico *adj.* Adriatic  
 adulto adult, mature  
 affare *m.* affair; *pl.* business  
 affermare affirm, declare  
 affettuoso affectionate, cordial  
 affisso *m.* placard, notice  
 affollato crowded, thronged  
 agguantare seize upon  
 agire act  
 agitatore *m.* agitator  
 agli, ai, 75  
 ago *m.* needle; hand (of clock)  
 Agostino Augustine  
 agosto *m.* August  
 l'Aia the Hague  
 aiutare help  
 al, allo, 75; alle sei at six o'clock  
 albergo *m.* hotel  
 ālbero *m.* tree; mast  
 alcuno some, some one  
 allegro joyful  
 allōdola *f.* lark  
 allora then, at that time  
 almeno at least  
 alterare alter  
 altezza *f.* height; highness  
 alto high  
 altrettanto as much again  
 altro other; ∞! of course!  
 altrui of others  
 alzarsi rise, get up  
 amare love  
 ambedue both  
 ambizione *f.* ambition  
 ambizioso ambitious  
 l'Amērica *f.* America  
 americano American



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- amica** (*pl.* -che) *f.* friend  
**amico** (*pl.* -ci) *m.* friend  
**Amleto** Hamlet  
**ammalato** ill  
**amministrativo** administrative  
**ammirare** admire  
**amore** *m.* love  
**anche** also  
**ancora** yet, still, again  
**andare** (149) go; **andarsene** (127)  
     go away  
**andō** 3 *sg. p. abs. of andare*  
**anello** *m.* ring  
**angelo** *m.* angel  
**angolo** *m.* corner; **far ~ con** be at  
     the corner of  
**angusto** narrow  
**annaffiare** water  
**annaffiatōio** *m.* watering-pot  
**anno** *m.* year; **buon ~** Happy New  
     Year  
**annoverare** enumerate  
**antemeridiano** of the morning  
**antichità** *f.* antiquity  
**anticipatamente** beforehand, in ad-  
     vance  
**antico** ancient  
**antimilitarista** *m.* anti-militarist  
**antologia** *f.* anthology  
**ape** *f.* bee  
**aperto** open  
**apparecchiare** set table  
**appartamento** *m.* apartment  
**appartenere** belong  
**appassire** wither  
**appena** hardly; no sooner  
**applicare** apply  
**appollaiarsi** roost  
**approvare** approve  
**appuntare** pin  
**aprile** *m.* April  
**aprire** open  
**arancio** *m.* orange-tree  
**architetto** *m.* architect  
**ardere** burn  
**ardito** bold  
**ardore** *m.* ardor  
**argento** *m.* silver  
**aria** *f.* air  
**Aristotile** Aristotle  
**armi** *f. pl.* arms  
**arrestare** arrest  
**arrivare** arrive  
**arrivo** *m.* arrival  
**arte** *f.* art  
**artista** *m.* artist  
**ascoltare** listen  
**aspettare** wait, await  
**aspettativo** *m.* expectancy  
**assai** very; much  
**assortito** to match, like  
**assurdo** absurd  
**astuccio** *m.* sewing-case  
**attendere** await  
**attento** attentive; **stare ~** pay at-  
     tention  
**attenzione** *f.* attention; **fare ~** pay  
     attention  
**attillato** close fitting; well dressed  
**attimo** *m.* instant  
**attrarre** draw, attract  
**augurare** wish, wish well  
**austriaco** Austrian  
**automobile** *c.* automobile  
**autore** *m.* author  
**autunno** *m.* autumn  
**avanti** before, ahead; **~ che** *conj.*  
     *w. subj.* before  
**avaro** *m.* miser  
**avere** (120) have; **~ da** have to; **aver**

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- caldo, frèddo, be hot, cold; aver  
frètta, fùria, be in a hurry; avèr-  
sela a male take ill, be offended
- avrò *r sg. fut. ind. of avere*  
avvenire (138) happen  
avventarsi a rush upon  
avverare aver, confirm  
avvertire advise, warn  
avvezzare accustom  
avviarsi take one's way  
avvicinarsi a approach  
avvisarsi bethink oneself  
avviso *m.* placard  
avvocato *m.* lawyer  
azzurro blue
- babbo *m.* papa  
baciare kiss  
bácio *m.* kiss  
badare take care  
bagagliaio *m.* baggage-room  
bagāglio *m.* baggage, trunk  
bagnato wet  
bagno *m.* bath  
balenare lighten  
bambino, -a, child  
banda *f.* band  
bandièra *f.* flag  
barattare exchange  
barca *f.* boat  
basso low  
bastare suffice, be enough  
bastone *m.* cane  
battāglia *f.* battle  
bāttere beat  
baule *m.* trunk; fare il ∞ pack  
one's trunk  
bāvero *m.* coat-collar  
bèbè *m.* baby  
bèl for bello
- Bèlga (*pl.* -gi, -ghe) Belgian  
il Bèlgio Belgium  
bellèzza *f.* beauty  
bèllico pertaining to war  
bellicoso warlike  
bellino pretty  
bèllo fine, beautiful; bèll' e fatto  
ready-made  
benchè *conj. w. subj.* although  
bène, bèn, well  
benefizio *m.* benefit  
benissimo, benone, very well indeed  
benzina *f.* gasolene  
bère drink  
bianco white  
biasmare blame  
bicchière *m.* drinking-glass  
bigio gray  
bigliètto *m.* ticket; ∞ d'andata e  
ritorno round-trip ticket  
bilāncio *m.* balance, account  
bilione *m.* trillion (U.S.), billion (Eng.)  
bimbo, -a, baby  
biognare *impers.* need  
biogno *m.* need  
bocconi on one's face  
bòia *m.* executioner  
bolletta *f.* check, receipt  
bollire boil  
Borbone Bourbon  
borsa *f.* purse, bag  
bosco *m.* wood  
bottega *f.* shop  
bottiglia *f.* bottle  
bòve *m.* ox  
braccio *m.* arm  
brano *m.* shred, fragment  
bravo brave; clever  
breccia *f.* breach  
brève short

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- britännico** *Britannic*  
**bruciare** *burn*  
**bruscamente** *abruptly*  
**brutto** *ugly*  
**büio** *m. dark*; *al* ∼ *in the dark*  
**buono, buon, good**; **buon giorno** *good morning*; **buona sera** *good afternoon, good evening*  
**burro** *m. butter*  
**büssola** *f. compass, bearings*  
**busta** *f. envelope*  
**buttare** *throw*; ∼ *via* *throw away*
- cacciare** *hunt, drive out*  
**cadere** *fall*  
**caduco** *weak*  
**caffè** *m. coffee*; *café*  
**caldo** *warm, hot*; *fa* ∼ *it is warm weather*  
**calmo** *calm*  
**calore** *m. heat*  
**calzino** *m. sock*  
**calzolaio** *m. shoemaker*  
**calzoni** *m. pl. trousers*  
**cambiare** *change* [room  
**cāmera** *f. chamber*; ∼ *da letto* *bed-*  
**cameriere** *m. waiter*  
**camminare** *walk*  
**campagna** *f. country*  
**campione** *m. sample*  
**cane** *m. dog*  
**cannone** *m. cannon*  
**cantare** *sing*  
**canzone** *f. song*  
**capello** *m. hair*  
**capino** *m. crown of hat*  
**capire** *understand*  
**capitale** *f. capital*  
**capitare** *chance to be, happen in*  
**capitolo** *m. chapter*
- capo** *m. head*; *a* ∼ *chino* *with bowed head*  
**caporale** *m. corporal*  
**cappello** *m. hat*; ∼ *sodo* *derby hat*;  
 ∼ *a cencio* *soft hat*  
**carattere** *m. character, disposition*  
**carbonaro** *m. charcoal-burner*  
**cārcere** *m. prison*  
**cardo** *m. thistle*  
**carezza** *f. caress*  
**cārica** *f. load*; *office*  
**caricare** *load*; *wind up*  
**cārico** *loaded*; *wound up*  
**carino** *charming, pretty*  
**Carlo** *Charles*  
**carne** *f. meat*  
**caro** *dear*  
**carponi** *on all fours*  
**carrozza** *f. carriage*  
**carta** *f. paper*; ∼ *protocollo* *foolscap*  
**cartasuga** *f. blotting-paper*  
**cartellino** *m. sheet, label*  
**cartello** *m. shop-sign*  
**cartolaio** *m. stationer*  
**cartolina postale** *post card*  
**casa** *f. house*; *a* ∼ *homeward, home*; *in* ∼ *at home*; *stare in* ∼ *stay in*; *star di* ∼ *reside*  
**le Cascine** "The Dairies," *a park in Florence*  
**caşo** *m. case*; *in ogni* ∼ *in any case*;  
 ∼ *mai* *in case*  
**castello** *m. castle*  
**catena** *f. chain*  
**cattivo** *bad*  
**cavaliere** *m. knight, man on horse-back*  
**cavallo** *m. horse*; *andare a* ∼ *ride horseback*  
**cavare** *take out*

# ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- cēdere** yield  
**cēlebre** celebrated  
**celeste** light blue  
**cēncio** *m.* rag; **cappello a** ∞ soft hat  
**cēnno** *m.* signal, nod  
**centesimo** *m.* centime  
**centimetro** *m.* centimeter  
**centinaio** *m. collective* hundred  
**cēnto** hundred, a hundred  
**centrale** central  
**cēntro** *m.* center; **al** ∞ down town  
**cercare** look for; ∞ *di (w. inf.)* try  
**cervello** *m.* brain  
**Cēssare** Caesar  
**cessare** cease  
**che** which, that  
**chi** who, whom  
**chiacchierare** chat  
**chiamare** call; **chiamarsi** be called,  
     be named  
**Chiara** Clara  
**chiaro** clear, light (color)  
**chicca** *f.* sweetmeat  
**chieṣa** *f.* church  
**chilo** *m.* kilogram  
**chino** bent; **a capo** ∞ with bowed  
     head  
**chiōcciola** *f.* snail; **scala a** ∞ wind-  
     ing stair  
**chirurgo** *m.* surgeon  
**chiūdere** shut  
**ci, ce, pron.** us; *adv.* there, at it, to  
     it; **c'è, ci sono,** there is, there are  
**ciarpetta** *f.* necktie, scarf  
**ciascuno** each one  
**cieco** blind  
**cilindro** *m.* cylinder; **cappello a** ∞  
     tall hat  
**cima** *f.* summit; **in** ∞ **a** on top of  
**cinquanta** fifty
- cinque** five  
**cioccolata** *f.* chocolate  
**circa** about, approximately  
**Ciro** Cyrus  
**città** *f.* city  
**cittadino** *m.* citizen  
**ciuco** *m.* donkey  
**civetta** *f.* coquette  
**civile** civilized; civic; polite  
**civiltà** *f.* civilization  
**classe** *f.* class  
**clāssico** classic  
**cogli, coi, 75**  
**cōgliere** gather, pluck  
**cognata** *f.* sister-in-law  
**cognato** *m.* brother-in-law  
**col, collo, colla, 75**  
**colazione** *f.* luncheon; **far** ∞ take  
     luncheon  
**collana** *f.* necklace  
**cōllera** *f.* anger  
**collina** *f.* hill  
**colmo** *m.* summit  
**colorato** colored; tan  
**colore** *m.* color  
**colpa** *f.* blame, fault  
**coltello** *m.* knife  
**comandare** command  
**comando** *m.* command  
**combattere** fight  
**come** as, like  
**cominciare** begin  
**commissione** *f.* errand  
**commosso** moved  
**commovente** moving  
**cōmodo** convenient, comfortable;  
     **far** ∞ come handy; **star** ∞ be  
     comfortable  
**compagno, -a,** companion  
**comparire** appear

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

compire fulfill, complete	convenire (138) be suitable, be fitting
compleanno <i>m.</i> birthday	conversazione <i>f.</i> conversation
complimento <i>m.</i> compliment; far complimenti stand on ceremony	copertone <i>m.</i> blanket
compra <i>f.</i> purchase	copiare copy
comprare buy	coppia <i>f.</i> couple
comunicante connecting, communicating	coprire cover
comunicare communicate	coraggio <i>m.</i> courage
con with	cornetta <i>f.</i> horn
condannare condemn	corrèggere correct
condurre conduct	còrrere run
confine <i>m.</i> boundary	corrispondere correspond
conforto <i>m.</i> comfort	corsa <i>f.</i> course, run
confrontare compare	cortese kind
congiurare conspire	corto short
conoscenza <i>f.</i> acquaintance	cosa <i>f.</i> thing
conoscere know, be acquainted with	coscienza <i>f.</i> consciousness
conquistatore <i>m.</i> conqueror	così thus, so
considerare consider	costa <i>f.</i> coast
considerevole considerable	costaggiù down there
consigliere <i>m.</i> adviser, counselor	costare cost
consiglio <i>m.</i> advice	cotone <i>m.</i> cotton
consistere consist	còttimo <i>m.</i> contract; a ~ by the piece
cōnsole <i>m.</i> consul	cravatta <i>f.</i> necktie, cravat
consumato used up	crèdere believe
contadino, -a, peasant	crèscere grow
contante <i>m.</i> counting, cash; a contanti in cash	cristiano Christian
conte <i>m.</i> count	Cristòforo Colombo Christopher Columbus
contentarsi (di) content oneself (with)	crociata <i>f.</i> crusade
contento contented	cucchiaio <i>m.</i> spoon
contessa <i>f.</i> countess	cucina <i>f.</i> kitchen; cookery
continuare continue	cucire sew
conto <i>m.</i> bill; tornar ~ be of advantage; non mērita il ~ it is not worth while	cugino, -a, cousin
contrário contrary	cui to whom, of whom, to which, of which
contro against	cultura <i>f.</i> culture
	cuocere cook
	cuoio <i>m.</i> leather



## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

cuore <i>m.</i> heart	diciassette seventeen
da by, from	diciotto eighteen
dacchè since ( <i>temporal</i> )	dicono <i>3 pl. pres. ind. of dire</i>
dagli, dai, dal, dallo, dalla, 75	dieci ten
danno <i>3 pl. of dare</i>	dietro <i>a</i> behind
danno <i>m.</i> damage, injury	difendere defend
dappertutto everywhere	difesa <i>f.</i> defense
dare (131) give; ∞ su face on; ∞	difetto <i>m.</i> fault, defect
il buon viaggio wish (one) a pleas-	difficile difficult
ant journey	diffondere scatter
davanti <i>a</i> in front of	difilato straight ahead
davvero indeed	dighiacciare thaw
dēcimo tenth	dimenticare forget
decina <i>f. (collective)</i> ten	diminuire diminish
dedicare dedicate	dimorare dwell, reside
degenerare degenerate	dimostrare show
dēgli, dēi, dēl, dēllo, dēlla, 75	dinanzi <i>a</i> in front of
denaro <i>m.</i> money	dinastia <i>f.</i> dynasty
dēnte <i>m.</i> tooth	dio <i>m.</i> god
dēntro (dī) within	dire (175) say
dēplorare regret, lament	direzione <i>f.</i> direction
dēprimere depress	dirigere direct
deputato <i>m.</i> deputy, representative	disçosto (a) distant (from)
desiderare desire	discreto modest, discreet
desidērio <i>m.</i> desire	discūtere discuss
dēsinare dine	disfatta <i>f.</i> defeat
dēstro right	disgrāzia <i>f.</i> misfortune
dēterminare determine	disgraziatamēte unfortunately
dētto <i>p. p. of dire</i>	dispaccio <i>m.</i> telegram
dēvi, dēve, 2-3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of dovere</i>	disperato desperate
di of; di là da beyond; di qua da	dispiacēte sorry
on this side of	dispiacēre displease
dī <i>m.</i> day	disse <i>3 sg. p. abs. of dire</i>
dia <i>sg. pres. subj. of dare</i>	distēndere spread
diālogo <i>m.</i> dialogue	ditale <i>m.</i> thimble
dica <i>sg. pres. subj. of dire</i>	dito <i>m.</i> finger
dice says	diventare become
dicēmbre <i>m.</i> December	divērso different
dichiarare declare	divertirsi amuse oneself
diciannōve nineteen	dividere divide

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<b>dò</b> <i>1 sg. pres. ind. of dare</i>	<b>ecco</b> here is, there is, behold
<b>dobbiamo</b> <i>1 pl. pres. ind. of dovere</i>	<b>eco</b> <i>c.</i> echo
<b>dōdici</b> twelve	<b>educato</b> polite
<b>dolce</b> <i>m.</i> sweetmeat, dessert; <i>adj.</i> sweet	<b>effettuare</b> effect
<b>dolere</b> (172) grieve; <i>w. dat.</i> ache	<b>egli, ei, he</b>
<b>dolorosamente</b> sorrowfully, painfully	<b>ēglino</b> they ( <i>m.</i> )
<b>domandare</b> ask; ∞ <b>di</b> ask for (a person)	<b>elegante</b> elegant
<b>domani</b> to-morrow	<b>elevato</b> elevated
<b>domēnica</b> <i>f.</i> Sunday	<b>elēggere</b> elect
<b>domēstico</b> <i>m.</i> servant; <i>adj.</i> domestic	<b>ella</b> she
<b>donna</b> <i>f.</i> woman; woman-servant	<b>ēlleno</b> they ( <i>f.</i> )
<b>dopo</b> <i>prep.</i> after; ∞ <b>che</b> <i>conj.</i> after	<b>elogio</b> <i>m.</i> praise, eulogy
<b>doppio</b> double	<b>emoziōne</b> <i>f.</i> emotion
<b>dormire</b> sleep	<b>energīa</b> <i>f.</i> energy
<b>dorso</b> <i>m.</i> back	<b>Enrico</b> Henry
<b>dotare</b> endow	<b>entrambi</b> both
<b>dōtto</b> learned	<b>entrare</b> enter
<b>dove</b> where	<b>entusiasmo</b> <i>m.</i> enthusiasm
<b>dovere</b> <i>v.</i> (188) owe; <i>m.</i> duty	<b>era</b> <i>f.</i> era
<b>dovesse</b> <i>3 sg. p. subj. of dovere</i>	<b>eredità</b> <i>f.</i> heredity
<b>dovunque</b> <i>conj. w. subj.</i> wherever	<b>erōe</b> <i>m.</i> hero
<b>dozzina</b> <i>f.</i> dozen	<b>eroicamente</b> heroically
<b>drammatico</b> dramatic	<b>esclusivamente</b> exclusively
<b>dubitare</b> doubt	<b>eșēmpio</b> <i>m.</i> example
<b>duca</b> <i>m.</i> duke	<b>eșērcito</b> <i>m.</i> army
<b>ducato</b> <i>m.</i> duchy	<b>eșiliare</b> exile
<b>due</b> two; <b>Due Sicilie</b> <i>f. pl.</i> Kingdom of the Two Sicilies	<b>eșitare</b> hesitate
<b>dunque</b> then, accordingly	<b>esperto</b> skillful, expert
<b>duodēcimo</b> twelfth	<b>esporre</b> (196) expose
<b>duomo</b> <i>m.</i> cathedral	<b>espressione</b> <i>f.</i> expression
<b>durare</b> last	<b>esprime</b> <i>3 sg. pres. ind. of esprimere</i>
<b>e, ed</b> (39), and	<b>esprimere</b> express
<b>è</b> is	<b>ēssere</b> (96) be
<b>eccitamento</b> <i>m.</i> excitement	<b>esso, -a, he, him, she, her, it</b>
	<b>estate</b> <i>f.</i> summer
	<b>età</b> <i>f.</i> age; in ∞ <b>di</b> at the age of
	<b>eterno</b> eternal
	<b>etrusco</b> Etruscan
	<b>evenienza</b> <i>f.</i> event, occurrence
	<b>evitare</b> avoid

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**fa** 3 *sg. pres. ind. of fare*  
**fa'** 2 *sg. imper. of fare*  
**facchino** *m.* porter  
**faccia** *f.* face; in ∞ a opposite  
**faccio** 1 *sg. pres. ind. of fare*  
**faceva** 3 *sg. past descr. of fare*  
**fácil** easy  
**facoltà** *f.* college (of university)  
**falco** *m.* falcon, hawk  
**fallire** fail  
**fallo** *m.* miss, failure, error; *senza*  
 ∞ without fail  
**fame** *f.* hunger; *aver* ∞ be hungry  
**famiglia** *f.* family  
**famoso** famous  
**fango** *m.* mud  
**fantasia** *f.* ornament  
**fare** (163) make, do; *far caldo* be  
 hot weather; *far freddo* be cold  
 weather; *far colazione* take break-  
 fast; *far passare, far entrare*, show  
 in; *far tardi* be late  
**fatale** fatal  
**fatica** *f.* fatigue, effort  
**faticoso** wearisome  
**fatto** *m.* fact, deed; *p. p. of fare*  
**favore** *m.* favor; *per* ∞ please  
**favorire** favor, favor with  
**fazzoletto** *m.* handkerchief  
**febbraio** *m.* February  
**fècero** 3 *pl. p. abs. of fare*  
**fède** *f.* faith  
**fedeltà** *f.* fidelity  
**felice** happy  
**fèlto** *m.* felt  
**ferire** wound, strike  
**ferita** *f.* wound  
**fermāglio** *m.* brooch  
**fermarsì** stop  
**fèrmo** firm, still

**fèrro** *m.* iron  
**ferroviārio** railway (*adj.*)  
**fèrvere** burn, be fervent  
**fèsta** *f.* holiday  
**fiacco** weak  
**fico** *m.* fig  
**figlia** *f.* daughter  
**figlio** *m.* son  
**figurare** figure  
**figurarsi** imagine  
**figurino** *m.* pattern; manikin  
**Filippo** Philip  
**filosòfico** philosophical  
**finalmente** finally  
**finchè** as long as; ∞ non until  
**fine** *f.* end; *m.* aim; *alla* ∞ at last  
**finestra** *f.* window  
**finire** finish  
**fino** fine  
**fino a** up to, as far as; **fin da** from  
*(time)*; **fin dove** how far  
**finzione** *f.* fiction, pretense  
**fiocco** *m.* bow  
**fiore** *m.* flower  
**fiorentino** Florentine  
**fiorire** bloom  
**fiorito** in bloom  
**Firenze** Florence  
**fischio** *m.* whistle  
**fiume** *m.* river  
**fòdera** *f.* lining  
**fòglia** *f.* leaf  
**fondino** *m.* shape, foundation  
**fondo** *m.* back, bottom, end; in ∞ a  
 at the back *etc.* of  
**fòrbici** *f. pl.* scissors  
**forchetta** *f.* fork  
**forestiere** foreigner  
**fòrma** *f.* form, last  
**formicolare** swarm

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<p> <b>fornaio</b> <i>m.</i> baker  <b>fornire</b> furnish  <b>forse</b> perhaps  <b>forte</b> strong  <b>fortuna</b> <i>f.</i> fortune, good luck*  <b>forza</b> <i>f.</i> force; a ~ di by dint of  <b>forzato</b> forced  <b>fotografia</b> <i>f.</i> photograph  <b>fra</b> among, between  <b>francese</b> French  <b>Francesco</b> Francis  <b>la Francia</b> France  <b>francobollo</b> <i>m.</i> postage-stamp  <b>frate</b> <i>m.</i> friar, brother  <b>fratello</b> <i>m.</i> brother  <b>freddo</b> cold; fa ~ it is cold  <b>freno</b> <i>m.</i> brake  <b>freSCO</b> cool  <b>fretta</b> <i>f.</i> haste; aver ~ be in haste  <b>frettoloso</b> hurried [resist  <b>fronte</b> <i>f.</i> front; forehead; far ~ a  <b>frugale</b> frugal  <b>frutto</b> <i>m.</i> fruit  <b>fu</b> the late, deceased  <b>fucilazione</b> <i>f.</i> execution, shooting  <b>fuggire</b> flee  <b>fūlmine</b> <i>m.</i> thunderbolt  <b>fumo</b> <i>m.</i> smoke  <b>fungo</b> <i>m.</i> mushroom  <b>fuoco</b> <i>m.</i> fire  <b>fuori</b> outside; ~ di porta outside              the city; andar ~ go out   <b>galantuomo</b> <i>m.</i> honorable man  <b>gallina</b> <i>f.</i> hen  <b>ganci</b> <i>m. pl.</i> hooks (and eyes)  <b>garōfano</b> <i>m.</i> carnation  <b>gattino</b> <i>m.</i> kitten  <b>gelare</b> freeze  <b>gelato</b> <i>m.</i> ice-cream         </p>	<p> <b>generale</b> <i>adj.</i> general; <i>m.</i> general  <b>generalmente</b> usually, generally  <b>gēnere</b> <i>m.</i> sort, kind  <b>gēnero</b> <i>m.</i> son-in-law  <b>generoso</b> generous  <b>genitori</b> <i>m. pl.</i> parents  <b>gennaio</b> <i>m.</i> January  <b>gente</b> <i>f.</i> folk, people  <b>gentile</b> kind, agreeable  <b>ghiacciare</b> freeze  <b>ghiaccio</b> <i>m.</i> ice  <b>già</b> already; once, formerly  <b>giacchetta</b> <i>f.</i> jacket  <b>il Giappone</b> Japan  <b>giardino</b> <i>m.</i> garden  <b>ginocchio</b> <i>m.</i> knee  <b>ginocchiōni</b> on one's knees  <b>giocare</b> (110, d) play  <b>gioia</b> <i>f.</i> joy  <b>gioielliere</b> <i>m.</i> jeweler  <b>gioiello</b> <i>m.</i> jewel  <b>Giorgio</b> George  <b>giornale</b> <i>m.</i> newspaper  <b>giornata</b> <i>f.</i> day, period of a day;              a ~ by the day  <b>giorno</b> <i>m.</i> day; di ~ by day  <b>giōvane</b> young  <b>giovanetto</b>, -a, young person  <b>Giovanni, Giovannino</b>, John  <b>giovare</b> be of use  <b>giovedì</b> <i>m.</i> Thursday  <b>gioventù</b> <i>f.</i> youth  <b>girare</b> turn  <b>giratina</b> <i>f.</i> short walk  <b>giro</b> <i>m.</i> tour, circular journey  <b>giù</b> down  <b>giubba</b> <i>f.</i> dress-coat  <b>giudizioso</b> sensible, judicious  <b>giugno</b> <i>m.</i> June  <b>Giulio</b> Julius         </p>
--	--

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- giungere** arrive  
**giurare** swear  
**Giuseppe** Joseph  
**giusto** just, right  
**gli** to him; the (*m. pl.*, 71, b, c)  
**gloria** *f.* glory  
**gnocco** *m.* dumpling  
**gomito** *m.* elbow  
**gondola** *f.* gondola  
**gota** *f.* cheek  
**governatore** *m.* governor  
**governo** *m.* government  
**grammatica** *f.* grammar  
**grande** large, great  
**granducato** *m.* grand duchy  
**grasso** fat  
**grave** heavy  
**grazie** *f. pl.* thanks  
**grazioso** pretty, charming, graceful  
**greco** Greek  
**gridare** cry, shout  
**grigio** gray  
**grossezza** size, magnitude  
**grosso** big  
**gru** *f.* crane  
**gruppo** *m.* group  
**guadagnare** earn  
**guancia** *f.* cheek  
**guantaio** *m.* glover  
**guanto** *m.* glove  
**guardare** look, look at  
**guardia** *f.* conductor, guard  
**guarire** recover, be cured  
**guarnizione** *f.* trimming  
**guerra** *f.* war  
**guida** *f.* guide  
**gusto** *m.* taste  
  
**idea** *f.* idea  
**ieri** yesterday  
  
**ignorante** ignorant  
**il, i, the** (*m. sg. and pl.*)  
**illustre** illustrious  
**imbandire** serve (a meal)  
**immediatamente** immediately  
**imparare** learn  
**impari** odd, uneven  
**impedire** prevent, hinder  
**imperatore** *m.* emperor  
**impermeabile** *m.* rain-coat  
**impero** *m.* empire  
**impervio** impervious  
**impiccare** hang (a man)  
**impiegato** *m.* employee  
**imporre** (196) impose  
**importare** import  
**impossibile** impossible  
**impostare** post, mail  
**imprigionare** imprison  
**improvviso** unforeseen; all' ~ un-  
     expectedly  
**imprudente** imprudent  
**in** in, into  
**incassare** set  
**incasso** *m.* receipts  
**inchiostro** *m.* ink  
**incominciare** commence  
**incontrare** meet  
**indarno** in vain  
**indietro** back, backward  
**indipendenza** *f.* independence  
**individuo** individual  
**indomani** *m.* (the) next day  
**indovinare** guess  
**industria** *f.* industry  
**inesauribile** inexhaustible  
**infatti** in fact  
**infelice** unhappy  
**inferiore** inferior, lower  
**inferno** *m.* Inferno, hell



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<p> <b>infimo</b> lowest  <b>inganno</b> <i>m.</i> deceit  <b>ingegnere</b> <i>m.</i> engineer  <b>ingegno</b> <i>m.</i> talent, genius  <b>l'Inghilterra</b> <i>f.</i> England  <b>inglese</b> English  <b>Inglese</b> <i>m.</i> Englishman  <b>ingrato</b> ungrateful  <b>innalzare</b> raise  <b>insegna</b> <i>f.</i> shop sign  <b>insegnare</b> teach  <b>insieme</b> together  <b>insigne</b> remarkable  <b>insudiciare</b> soil  <b>intero</b> whole, entire  <b>intelligente</b> intelligent  <b>intendere</b> understand  <b>interrotto</b> interrupted  <b>intitolare</b> entitle  <b>intravedere</b> glimpse  <b>invecchiare</b> grow old  <b>invece</b> instead; on the contrary  <b>inverno</b> <i>m.</i> winter  <b>invviare</b> send  <b>io</b> I  <b>isola</b> <i>f.</i> island  <b>istituire</b> establish  <b>istitutore, -trice</b>, instructor, teacher  <b>istituzione</b> <i>f.</i> institution  <b>l'Italia</b> <i>f.</i> Italy  <b>italiano</b> Italian         </p>	<p> <b>lana</b> <i>f.</i> wool  <b>lanciare</b> throw  <b>lapis</b> <i>m.</i> pencil  <b>larghezza</b> <i>f.</i> width  <b>largo</b> wide  <b>lasciare</b> leave, allow  <b>latino</b> Latin  <b>latta</b> <i>f.</i> tin  <b>latte</b> <i>m.</i> milk  <b>lavamano</b> <i>m.</i> washstand  <b>lavarsi</b> bathe, wash  <b>lavorare</b> work  <b>lavoro</b> <i>m.</i> task  <b>lei</b> to her; the (<i>f. pl.</i>)  <b>legge</b> <i>f.</i> law  <b>leggendo</b> reading  <b>leggere</b> read  <b>leggiere</b> light; light-colored  <b>legno</b> <i>m.</i> wood; carriage  <b>lei</b> her; you, <i>sg.</i> (65, a)  <b>lettera</b> <i>f.</i> letter  <b>letteratura</b> <i>f.</i> literature  <b>letto</b> <i>p. p.</i> of <b>leggere</b>  <b>letto</b> <i>m.</i> bed  <b>levare</b> lift; <b>levarsi</b> rise; take off  <b>lezione</b> <i>f.</i> lesson  <b>li</b> them (<i>m.</i>)  <b>lì</b> there  <b>liberazione</b> <i>f.</i> liberation  <b>libero</b> free  <b>libertà</b> <i>f.</i> liberty  <b>libraio</b> <i>m.</i> bookseller  <b>libro</b> <i>m.</i> book  <b>licenza</b> <i>f.</i> leave  <b>lieto</b> gay, cheerful  <b>limone</b> <i>m.</i> lemon  <b>lingua</b> <i>f.</i> language; tongue  <b>lira</b> <i>f.</i> lira, twenty cents  <b>liscio</b> smooth, plain  <b>lite</b> <i>f.</i> lawsuit         </p>
--	---

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- livornese** Leghornese  
**Livorno** Leghorn  
**lò him**; the (*m. sg.*, 71, *b*)  
**lodare** praise  
**il Lombardo-Vēneto** Lombardo-Venetia  
**Londra** London  
**lontano (da)** distant (from)  
**loro** their, them; you, *pl.* (65, *a*)  
**lotta** *f.* struggle  
**lotto** *m.* lottery  
**lūglio** *m.* July  
**lui** him  
**Luigi** Louis  
**lume** *m.* light, lamp  
**lunedì** *m.* Monday  
**lunghezza** *f.* length  
**lungi** far  
**lungo** long  
**luogo** *m.* place  
**lusso** *m.* luxury  
**lustrare** polish, black  
**lustrascarpe** *m.* bootblack  
**lutto** *m.* mourning; a ∞ in mourning  
  
**ma** but  
**mācchia** *f.* stain; thicket; brambles  
**mācchina** *f.* machine; ∞ *da scrivere* typewriter  
**madre** *f.* mother  
**maestà** *f.* majesty  
**maestro, -a**, teacher  
**māggio** *m.* May  
**maggiore** greater; elder  
**mai** ever; non . . . ∞ never  
**malamente** badly  
**malanno** *m.* misfortune  
**malattia** *f.* illness  
**male** badly; far ∞ a hurt; non c' è ∞ pretty well; ∞ *di testa* headache  
  
**malgrado** *m.* displeasure; ∞ *che conj. w. subj.* notwithstanding that  
**mamma, mamma**, *f.* mamma  
**māmmola** *f.* violet  
**mancanza** *f.* lack; *sentire la* ∞ *di* miss  
**mancare** fail, be lacking  
**māncia** *f.* fee, tip  
**mandare** send  
**mane** *f.* morning (*poet.*); *da* ∞ a sera from morning till night  
**mangiare** eat  
**mānica** *f.* sleeve  
**mānico** *m.* handle  
**maniera** *f.* manner  
**mano** *f.* hand; a ∞ by hand; *di seconda* ∞ at second hand; *dar la* ∞ a shake hands with  
**māntice** *m.* bellows; automobile-top  
**mārcia** *f.* march  
**marciapiēde** *m.* sidewalk  
**mare** *m.* sea; *al* ∞ by the sea; *in* ∞ at sea  
**marina** *f.* navy  
**marinaio** *m.* sailor  
**marito** *m.* husband  
**martedì** *m.* Tuesday  
**martirio** *m.* martyrdom  
**marzo** *m.* March  
**māschera** *f.* mask  
**maschio** male  
**māssimo** greatest  
**matēria** *f.* subject, matter, material  
**mattina** *f.* morning  
**mazzolino** *m.* bouquet  
**medesimo** same, self  
**medicina** *f.* medicine  
**mēdico** *m.* physician  
**mēglio** better (*adv.*)  
**mēla** *f.* apple  
**memōria** *f.* memory

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<b>mēno</b> less ( <i>adv.</i> ); fare a ~ di do without; a ~ chē <i>conj. w. subj.</i> unless	<b>mīsero</b> miserable, wretched
<b>mēnte</b> <i>f.</i> mind; a ~ by heart	<b>mīšura</b> <i>f.</i> measure; su ~ to order
<b>mentire</b> lie	<b>mite</b> gentle
<b>mēntre</b> while	<b>Mōdena</b> a city in northern Italy
<b>merciaio</b> <i>m.</i> dry-goods merchant	<b>modenēse</b> of Modena
<b>mercoledì</b> <i>m.</i> Wednesday	<b>modērno</b> modern
<b>meridionale</b> southern	<b>modēsto</b> modest
<b>meritare</b> deserve	<b>modista</b> <i>f.</i> milliner
<b>mēse</b> <i>m.</i> month	<b>mōglie</b> ( <i>pl.</i> mōgli) <i>f.</i> wife
<b>mēssa</b> <i>f.</i> Mass	<b>mōlla</b> <i>f.</i> spring, mainspring
<b>mestiēre</b> <i>m.</i> trade, craft	<b>mōlle</b> <i>f. pl.</i> tongs
<b>metà</b> <i>f.</i> half	<b>moltitūdine</b> <i>f.</i> multitude
<b>metallo</b> <i>m.</i> metal	<b>mōlto, -i</b> , much, many
<b>mētro</b> <i>m.</i> meter	<b>momento</b> <i>m.</i> moment; a momenti in a minute
<b>metrōpoli</b> <i>f.</i> metropolis	<b>mōnaco</b> <i>m.</i> monk
<b>mēttēre</b> put, put on; mēttersi a be- gin; mēttersi a sedēre sit down	<b>monarca</b> <i>m.</i> monarch
<b>mēzzanotte</b> <i>f.</i> midnight	<b>monārchico</b> monarchical
<b>mēzzo</b> <i>m.</i> half; middle; in ~ a in the middle of	<b>mōndo</b> <i>m.</i> world
<b>mēzzogiorno</b> <i>m.</i> mid-day; south	<b>monēllo</b> <i>m.</i> rascal
<b>mī, mē, me</b>	<b>monēta</b> <i>f.</i> coin, piece of money
<b>mīglio</b> ( <i>pl.</i> miglia) <i>m.</i> mile	<b>montagna</b> <i>f.</i> mountain
<b>migliōre</b> better ( <i>adj.</i> )	<b>montare</b> mount, climb
<b>Milano</b> Milan	<b>montōne</b> <i>m.</i> sheep
<b>miliōne</b> <i>m.</i> million	<b>morire</b> (156) die
<b>militare</b> military	<b>mormorare</b> murmur
<b>militarišmo</b> <i>m.</i> militarism	<b>mōrte</b> <i>f.</i> death
<b>militarista</b> <i>m.</i> militarist	<b>mōrto</b> dead
<b>mille</b> thousand, a thousand	<b>mostrare</b> show
<b>mināccia</b> <i>f.</i> threat	<b>mōstro</b> <i>m.</i> monster
<b>minacciare</b> threaten	<b>mōto</b> <i>m.</i> motion
<b>miniēra</b> <i>f.</i> mine	<b>movimēto</b> <i>m.</i> movement
<b>mīnimo</b> least	<b>muggire</b> low
<b>ministro</b> <i>m.</i> member of Cabinet	<b>mughetto</b> <i>m.</i> lily-of-the-valley
<b>minōre</b> less; younger	<b>muōvere</b> (110, <i>d</i> , 1) move
<b>minuto</b> <i>m.</i> minute	<b>muricciuolo</b> <i>m.</i> low wall
<b>mio</b> my	<b>muro</b> <i>m.</i> wall
	<b>mušeo</b> <i>m.</i> museum
	<b>mutare</b> change; ~ di pensiero change one's mind

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- Nāpoli** Naples  
**nāscere** be born  
**nascōndere** hide  
**nascōsto** hidden; *di* ∞ secretly  
**nastro, nastrino, m.** ribbon  
**Natale m.** Christmas; **buōn** ∞  
     Merry Christmas  
**natura f.** nature  
**naturale** natural  
**navale** naval  
**nazionale** national  
**nazionalità f.** nationality  
**nazione f.** nation  
**ne adv.** thence; *pron.* of it, of them  
**nē conj.** neither, nor; ∞ . . . ∞ neither  
     . . . nor  
**nēbbia f.** fog  
**necessārio** necessary  
**negōzio m.** shop  
**nel, nello, nella, negli, nei, 75**  
**nemico m.** enemy  
**nemmēno** not even  
**neppure** nor . . . either; not even  
**nero** black  
**nessuno** no one  
**neve f.** snow  
**nevicare** snow  
**nido m.** nest  
**niēte** nothing; you're welcome  
**nipōte, nipotino, m.** nephew  
**nitrire** neigh  
**nō** no  
**nōbile** noble  
**nōce f.** walnut  
**nōi** we, us  
**nōia f.** annoyance; *dar* ∞ a annoy  
**nōiōso** annoying  
**nōme m.** name  
**nōn** not, no  
**nondimēno** nevertheless
- nōnno m.** grandfather, grandparent  
**nōno** ninth  
**nonostante chē conj. w. subj.** not-  
     withstanding that  
**nōstro** our, ours  
**notizie f. pl.** news  
**nōtte f.** night; *di* ∞ by night  
**novanta** ninety  
**nōve** nine  
**novēmbre m.** November  
**novità f.** novelty, notion  
**noziōne f.** notion, idea  
**nōzze f. pl.** wedding  
**nulla** nothing  
**nuōra f.** daughter-in-law  
**nuōvo** new; *di* ∞ again  
**nutrire** nourish
- o, ođ (39), or; o . . . o** either . . . or  
**o or o** now, well now  
**occaziōne f.** occasion, opportunity  
**ōcchio m.** eye; **a quattr' ōcchi** tête-à-  
     tête; *dar nell'* ∞ be conspicuous  
**occidentale** western  
**occōrrere impers.** need; **occorrente**  
     requisite, wanted  
**occupare** occupy  
**offrire** offer  
**oggĭ** to-day  
**ogni** every  
**ognuno** every one  
**olmo m.** elm  
**ombrello m.** umbrella  
**ōnda f.** wave  
**onomāstico m.** saint's-day  
**onōre m.** honor  
**ōpera f.** work  
**operaio m.** workman  
**ōra** now; *ōr* ∞ just now; *ōr sōno* ago  
**oramāi, ormāi, henceforth**

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- ordinamento** *m.* arrangement  
**ordinare** order  
**ordine** *m.* order  
**orecchino** *m.* earring [deaf ear  
**orecchio** *m.* ear; ∞ *da mercante*  
**organizzazione** *f.* organization  
**orlo** *m.* edge  
**oro** *m.* gold  
**orologio** *m.* watch  
**orrore** *m.* horror  
**osare** dare  
**oscuro** obscure  
**osservare** observe  
**osso** *m.* bone  
**ottanta** eighty  
**ottavo** eighth  
**ottimo** best  
**otto** eight  
**ottobre** *m.* October  
**ove** where  
**ovvero** or else
- pacco** *m.* parcel  
**pace** *f.* peace  
**padre** *m.* father  
**padrone** *m.* landlord  
**paeşaggio** *m.* landscape  
**paese** *m.* country; village  
**pagare** pay, pay for  
**página** *f.* page  
**paglia** *f.* straw; *muovere* ∞ stir  
**paio** *m.* (*pl.* *paia*) pair  
**palazzo** *m.* palace  
**palla** *f.* ball  
**panchetto** *m.* footstool  
**pane** *m.* bread  
**paniere** *m.* basket  
**panna** *f.* whipped cream  
**panorama** *m.* view  
**Päolo** Paul
- paradişo** *m.* paradise  
**paragonare** compare  
**pareggiare** equal  
**parente** *m.* relative  
**parere** (161) appear  
**pari** even  
**Parigi** Paris  
**parlare** speak  
**pärroco** *m.* parish priest  
**parte** *f.* part, side, share  
**partire** depart  
**parvenire** (138) arrive  
**Pasqua** *f.* Easter  
**passare** pass  
**passeggiare** walk  
**passaggiata** *f.* walk; *fare una* ∞  
     take a walk  
**passaggio** *m.* walk  
**passo** *m.* step; passage  
**pasta** *f.* cake  
**patire** suffer  
**pätria** *f.* country, fatherland  
**patrimônio** *m.* patrimony  
**patriota** *m.* patriot  
**patto** *m.* bargain; *a* ∞ *che conj. w.*  
     *subj.* on condition that  
**paúra** *f.* fear; *aver* ∞ *di* be afraid of  
**paziienza** *f.* patience  
**pazzo** mad  
**peccato** *m.* sin; what a pity  
**peggio** worse (*adv.*)  
**peggiore** worse (*adj.*)  
**pei, pel, 75**  
**pele** *f.* skin  
**pellegrino** *m.* pilgrim  
**penna** *f.* pen; ∞ *a serbatoio* fountain  
     pen  
**pensare** think, reflect; ∞ *a* think of  
**pensiero** *m.* thought; *dar* ∞ *a* worry  
     (*tr.*); *stare in* ∞ worry (*intr.*)



## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- pensione** *f.* board; boarding-house;  
 boarding-school  
**pentirsi** repent  
**per** for; **per uno** apiece  
**pera** *f.* pear  
**perchè** why; because; so that  
**perciò** therefore  
**pèrdere** lose  
**peregrinare** wander, go on pilgrim-  
 age  
**pericolo** *m.* danger  
**pericoloso** dangerous  
**permesso** *m.* permission, permit me  
**permettere** permit  
**pero** *m.* pear-tree  
**però** however  
**perseguitare** persecute  
**persona** *f.* person  
**pesante** heavy  
**pesco** *m.* peach-tree  
**pèssimo** worst  
**Petrarca** Petrarch  
**petto** *m.* breast  
**pezzo** *m.* piece  
**piacere a (185)** please; **per** ~  
 please; **far** ~ **a do** a favor for  
**piaggia** *f.* slope  
**piangere** weep  
**pianista** *m.* pianist  
**piano** *m.* plain; *adv.* softly, gently  
**pianta** *f.* plant  
**piattino (m.) da tazza** saucer  
**piatto** *m.* plate, dish; course  
**piazza** *f.* square, open place  
**piccino** tiny  
**piccolo** small  
**piède** *m.* foot; **a pièdi** on foot  
**pièga** *f.* plait  
**il Piemonte** Piedmont  
**piemontese** Piedmontese  
**pieno** full  
**pietra** *f.* stone  
**prendere** take  
**piovere** rain  
**pittore** *m.* painter, artist  
**più** more  
**piuma** *f.* plume  
**piuolo** *m.* rung; **scala a piuoli** ladder  
**piuttosto** rather  
**pneumatico** *m.* tire  
**poco** *adv.* little, a little; *pl.* **pochi** *adj.*  
 few, a few; **a** ~ **a** ~ little by little  
**poeta** *m.* poet  
**poetare** poetize  
**poi** then  
**poichè** since (*causal*)  
**politica** *f.* politics  
**politico** *adj.* political; *m.* statesman  
**polvere** *f.* powder  
**pomeridiano** of the afternoon  
**pompare** pump  
**ponte** *m.* bridge  
**pontificio** papal, pontifical  
**popolo** *m.* people  
**porgere** stretch out  
**porre (196)** put  
**porta** *f.* door, gate  
**portare** carry  
**portata** *f.* reach, ability; **a** ~ **di**  
 mano within reach of one's hand  
**porto** *m.* harbor  
**posata** *f.* place at table, cover  
**posizione** *f.* position, location  
**possibile** possible  
**possibilità** *f.* possibility  
**posso** *1 sg. pres. ind. of potere*  
**posta** *f.* post, mail; **a** ~ on purpose  
**postale** postal; **cartolina** ~ post card  
**postino** *m.* postman  
**posto** *m.* place, room

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- potere (168)** can, be able; non ~ a meno di cannot help  
**potrēbbero** 3 *pl. past fut. of potere*  
**pōvero** poor  
**povertà** *f.* poverty  
**pranzare** dine  
**pranzo** *m.* dinner  
**pratica** *f.* practice  
**pratico** practical; ~ di familiar with  
**prato** *m.* meadow  
**preferire** prefer  
**pregare** ask, pray  
**pregio** *m.* value  
**prego** don't mention it  
**prēndere** take; prēndersela take offense  
**preoccuparsi di** be concerned with  
**preparare** prepare  
**preſentare** present  
**preſidente** *m.* president  
**prestare** lend  
**preſto** quickly, soon  
**presumere** assume  
**prevalere (220)** prevail  
**prezioso** precious  
**prezzo** *m.* price  
**prigione** *f.* prison  
**prima** before, earlier; quanto ~ as soon as possible; ~ che *conj. w. subj.* before; ~ di *prep.* before  
**primavera** *f.* spring  
**primitivo** primitive  
**primo** first  
**principale** principal  
**principe** *m.* prince  
**principessa** *f.* princess  
**principiare** begin  
**principio** *m.* beginning; fin dal ~ from the first  
**problema** *m.* problem  
**produzione** *f.* production  
**professore** *m.* professor  
**profondamente** profoundly  
**proibire** prevent, forbid  
**promettere** promise  
**pronto** ready; all aboard  
**proprietà** *f.* property  
**prōprio** own; exactly  
**prova** *f.* trial; fitting  
**provare** try, try on  
**prudente** prudent  
**pulire** clean  
**punire** punish  
**puntare** aim  
**punto** *m.* point  
**purchè** *conj. w. subj.* provided that  
**pure** however; pray  
**purgatōrio** *m.* purgatory  
  
**qua** here  
**quaderno** *m.* note-book  
**quadrettino** *m.* check  
**quadro** *m.* picture  
**qualche** (*sg. only*) some  
**quale, -i**, such as  
**qualora** whenever  
**qualunque** whatever  
**quando** when  
**quanto** how much; in ~ a as for, regarding; per ~ however  
**quaranta** forty  
**quarto** *m.* quarter, fourth  
**quattōrdici** fourteen  
**quattro** four  
**quello** that; quel che that which, what  
**quercia** *f.* oak  
**queſto** this; queſt' altro next, coming

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- quiete** *f.* quiet  
**quindici** fifteen  
**quinto** fifth
- raccomandare** mend; recommend;  
**raccomandarsi** warn, urge  
**raccomandazione** *f.* warning, recom-  
 mendation  
**raccontare** narrate  
**rado** rare; di  $\infty$  seldom  
**raffreddore** *m.* cold; **prendere un  $\infty$**   
 catch cold  
**ragazza** *f.* girl  
**ragazzo** *m.* boy  
**ragione** *f.* reason; **avere  $\infty$**  be right  
**rallentare** slacken speed  
**rame** *m.* copper, brass  
**rappresentare** represent  
**re** *m.* king  
**reale** royal  
**recare** bring, take; **recarsi** take one's  
 way  
**recente** recent; di  $\infty$  recently  
**recluta** *f.* recruit  
**redimere** redeem  
**redingote** (*Fr.*) *f.* frock-coat  
**reggere** rule  
**Reggio** a city in northern Italy  
**regina** *f.* queen  
**regnante** *m.* ruler  
**regno** *m.* kingdom  
**relativo** relating  
**remo** *m.* oar; **barca a  $\infty$**  row-boat  
**Reno** Rhine  
**repubblicano** republican  
**resistenza** *f.* resistance  
**restare** remain  
**resto** *m.* rest; change (money)  
**rete** *f.* net  
**retta** *f.* heed; **dar  $\infty$**  give heed
- riabbracciare** embrace again  
**riaprire** reopen  
**riavere** recover, get back  
**ricco** rich  
**ricevere** receive  
**richiedere** demand  
**ricontare** count over  
**ricordarsi di** remember  
**ridare** give again, give back  
**ridere** laugh  
**ridicolo** ridiculous  
**rifare** remake, rebuild  
**rifiutare** refuse  
**rigato** striped  
**rigoroso** rigorous  
**rimanere** (129) remain  
**rimedio** *m.* remedy; **non c'è  $\infty$**  there  
 is no help for it  
**rimproverare** reprove  
**rimprovero** *m.* reproof  
**rincrescere** *impers.* pain, cause sor-  
 row; **mi rincresce** I'm sorry  
**rinomato** famous  
**rinunziare a** renounce  
**riparare** take refuge  
**ripetere** repeat  
**risata** *f.* laugh, laughter  
**rischio** *m.* risk  
**riso** *m.* laugh  
**risorgimento** *m.* resurrection  
**risparmiare** save, spare  
**rispettabile** respectable  
**rispondere** respond  
**risultato** *m.* result  
**ritornare** return  
**ritratto** *m.* portrait  
**riunire** assemble  
**riuscire** (204) succeed  
**rivedere** see again; **a rivederla**  
 au revoir

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- rivoltare** turn back  
**rivoluzionario** revolutionary  
**rōba** (*collective*) *f.* things  
**rocchetto** *m.* spool  
**Rōma** Rome  
**romanzo** *m.* novel  
**rōmpere** break  
**rōsa** *f.* rose  
**rosso** red  
**rōta** *f.* wheel  
**rotare** (110, *d*) turn  
**rovescio** *m.* reverse side; a ∼ up-  
 side down; piōvere a ∼ rain in  
 torrents  
**rōzzo** rough  
**rumoroso** noisy
- sābato** *m.* Saturday  
**sacco** *m.* bag  
**sacrificio** *m.* sacrifice  
**sacro** sacred  
**sala** *f.* hall; ∼ da pranzo dining-room  
**salire** go up  
**salita** *f.* rise, slope  
**salone** *m.* parlor  
**salotto** *m.* sitting-room  
**saltare in aria** be blown up  
**salutare** salute  
**salute** *f.* health, safety, salvation  
**saluto** *m.* greeting  
**salvare** save  
**salvezza** *f.* safety  
**salvo** safe; in ∼ in safety  
**sangue** *m.* blood  
**santo** *m.* saint; *adj.* holy  
**santo, san, Saint**  
**sapere** (132) learn, know, know  
 how; ∼ di smack of  
**sapiēte** wise  
**saracino** Saracen
- sarta** *f.* dressmaker  
**sarto** *m.* tailor  
**sāvio** wise  
**la Savgia** Savoy  
**şbadigliare** yawn  
**şbagliare** make a mistake  
**şbarazzare** rid  
**şbarcare** land  
**şbarco** *m.* disembarkation  
**şbāttere** rout  
**scaffale** *m.* shelf  
**scala** *f.* stair; ∼ a chiōciola winding  
 stair; ∼ a piūgli ladder  
**scalino** *m.* step of stair  
**scarafāggio** *m.* beetle  
**scārico** run down; free, unburdened  
**scarpa** *f.* shoe  
**scātola** *f.* box  
**scēgliere** (211) choose  
**scellerato** criminal  
**scēndere** descend  
**schianto** *m.* crash  
**schippo** *m.* gun  
**sciēnza** *f.* science  
**scintilla** *f.* spark  
**sciolto** loose  
**sciōpero** *m.* strike  
**sciupare** spoil  
**scōglio** *m.* reef  
**scolare** *m.* pupil  
**scolāstico** scholastic  
**scollato** low-necked  
**scommessa** *f.* wager  
**scompartimento** *m.* compartment  
**scōpo** *m.* purpose  
**scoppiare** burst  
**scoprire** discover  
**scorso** last, past  
**scozese** Scotch; checked, plaid  
**scricchiolare** creak

# ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

**scrittore** *m.* writer  
**scrivere** write  
**scudo** *m.* shield  
**scuola** *f.* school  
**scuotere** (110, *d*, 1) shake  
**scuro** dark  
**scusa** *f.* excuse  
**se** if  
**se** 3 *sg.* and *pl. disj. refl.*  
**sebbene** *conj. w. subj.* although  
**secolo** *m.* century  
**secondo** second; *prep.* according to  
**sedere** sit  
**sedici** sixteen  
**seggiola** *f.* chair  
**segno** *m.* sign  
**segreto** *m.* secret  
**seguire** follow  
**seguire** follow  
**sei** six  
**seicento** six hundred  
**selva** *f.* forest  
**selvaggio** wild, savage  
**sembrare** seem  
**semplice** simple  
**sempre** always  
**senatore** *m.* senator  
**Senna** *f.* Seine  
**sentimento** *m.* sentiment  
**sentinella** *f.* sentinel  
**sentire** feel  
**senza** without  
**sepolcreto** *m.* cemetery  
**sera** *f.* evening; *buona* ∼ good after-  
noon, good evening  
**serbatoio** *m.* reservoir; *penna a* ∼  
fountain pen  
**serenamente** serenely  
**serio** serious; *sul* ∼ seriously  
**serrare** lock

**servire** serve; ∼ *di* serve as; *ser-*  
*virsi di* make use of  
**servizio, servizino**, *m.* service  
**sessanta** sixty  
**sesto** sixth  
**seta** *f.* silk  
**sete** *f.* thirst; *aver* ∼ be thirsty  
**settanta** seventy  
**sette** seven  
**settembre** *m.* September  
**settimana** *f.* week  
**settimo** seventh  
**sfacciato** bold  
**sgonfiato** empty, flat, deflated  
**sgridare** scold  
**si** 3 *sg.* and *pl. refl. pron.*  
**si** yes; so  
**sia** *sg. subj. of* *essere*  
**siamo** 1 *pl. pres. ind. of* *essere*  
**siccome** as, since  
**la Sicilia** Sicily  
**sicuro** sure  
**signora** *f.* lady, married woman,  
Mrs.  
**signore** *m.* gentleman, sir, Mr.  
**signorina** *f.* young lady, unmarried  
woman, Miss  
**silenzio** *m.* silence  
**simbolo** *m.* symbol  
**simpatico** nice, sympathetic, con-  
genial  
**sincerità** *f.* sincerity  
**sincero** sincere  
**singulto** *m.* sob  
**sinistro** left  
**slittare** slide  
**smarrirsi** lose one's way  
**sociale** social  
**socialista** *m.* socialist  
**sodisfatto** satisfied



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- sodo** hard, solid · **cappello** ∼ Derby hat  
**soffrire** suffer  
**soggetto** *adj.* subject; *m.* subject  
**soggezione** *f.* subjection; timidity, embarrassment; **aver** ∼ be timid, nervous  
**soglia** *f.* threshold  
**sognare** dream  
**sogno** *m.* dream  
**soldato** *m.* soldier  
**sole** *m.* sun  
**soleenne** solemn  
**sólito**: **per il** ∼ usually; **come al** ∼ as usual  
**solitüdine** *f.* solitude  
**solo** single, only (*adj.*)  
**soltanto** only (*adv.*)  
**somma** *f.* sum  
**sommo** highest, supreme  
**sonare** (110, *d*) ring, play  
**sonnecchiare** nap  
**sonno** *m.* sleep; **aver** ∼ be sleepy  
**sopräbito** *m.* overcoat  
**soprattutto** above all  
**sopravvivere** survive  
**sorbire** sip  
**sorella** *f.* sister  
**sorellina** *f.* little sister  
**sorpreša** *f.* surprise  
**sorte** *f.* kind; lot  
**sortire** go out  
**sostegno** *m.* support  
**sottana** *f.* petticoat, skirt  
**sotterräneo** underground  
**sotto** under  
**la Spagna** Spain  
**spagnuolo** Spanish  
**spalla** *f.* shoulder  
**sparare** fire
- spärgere** scatter  
**sparire** disappear  
**spasso** *m.* walk; **andare a** ∼ go to walk  
**spaventare** frighten  
**späzzola** *f.* brush  
**speciale** special  
**spēcie** *f.* kind, sort; **far** ∼ a surprise  
**speculatore** *m.* speculator  
**spedale** *m.* hospital  
**spedire** send  
**speditamente** fluently  
**sperare** hope  
**spesa** *f.* expense  
**spesso** often  
**spettäcolo** *m.* spectacle  
**spezzare** destroy, tear to pieces  
**spia** *f.* spy  
**spicciarsi** hasten  
**spiegare** unfold  
**spirito** *m.* spirit  
**spörgersi** lean out  
**sportello** *m.* ticket window, car window  
**sta'** 2 *sg. imper. of stare*  
**stagione** *f.* season; **mezza** ∼ between seasons  
**stamane** this morning  
**stampa** *f.* press  
**stancarsi** become tired  
**stanco** tired  
**stanotte** to-night; last night  
**stanza** *f.* room  
**stare** (166) be, stay; ∼ di casa reside  
**starnutire** sneeze  
**starò** 1 *sg. fut. ind. of stare*  
**stasera** this evening; this afternoon  
**stato** *m.* state

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- statuto** *m.* constitution  
**staziōne** *f.* station  
**Stēfano** Stephen  
**sterzare** turn (a vehicle)  
**stēsso** same, self; **io** ∼ I myself  
**stimare** consider  
**stivale** *m.* boot  
**stōffa** *f.* goods  
**stōria** *f.* history, story  
**strada** *f.* road; ∼ **sotterrānea** under-ground railway  
**strage** *f.* butchery  
**straniēre** *m.* foreigner, alien  
**straordinārio** extraordinary  
**strapazzo** *m.* abuse  
**strēpito** *m.* noise  
**strētto** narrow; *p. p.* of **stringere**  
**stringa** *f.* shoe-lace  
**stringere** squeeze, press  
**strumento** *m.* instrument  
**studiare** study  
**stūdio** *m.* study  
**studiōso** studious  
**stupefatto** amazed  
**su, sur** (39), on; above  
**sūbito** immediately  
**sublime** sublime  
**succēdere a** succeed (*tr.*)  
**succhiare** suck  
**sugli, sui, sul, sullo, sulla, 75**  
**suo** his, her  
**suōcero** *m.* father-in-law  
**suolo** *m.* soil  
**superiōre** upper, superior  
**superiorità** *f.* superiority  
**supplizio** *m.* execution, torture  
**suprēmo** supreme  
**svēgliare** waken  
**svventura** *f.* misfortune  
**svizzero** Swiss  
**svogliato** unenthusiastic, unwilling  
**svoltare** swerve  
**tacco** *m.* heel of shoe  
**tacere** (185; 1 *pl. ind. pres. taciamo*)  
     be silent  
**tagliare** cut  
**tale** such; **un** ∼ such a  
**Tamigi** Thames  
**tanto, -i**, so much, so many  
**tardi** late; **far** ∼ be late  
**tasca** *f.* pocket  
**tassa** *f.* tax  
**tāvola** *f.* table  
**tazza** *f.* cup  
**tē** *m.* tea  
**teatro** *m.* theater  
**tedesco** German  
**tēla** *f.* linen  
**telefonare** telephone  
**tēma** *m.* theme  
**tēma** *f.* fear  
**temere** fear  
**tēmpo** *m.* time, weather; **a** ∼ on time; **per** ∼ early; **col** ∼ in time, in the course of time; **fa bēl** ∼ it is fine weather  
**tenere** hold  
**terminare** terminate  
**termosifone** *m.* hot-water furnace  
**tērra** *f.* earth  
**terrazza** *f.* balcony  
**terribile** terrible  
**territōrio** *m.* territory  
**tērzo** third  
**tēsa** *f.* hat-brim  
**tēsta** *f.* head  
**Tēvere** *m.* Tiber  
**ti, tē, thee**  
**tiēne** 3 *sg. ind. pres. of tenere*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- tingere tinge; tingersi be colored  
 tipico typical  
 tirannia *f.* tyranny  
 tiranno *m.* tyrant  
 tirare pull; ∞ vento blow; ∞ via  
 continue  
 toccare touch; ∞ a concern, be the  
 turn of  
 tocco *m.* stroke of bell; al ∞ at one  
 P.M.  
 Tommaso Thomas  
 tonare (110, *d*) thunder  
 tono *m.* tone, tint  
 tornaconto *m.* advantage  
 tornare return; ∞ conto (*a*) come  
 out right, be of advantage (*to*)  
 torre *f.* tower  
 torrente *m.* torrent  
 torto *m.* wrong; aver ∞ be wrong  
 la Toscana Tuscany  
 tossire cough  
 tovaglia *f.* tablecloth  
 tra between, among  
 tradimento *m.* betrayal, treachery  
 tradire betray  
 traditore, -tora *or* -trice, traitor,  
 traitress  
 tranne except; ∞ che *conj. w. subj.*  
 except that  
 trattare treat; trattarsi di be a  
 question of  
 tratto *m.* trait; a un ∞ suddenly,  
 all at once  
 traversare cross  
 travestire disguise  
 tre three  
 tredicesimo thirteenth  
 tredici thirteen  
 tremare tremble  
 tremendo tremendous
- treno *m.* train  
 trenta thirty  
 tricolore tri-colored  
 trionfo *m.* triumph  
 triplice triple  
 triplo triple  
 tristezza *f.* sadness  
 troppo too, too much  
 trovare find  
 truppe *f. pl.* troops  
 tu thou  
 tuo thy  
 tuono *m.* thunder  
 Turco Turk  
 tutto all
- ubbidire *a* obey  
 ubriaco drunk  
 uccello *m.* bird  
 udire (192) hear  
 ufficiale *m.* officer  
 uguale equal, 'exactly like  
 ultimo last  
 umano human  
 un a, one  
 undicesimo eleventh  
 undici eleven  
 unico only, unique  
 unità *f.* union  
 unito united  
 università *f.* university  
 uno (59, *b*), un, una, a, one  
 uomo *m.* (*pl.* uomini) man  
 uopo *m.* need; è d' ∞, fa d' ∞, it is  
 necessary  
 uovo *m.* (*pl.* uova) egg  
 urlo *m.* howl  
 urtare hurl  
 uscio *m.* exit, doorway  
 uscire (204) go out

## ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- uscita f.* exit  
*uva f.* grape  
  
*va* goes; *vabbene* very well  
*vacanza f.* vacation  
*vacca f.* cow  
*valere (220)* be worth; *valersi di*  
 avail oneself of  
*valigia f.* valise  
*valle f.* valley  
*vampiro m.* vampire  
*vanno 3 pl. ind. pres. of andare*  
*vasto* vast  
*vecchio* old  
*vedere* sees  
*vedere* see; *non ~ l'ora di* not be  
 able to wait to, long to  
*vedetta f.* sentinel  
*vela f.* sail; *far ~* set sail  
*vendemmia f.* vintage  
*vendere* sell  
*vendita f.* sale  
*venerdì m.* Friday  
*Venezia* Venice  
*veneziano* Venetian  
*venire (138)* come  
*ventaglio m.* fan  
*venti* twenty  
*vento m.* wind; *tirar ~* blow  
*veramente* truly  
*verde* green  
*vergogna f.* shame  
*vergognarsi* be ashamed  
*verità f.* truth  
*vero* true  
*verso* towards  
*vestiario m.* wardrobe; *roba da ~*  
 clothing  
*vestirsi* dress oneself  
*vestito, vestitino, m.* dress  
  
*vettura f.* carriage  
*vi, ve, adv.* = *ci*; *pron.* you (*dat.*  
*and acc.*)  
*via adv.* off, away; *è via dicendo et*  
*cetera*  
*via f.* street  
*viaggiare* travel  
*viaggiatore m.* traveler  
*viaggio m.* journey; *buon ~* a pleas-  
 ant journey to you  
*vicenda f.* turn; *a ~* in turn  
*vicino m.* neighbor; *~ a prep.* near  
*viene 2 sg. pres. ind. of venire*  
*vile* cowardly  
*villa f.* country-place  
*vincere* conquer, win  
*vinto p.p. of vincere*  
*virtù f.* virtue, power  
*visita f.* visit; *fare una ~* a call  
 upon  
*visitare* visit  
*viso m.* face  
*vista f.* view; *far ~ di* make a pre-  
 tense of  
*visto p.p. of vedere*  
*vita f.* life  
*vite f.* grape-vine  
*vittima f.* victim  
*vittoria f.* victory  
*Vittorio Emanuele* Victor Emman-  
 uel  
*vittorioso* victorious  
*vivacità f.* vivacity  
*vivere* live, be alive  
*vivo* alive  
*vogliamo 1 pl. pres. ind. of volere*  
*voglio 1 sg. pres. ind. of volere*  
*voi* you  
*volante m.* steering-wheel  
*volentieri* gladly, willingly

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<p><b>volere</b> (133) wish, will; ∞ bene a love  <b>volontà</b> <i>f.</i> will  <b>volta</b> <i>f.</i> time, a time; una ∞ once  <b>voltarsi</b> turn (<i>intr.</i>)  <b>voluto</b> desired, willed; <i>p.p.</i> of volere  <b>lere</b></p>	<p><b>Vossignoria</b> <i>f.</i> Your Lordship  <b>voſtro</b> your  <b>vuole</b> 3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of volere</i>  <b>zia</b> <i>f.</i> aunt  <b>zio</b> <i>m.</i> uncle  <b>zitto</b> hush</p>
--	---



## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- a, an, un, uno, una**  
**able** capace; *be* ∞ potere  
**aboard** a bordo; *all* ∞ pronti  
**about** *prep.* intorno a, dintorno a;  
*adv.* circa; *be* ∞ to star per  
**absurd** assurdo  
**abuse** strapazzo *m.*  
**accept** accettare  
**accompany** accompagnare  
**according to** secondo  
**account** bilancio *m.*  
**accustom** avvezzare, abituare  
**ache** dolore  
**acquaintance** conoscenza *f.*  
**acquainted with**: *be* ∞ conōscere  
**acquire** acquistare  
**act** agire  
**Adriatic** *adj.* adriatico  
**advantage** vantaggio, tornaconto *m.*;  
*be of* ∞ to tornar conto a  
**advice** consiglio *m.*  
**adviser** consigliere *m.*  
**affair** affare *m.*  
**affectionate** affezionato  
**afraid**: *be* ∞ (of) aver paura (di)  
**after** *prep.* dopo; *conj.* dopo che  
**afternoon** dopopranzo *m.*; *adj.* po-  
 meridiano; *good* ∞ buona sera  
**afterward** dopo  
**again** di nuovo  
**against** contro, contra  
**age** età *f.*; *at the* ∞ *of* in età di  
**ago** fa, or sono  
**agree** accordarsi  
**ahead** avanti; *straight* ∞ diritto  
**aim** puntare  
**air** aria *f.*  
**alive** vivo  
**all** tutto; *above* ∞ soprattutto  
**already** già  
**also** anche  
**alter** alterare  
**always** sempre  
**amazed** stupefatto  
**ambition** ambizione *f.*  
**America** l' Amērica *f.*  
**American** americano  
**among** tra, fra  
**amuse** divertire; ∞ oneself divertirsi  
**ancient** antico, -chi  
**and** e, e d  
**anger** cōllera *f.*  
**annoy** dar noia a  
**annoyance** noia *f.*  
**anthology** antologia *f.*  
**any** *adj.* alcuno; *pron.* ne  
**anything** qualunque cosa, ogni cosa  
**apartment** appartamento *m.*  
**apiece** per uno  
**appear** comparire  
**apple** pomo *m.*; mēla *f.*  
**approach** avvicinarsi a  
**April** aprile *m.*  
**Aristotle** Aristōtile  
**arm** braccio *m.*  
**arms** armi *f. pl.*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- army** eșĕrcito *m.*  
**arrangement** ordinamento *m.*  
**arrive** arrivare, giungere, parvenire  
**art** arte *f.*  
**artist** artista *c.*  
**as** siccome; ∞ for in quanto a  
**ashamed**: be ∞ vergognarsi  
**ask (for)** domandare (di)  
**assemble** riunirsi  
**assume** presumere  
**at** a, ad  
**attention**: pay ∞ stare attento  
**attentive** attento  
**attract** attrarre  
**August** agosto *m.*  
**Augustine** Agostino  
**aunt** zia *f.*  
**Austrian** austriaco  
**author** autore, scrittore *m.*  
**automobile** automobile *c.*  
**autumn** autunno *m.*  
**avail oneself (of)** valersi (di)  
**avoid** evitare  
**await** attendere, aspettare  
**away** via  
  
**baby** bimbo, -a  
**back** dōsso *m.*; at the ∞ of in fondo a; on the ∞ of addōsso a  
**bad** cattivo; too ∞! peccato!  
**badly** male  
**bag** sacco *m.*, borsa *f.*  
**baggage** bagaglio *m.*; ∞ room bagagliaio, depōsito *m.*  
**baker** fornaio *m.*  
**balcony** terrazza *f.*  
**ball** palla *f.*  
**band** banda *f.*  
**basket** paniĕre *m.*  
**bath** bagno *m.*  
  
**battle** battaglia *f.*  
**be** ĕssere  
**beach** spiaggia *f.*  
**bearings** *see* compass  
**beat** bātere  
**beautiful** bello  
**beauty** bellezza *f.*  
**because** perchĕ  
**become** diventare, divenire  
**bed** letto *m.*  
**bed-room** cāmera (*f.*) da letto  
**bee** ape *f.*  
**beetle** scarafaggio *m.*  
**before (time)** *adv.* prima; *prep.* prima di; *conj.* prima chĕ  
**before (place)** *prep.* innanzi a, dinanzi a, davanti a; *adv.* avanti, innanzi  
**begin** cominciare, principiare  
**beginning** principio *m.*  
**behind** *adv.* indietro, diĕtro; *prep.* diĕtro a  
**Belgian** belga  
**Belgium** il Bĕlgio  
**believe** crĕdere  
**belong** appartenĕre  
**below** *prep.* sōtto; *adv.* abbasso  
**benefit** beneficio *m.*  
**best** *adj.* il migliore; *adv.* il meglio; do one's ∞ fare di tutto, fare il possibile  
**betray** tradire  
**better** *adj.* migliore; *adv.* meglio  
**between** fra  
**beyond** *prep.* al di là di, di là da, oltre  
**big** grōsso  
**bill** conto *m.*  
**bird** uccĕllo *m.*  
**birthday** giorno natale, compleanno *m.*

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- black** nēro  
**blame** çolpa *f.*; *v.* biaşmare, dare  
     addoşso a  
**blind** cięco  
**blood** sangue *m.*  
**bloom** fiorire; in ∞ fiorito  
**blotter** cartasuga, cartasugante *f.*  
**blow** tirar vęnto; ∞ up saltare in aria  
**blue** azzurro, celęste  
**board, boarding-house, boarding-**  
     **school, pensione** *f.*  
**boat** barca *f.*  
**boil** bollire  
**bold** ardito  
**book** libro *m.*  
**bookseller** libraio *m.*  
**boot** stivale *m.*; ∞ **black** lustra-  
     scarpe *m.*  
**born** nato; be ∞ nāscere  
**both** tutt' e due, entrambi  
**bottom** fōndo *m.*; at the ∞ of in  
     fōndo a  
**boundary** confine *m.*  
**bouquet** mazzolino *m.*  
**Bourbon** Borbone *m.*  
**box** scātola *f.*  
**boy** ragazzo *m.*  
**brain** cervęllo *m.*  
**breach** bręccia *f.*  
**bread** pane *m.*  
**break** rōmpere  
**breast** pętto *m.*  
**bridge** pōnte *m.*  
**brim** (hat-) tęsa *f.*  
**bring** portare  
**Britannic** britānnico  
**brother** fratęllo *m.*  
**brother-in-law** cognato *m.*  
**brush** spāzzola *f.*  
**bunch** mazzolino *m.*  
**burn** ārdere, bruciare  
**but** ma  
**butchery** strage *f.*  
**butter** burro *m.*  
**buy** comprare  
**by** da; (beside) accanto a  
**café** caffę *m.*  
**cake** pasta *f.*  
**call** chiamare; ∞ on far vīşita a; be  
     called chiamarsi  
**can, be able, potęre**  
**cane** bastōne *m.*  
**cannon** canņone *m.*  
**caress** carezza *f.*  
**carnation** garq̄fano *m.*  
**carriage** carrōzza, vettura *f.*, lęgno *m.*  
**carry** portare  
**case** caşo *m.*; in any ∞ in ogni caşo  
**cash**: in ∞ a contanti  
**castle** castęllo *m.*  
**cathedral** duqmo *m.*, cattedrale *f.*  
**cease** cessare [cimitero *m.*  
**cemetery** sepolcreto, campo santo,  
**central** centrale  
**century** sęcolo *m.*  
**ceremony**: stand on ∞ far compli-  
     menti  
**chair** sęggiola *f.*  
**change** mutare, cambiare; ∞ one's  
     mind mutar di pensięro; *n.* (*money*)  
     reşto *m.*  
**chapter** capītolo *m.*  
**charcoal-burner** carbonaro *m.*  
**Charles** Carlo  
**chase** cacciare  
**chat** chiacchierare  
**cheek** guāncia *f.*  
**child** fanciullo, -a, bambino, -a  
**chocolate** cioccolata *f.*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<p>choose scēgliere  <b>Christian</b> cristiano  <b>Christmas</b> Natale <i>m.</i>; <b>Merry</b> ∼              Buon Natale  <b>Christopher</b> Cristōforo  <b>church</b> chiesa <i>f.</i>  <b>citizen</b> cittadino <i>m.</i>  <b>city</b> città <i>f.</i>  <b>civilization</b> civiltà <i>f.</i>  <b>civilized</b> civile  <b>clap</b> (one's hands) bättere (le mani)  <b>Clara</b> Chiara  <b>class</b> classe <i>f.</i>  <b>classic</b> clässico  <b>close</b> chiüdere  <b>coast</b> cōsta <i>f.</i>  <b>coffee</b> caffè <i>m.</i>  <b>coin</b> monēta <i>f.</i>  <b>cold</b> frēddo; <b>be</b> ∼ aver frēddo; <b>it</b>              is ∼ fa frēddo; <b>catch</b> ∼ prēndere              un raffredöre  <b>collar</b> collare <i>m.</i>; <b>coat</b> ∼ bāvero <i>m.</i>  <b>college</b> (<i>of University</i>) facoltà <i>f.</i>  <b>color</b> colöre <i>m.</i>; <b>be colored</b> tingersi  <b>Columbus</b> Colōmbo  <b>come</b> venire  <b>comfortable</b> cōmodo; <b>make oneself</b>              ∼ accomodarsi  <b>command</b> comandare, ordinare  <b>commence</b> cominciare  <b>communicate</b> comunicare  <b>companion</b> compagno, -a  <b>compartment</b> scompartimēto <i>m.</i>  <b>compass</b> büssola <i>f.</i>  <b>complain</b> lagnarsi  <b>compliment</b> complimentō <i>m.</i>  <b>condition</b> condiziōne <i>f.</i>; <b>on</b> ∼ <b>that</b>              a patto che (<i>v. subj.</i>)  <b>conduct</b> condurre  <b>conductor</b> guärdia <i>f.</i></p>	<p><b>congenial</b> simpätico  <b>connecting</b> comunicante  <b>conqueror</b> conquistatore <i>m.</i>  <b>consciousness</b> coscienza <i>f.</i>  <b>consist</b> (of) consistere (in)  <b>constitution</b> statuto <i>m.</i>  <b>consul</b> cōnsole <i>m.</i>  <b>continue</b> continuare  <b>contrary</b> contrario; <b>on the</b> ∼ in-              veçe  <b>convenient</b> cōmodo  <b>conversation</b> conversaziōne <i>f.</i>  <b>cook</b> cuōco <i>m.</i>; <i>v.</i> cuōcere, fare la              cucina  <b>cookery</b> cucina <i>f.</i>  <b>copper</b> rame <i>m.</i>  <b>corner</b> āngolo <i>m.</i>; <b>be at the</b> ∼ of              far āngolo cōn  <b>corporal</b> caporale <i>m.</i>  <b>correct</b> corrìgere  <b>correspond</b> corrispōndere  <b>cost</b> costare  <b>cotton</b> cotone <i>m.</i>  <b>cough</b> tossire  <b>count</b> cōnte <i>m.</i>; <i>v.</i> contare  <b>countess</b> contessa <i>f.</i>  <b>country</b> (<i>rural</i>) campagna <i>f.</i>; (<i>polit.</i>)              paēse <i>m.</i>; (<i>fatherland</i>) pätria <i>f.</i>  <b>couple</b> cōppia <i>f.</i>  <b>courage</b> coraggio <i>m.</i>  <b>course</b> cōrsa <i>f.</i>; <b>of</b> ∼ naturalmēte  <b>cousin</b> cugino, -a  <b>cover</b> coprire  <b>cow</b> vacca <i>f.</i>  <b>cowardly</b> vile  <b>crane</b> gru <i>c.</i>  <b>criminal</b> scellerato  <b>crusade</b> crociata <i>f.</i>  <b>cry</b> grido <i>m.</i>; <i>v.</i> gridare  <b>cup</b> tazza <i>f.</i></p>
---	---

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- cut tagliare  
 Cyrus Ciro
- daily quotidiano  
 dairy cascina *f.*  
 damage danno *m.*; *v.* dannare  
 danger pericolo *m.*  
 dangerous pericoloso  
 dark buio *m.*; *adj.* scuro  
 daughter figlia *f.*  
 daughter-in-law nuora *f.*  
 dawn alba *f.*  
 day giorno *m.*; period of a  $\infty$  giornata *f.*;  $\infty$  by  $\infty$  giorno a giorno; by the  $\infty$  a giornata; by  $\infty$  di giorno  
 daybreak: at  $\infty$  sul far del giorno  
 dead morto  
 dear caro  
 death morte *f.*  
 deceit inganno *m.*  
 December dicembre *m.*  
 declare dichiarare  
 defeat sconfitta *f.*  
 defend difendere  
 defense difesa *f.*  
 degenerate degenerare  
 demand richiedere  
 depart partire  
 depress deprimere  
 descend scendere  
 desire desiderio *m.*; *v.* desiderare  
 desired voluto  
 dessert dolce *m.*  
 dialogue diàlogo *m.*  
 die morire  
 difficult difficile  
 dine deşinare, pranzare  
 dining-room sala *f.* da pranzo  
 dint: by  $\infty$  of a forza di
- direct dirigere  
 direction direzione  
 disagreeable sgradēvole  
 disappear sparire  
 discover scoprire  
 disembarkation sbarco *m.*  
 disguise travestire  
 dish piatto *m.*  
 displease dispiacere a  
 distant lontano, discosto  
 disturb disturbare  
 divide dividere  
 do fare; *aux.* 62, b, 1; how do you  $\infty$ ?  
 come sta?  
 dog cane *m.*  
 domestic domēstico  
 done fatto  
 door porta *f.*  
 double doppio  
 doubt dūbbio *m.*; *v.* dubitare  
 down giù;  $\infty$  there laggiù, costaggiù;  
 $\infty$  town al centro;  $\infty$  stairs abbasso  
 dozen dozzina *f.*  
 dramatic drammatico  
 dream sogno *m.*; *v.* sognare  
 dress vestito *m.*;  $\infty$  oneself vestirsi  
 dressmaker sarta *f.*  
 drive condurre;  $\infty$  out cacciare  
 drunk ubriaco [ducato *m.*  
 duchy ducato *m.*; grand  $\infty$  grande  
 duke duca *m.*  
 dumpling gnocco *m.*  
 duty dovere *m.*  
 dwell abitare, dimorare
- each ciascuno  
 ear orecchio *m.*  
 early per tempo  
 earth terra *f.*  
 east levante *m.*



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<b>Easter</b> Pasqua <i>f.</i>	<b>ever</b> mai
<b>eastern</b> orientale	<b>every</b> ogni
<b>easy</b> facile	<b>everybody</b> ognuno, tutti
<b>echo</b> eco <i>c.</i>	<b>everything</b> tutto
<b>effect</b> effettuare	<b>everywhere</b> dappertutto
<b>egg</b> uovo <i>m.</i>	<b>evil</b> male <i>m.</i>
<b>eight</b> otto	<b>except</b> tranne
<b>eighteen</b> diciotto	<b>excursion</b> gita <i>f.</i>
<b>eighteenth</b> dēcimo ottavo	<b>excuse</b> scusare
<b>eighth</b> ottavo	<b>execution</b> supplizio <i>m.</i>
<b>eighty</b> ottanta	<b>executioner</b> boia <i>m.</i>
<b>elbow</b> gōmito <i>m.</i>	<b>exercise-book</b> quaderno <i>m.</i>
<b>elder</b> maggiore	<b>exile</b> esilio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> esiliare
<b>elect</b> elēggere	<b>exit</b> uscita <i>f.</i>
<b>elegant</b> elegante	<b>expense</b> spesa <i>f.</i>
<b>eleven</b> ūndici	<b>expose</b> esporre
<b>eleventh</b> undiceşimo	<b>express</b> esprimere
<b>elm</b> olmo <i>m.</i>	
<b>embrace</b> abbracciare	<b>face</b> faccia <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> far fronte a; on
<b>emperor</b> imperatore <i>m.</i>	one's ∼ bocconi
<b>empire</b> impēro <i>m.</i>	<b>fact</b> : in ∼ infatti
<b>end</b> fine <i>f.</i> ; at the ∼ of in fondo a	<b>fail</b> fallire [tempo
<b>endow</b> dotare	<b>fair</b> bello; it is ∼ weather fa bel
<b>enemy</b> nemico <i>m.</i>	<b>faith</b> fede <i>f.</i>
<b>England</b> l' Inghilterra <i>f.</i>	<b>falcon</b> falco <i>m.</i>
<b>English</b> inglēse	<b>fall</b> cadere; ∼ upon avventarsi su
<b>enough</b> assai, bastante; be ∼ bastare	<b>family</b> famīglia <i>f.</i>
<b>enter</b> entrare	<b>famous</b> famōso, rinomato
<b>entrance</b> entrata <i>f.</i>	<b>fan</b> ventāglio <i>m.</i>
<b>enumerate</b> annoverare	<b>fat</b> grasso
<b>envelope</b> busta <i>f.</i>	<b>father</b> padre <i>m.</i>
<b>equal</b> uguale	<b>father-in-law</b> suōcero <i>m.</i>
<b>era</b> era <i>f.</i>	<b>fatigue</b> fatica <i>f.</i>
<b>establish</b> stabilire, istituire	<b>fault</b> colpa <i>f.</i>
<b>etcetera</b> e così in sēguito, e via	<b>favor</b> favore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> favorire
dicēdo	<b>fear</b> paura <i>f.</i> , timore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> aver
<b>Etruscan</b> etrusco	paura, temere
<b>even</b> <i>adj.</i> pari; <i>adv.</i> pure; not ∼	<b>February</b> febbraio <i>m.</i>
neppure	<b>feel</b> sentire
<b>evening</b> sera <i>f.</i> ; good ∼ buona sera	<b>felt</b> feltro <i>m.</i>

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- festival** festa *f.*  
**few** pōchi, -e  
**fidelity** fedeltà *f.*  
**fifteen** quīndici  
**fifteenth** quīndicēsimο  
**fifth** quinto  
**fifty** cinquanta  
**fig** fico *m.*  
**fight** combāttere  
**figure** figurare  
**finally** finalmente  
**find** trovare  
**fine** bello; fino  
**finger** dito *m.*  
**finish** finire, terminare  
**fire** fuōco *m.*; *v.* sparare; **set on** ∞  
     dar fuōco a  
**first** primo  
**fitting** prōva *f.*  
**five** cinque  
**flag** bandiēra *f.*  
**flee** fuggire  
**Florence** Firēnze  
**Florentine** fiorentino  
**flower** fiore *m.*  
**fluently** speditamente  
**fog** nebbia *f.*  
**folk** gente *f.*  
**follow** seguire, seguitare  
**foot** piēde *m.*; **on** ∞ a piēdi  
**footstool** panchetto *m.*  
**for** per; (*time*) da; **as** ∞ in quanto a  
**force** fōrza *f.*  
**forced** forzato  
**foreign** straniere *m.*  
**foreigner** forestiere, straniere *m.*  
**forest** foresta *f.*  
**forget** dimenticare  
**fork** forchetta *f.*  
**forty** quaranta  
**four** quattro; **on all** ∞s carponi  
**fourteen** quattōrdici  
**fourteenth** dēcimoquarto  
**fourth** quarto  
**franc** lira *f.*  
**France** la Frāncia  
**Francis** Francesco  
**free** libero  
**freeze** gelare  
**French** francese  
**Frenchman** Francēse *m.*  
**friar** frate *m.*  
**Friday** venerdì *m.*  
**friend** amico, -a  
**from** da; (*time*) fin da  
**front** fronte *f.*; **in** ∞ of davanti a  
**frugal** frugale  
**fruit** frutto *m.*  
**fulfill** avverare  
**full** piēno  
**garden** giardino *m.*  
**gather** cōgliere  
**general** *adj.* generale; *n.* generale *m.*  
**generally** generalmente  
**genius** genio *m.*  
**gentle** mite  
**gentleman** signōre *m.*  
**George** Giōrgio  
**German** tedesco  
**Germany** l'Alemagna, la Germania *f.*  
**get** ottenere; ∞ back riavere; ∞ up  
     levarsi  
**girl** ragazza *f.*; **little** ∞ bambina *f.*  
**give** dare; ∞ up rinunziare a  
**glad** contento, felice  
**glass** bicchiere *m.*; (*ware*) vetro *m.*  
**glimpse** intravedere  
**glory** glōria *f.*  
**glove** guanto *m.*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- glover** guantaio *m.*  
**go** andare; ∞ out andar fuori; ∞ up salire; ∞ in entrare; ∞ away partire; ∞ down scēdere  
**god** dio *m.*  
**God** Iddio *m.*  
**gold** oro *m.*  
**gondola** gōndola *f.*  
**gone** partito  
**good** buono; ∞ morning buon giorno  
**good-by** (*polite*) a rivederla, (*fam.*) addio  
**goodness** bontà *f.*  
**goods** stoffa *f.*; dry ∞ merceria *f.*  
**govern** governare  
**government** govērno *m.*  
**grammar** grammātica *f.*  
**grandfather** nonno *m.*  
**grandmother** nonna *f.*  
**grape** uva *f.*  
**grape-vine** vite *f.*  
**gray** grigio  
**great** grande  
**Greek** grēco  
**green** verde  
**greet** salutare  
**greeting** saluto *m.*  
**ground** suolo *m.*  
**group** grōppo *m.*  
**grow** crēscere  
**guard** guārdia *f.*  
**guess** indovinare; ∞ right darci dentro  
**guide** guida *f.*  
**gun** schioppo *m.*
- Hague**: The ∞ l'Aia  
**hair** capello *m.*  
**half** *adj.* mezzō; *n.* metà *f.*  
**hall** sala *f.*
- hand** mano *f.*; within reach of one's ∞ a portata di mano; by ∞ a mano; at second ∞ di seconda mano  
**handkerchief** fazzoletto *m.*  
**handsome** bello  
**handy**: come ∞ far cōmodo  
**hang** impiccare  
**happen** accadere, succēdere  
**happy** felice; ∞ New Year buon fine e principio d'anno  
**hard** duro, difficile  
**hardly** appena  
**hasten** spicciarsi  
**hat** cappello *m.*  
**have** avere; ∞ to avere da  
**hawk** falco *m.*  
**he** egli, esso  
**head** testa *f.*, capo *m.*; with bowed ∞ a capo chino  
**health** salute *f.*  
**hear** sentire, udire  
**heart** cuore *m.*; by ∞ a mente; take it to ∞ prēndersela  
**heart-broken** afflitto  
**heat** calore *m.*  
**heavy** pesante  
**heed** dar retta a  
**heel** (*of shoe*) tacco *m.*; (*of foot*) calcagno *m.*  
**help** aiuto *m.*; *v.* aiutare; not be able to ∞ non poter a meno di  
**hen** gallina *f.*  
**henceforth** di qui innanzi, oramai  
**Henry** Enrico  
**her** *pron.* la, le; *poss.* il suo *etc.*  
**here** qui, qua; ∞ is, ∞ are, ecco, c'è, ci sono  
**heritage** retaggio *m.*  
**hero** erōe *m.*  
**heroic** erōico

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- herself** lei stessa; (*refl.*) si  
**hesitate** esitare  
**high** alto  
**highness** altezza *f.*  
**him** gli, lui, lo  
**himself** lui stesso; (*refl.*) si  
**his** il suo, la sua, *etc.*  
**history** storia *f.*  
**hold** tenere  
**holiday** festa *f.*  
**home**: at ∞ da noi; in casa  
**homeward** a casa  
**honor** onorare  
**hook** gancio *m.*  
**hope** speranza *f.*; *v.* sperare  
**horse** cavallo *m.*  
**horseback**: ride ∞ andar a cavallo  
**hospital** ospedale *m.*  
**hostile** inimico  
**hot** caldo; it is ∞ fa caldo  
**hotel** albergo *m.*  
**hour** ora *f.*  
**house** casa *f.*; at the ∞ of da  
**how** come; ∞ do you do? come sta?  
 ∞ much, ∞ many, quanto, -i  
**however** *conj.* però, pure; *adv.* per  
 quanto  
**human** umano  
**hundred** cento  
**hunger** fame *f.*  
**hungry**: be ∞ aver fame  
**hunt** cacciare  
**hurl** lanciare  
**hurry** fretta *f.*; *v.* spicciarsi; be in  
 a ∞ aver fretta, aver fùria  
**husband** marito *m.*
- I** io  
**ice** ghiaccio *m.*  
**ice-cream** gelato *m.*
- if** se  
**ignorant** ignorante  
**ill** ammalato; fall ∞ ammalare  
**imagine** immaginare, figurarsi  
**immediately** subito  
**impervious** impervio  
**important**: be ∞ importare  
**impose** imporre  
**imprudent** imprudente  
**in** in; (*time*) fra  
**increase** accrescere  
**indeed** davvero  
**independence** indipendenza *f.*  
**inexhaustible** inesauribile  
**inferior** inferiore  
**ingrate** ingrato *m.*  
**ink** inchiostro *m.*  
**inside** (of) dentro (a)  
**instead** (of) invece (di)  
**instrument** strumento *m.*  
**intelligent** intelligente  
**into** in  
**introduce** presentare  
**iron** ferro *m.*  
**island** isola *f.*  
**it** esso, lo  
**Italian** italiano  
**Italy** l' Italia *f.*
- jacket** giacchetta *f.*  
**January** gennaio *m.*  
**Japan** il Giappone  
**jewel** gioiello *m.*  
**John** Giovanni  
**Joseph** Giuseppe  
**journey** viaggio *m.*  
**joy** gioia *f.*  
**joyful** allegro  
**Julius Cæsar** Giulio Cèzare  
**July** luglio *m.*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- June** giugno *m.*  
**just** giusto; ∞ now or ora  
  
**kilogram** chilogramma *m.*  
**kind** gēnere *m.*, spēcie, sōrte *f.*; *adj.*  
 buōno, cortēse  
**king** rē *m.*  
**kingdom** rēgno *m.*  
**kiss** bācio *m.*  
**kitchen** cucina *f.*  
**knee** ginōcchio *m.*; on one's ∞s gi-  
 nocchiōni  
**knife** coltello *m.*  
**know** sapere, conōscere  
  
**label** cartellino *m.*  
**laborious** laboriōso  
**lacking**: be ∞ mancare  
**ladder** scala a piuoli  
**lady** signōra *f.*; young ∞ signorina *f.*  
**lake** lago *m.*  
**lamp** lume *m.*  
**land** sbarcare  
**language** lingua *f.*  
**large** grande  
**lark** allōdola *f.*  
**last** fōrma *f.*; *v.* durare; *adj.* ūlti-  
 mo, (*past*) scōrso; at ∞ alla fine  
**late** tardi; the ∞ il fu; be ∞ far tardi  
**laugh** riso *m.*; *v.* ridere  
**law** legge *f.*  
**lawsuit** lite *f.*  
**lawyer** avvocato *m.*  
**lay** posare; ∞ the cloth mēttre la  
 tovaglia  
**layman** laico *m.*  
**leaf** foglia *f.*  
**lean out** spōrgersi  
**learn** imparare; ∞ of sapere  
**learned** dōtto  
  
**least** mīnimo; at ∞ almenō  
**leather** cuōio *m.*  
**leave** *tr.* lasciare; *intr.* partire; *n.*  
 licēza *f.*  
**left** sinistro  
**Leghorn** Livōrno  
**lemon** limōne *m.*  
**length** lunghezzeza *f.*  
**less** menō  
**lessen** diminuire  
**lesson** lezione *f.*  
**let** (*allow*) lasciare; *cf.* § 92, a  
**letter** lēttēra *f.*  
**liberty** libertā *f.*  
**lie** giacere; mentire  
**life** vita *f.*  
**light** luce *f.*; *v.* accēndere; *adj.*  
 chiaro, leggiēro  
**lighten** balenare, lampeggiare  
**like** sīmile; should ∞ vorrēi *etc.*  
**lily-of-the-valley** mughetto *m.*  
**linen** lino *m.*; tela *f.*  
**lining** fōdera *f.*  
**lip** labbro *m.*  
**lira** *f.* lira (twenty cents)  
**listen** (to) ascoltare  
**literature** letteratura *f.*  
**little** pōco; ∞ by ∞ pōco a pōco;  
*adj.* pīccolo  
**live** vivere; (*dwell*) abitare, dimo-  
 rare, star di casa  
**load** cārica *f.*; *v.* caricare  
**loaded** cārico  
**lock** serratura *f.*; *v.* serrare  
**London** Lōndra  
**long** lungo; ∞ to non veder l'ōra  
 di; as ∞ as tanto chē, fin chē  
**look, look at, guardare**; ∞ for cer-  
 care  
**lordship**: your ∞ Vossignōria *f.*



## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- lose p̄rdere  
 lot s̄rte *f.*  
 Louis Luigi  
 love am̄re *m.*; *v.* amare  
 low *adj.* basso; *v.* muggire  
 lower inferiore  
 luck: good ∼ fortuna *f.*  
 luckily m̄no male  
 luggage bagāglio *m.*  
 luncheon colaziōne *f.*; take ∼ far colaziōne
- Madam** Signōra *f.*  
 mail p̄sta *f.*; *v.* impostare  
 mainspring m̄lla *f.*  
 majesty maestà *f.*  
 majority maggior parte *f.*  
 make fare  
 mamma mamma, mamma *f.*  
 man ūmo *m.*; honorable ∼ galan- ūmo *m.*  
 manner maniēra *f.*  
 many m̄lti  
 march marcia *f.*  
 March marzo *m.*  
 married woman signōra *f.*  
 martyr m̄rtire *m.*  
 mask m̄schera *f.*  
 mass m̄ssa *f.*  
 mast ālbero *m.*  
 match fiammifero *m.*; *v.* accompa- gnare  
 matter mat̄ria *f.*; *v.* importare  
 may, can, pot̄re  
 May maggio *m.*  
 me mi, m̄  
 meadow prato *m.*  
 meat carne *f.*  
 meet incontrare; con̄scere  
 memory mem̄ria *f.*
- merchant mercante *m.*  
 metal metallo *m.*  
 metropolis metr̄poli *f.*  
 middle m̄zzo *m.*; in the ∞ of in m̄zzo a  
 midnight m̄zzanotte *f.*  
 might pot̄rei *etc.*; *or subj.*  
 mild mite  
 military militare  
 milk latte *m.*  
 milliner modista *f.*  
 mind m̄nte *f.*  
 mine miniēra *f.*; il mio *etc.*  
 minute minuto *m.*  
 miser avaro *m.*  
 misfortune ŗventura, disgrazia *f.*  
 miss sentire la mancanza di  
**Miss** Signorina *f.*  
 mistake ŗbaglio *m.*; *v.* ŗbagliare  
 modern mod̄rno  
 moment mom̄nto *m.*; in a ∞ a mo- menti  
 monarch monarca *m.*  
 monarchist mon̄rchico *m.*  
**Monday** lunedì *m.*  
 money denaro *m.*  
 monk m̄naco *m.*  
 monster m̄stro *m.*  
 month m̄se *m.*  
 moon luna *f.*  
 more piū  
 morning mattina *f.*; good ∼ būn gīor- no; say good ∼ dare il būn gīorno  
 most il piū  
 mother madre *f.*  
 mother-in-law sūcera *f.*  
 mount salire, montare  
 mountain montagna *f.*  
 mourning lutto *m.*; in ∞ a lutto  
 move mūvere

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- movement** mōto *m.*  
**Mr.** Signōre *m.*  
**Mrs.** Signōra *f.*  
**much** mōlto; *as* ∞ more altrettanto  
 **mud** fango *m.*  
 **murmur** mormorare  
 **mushroom** fungo *m.*  
 **my** il mio, la mia, *etc.*  
 **myself** io stesso; *refl.* mi
- name** nōme *m.*  
 **nap** sonnacchiare  
 **Naples** Nāpoli  
 **narrow** strēto  
 **nation** naziōne *f.*  
 **navy** marina *f.*  
 **near** vicino (*a*)  
 **necessary** necessārio; *be* ∞ bișo-  
   gnare, occōrrere  
 **neck** cōllo *m.*  
 **necklace** collana *f.*  
 **necktie** cravatta, ciarpēta *f.*  
 **need** bișogno *m.*; *v.* aver bișogno di  
 **neigh** nitrire  
 **neighbor** vicino *m.*  
 **neither** nè; ∞ . . . nor nè . . . nè  
 **nephew** nipōte *m.*  
 **nest** nido *m.*  
 **never** nōn . . . mai  
 **nevertheless** tuttavīa  
 **new** nuōvo;  **New Year's** capo d'an-  
   no;  **Happy New Year** buōn capo  
   d'anno;  **to wish a happy new year**  
   augurare il buōn anno  
 **news** notīzie *f. pl.*  
 **newspaper** giornale *m.*  
 **next** (*near*) accanto a; (*coming*)  
   prōssimo, quēst' altro; ∞ door  
   accanto  
 **nice** simpātico
- niece** nipōte *f.*  
 **night** nōtte *f.*  
 **nine** nōve  
 **nineteen** diciannōve  
 **nineteenth** dēcimo nōno  
 **ninety** novanta  
 **ninth** nōno  
 **no** nō; ∞ one nessuno; (*not any*)  
   nōn (*preceding vb.*)  
 **noise** rumōre, strēpito *m.*  
 **none** nessuno  
 **noon** mezzogiorno *m.*  
 **nor** nè  
 **north** tramontana *f.*, nōrte *m.*  
 **northern** settentrionale  
 **not** nōn  
 **nothing** niēte, nulla  
 **notice** avvișo *m.*; *v.* accōrgersi (*di*)  
 **notwithstanding** (*that*) nōn ob-  
   stante (*che*) (*conj. w. subj.*)  
 **novel** romanzo *m.*  
 **November** novēbre *m.*  
 **now** ora, adēssō  
 **nowadays** al giorno di oggi, oggidì  
 **number** nūmero *m.*  
 **nut** noce *f.*
- oak** quērcia *f.*  
 **oar** rēmo *m.*  
 **observe** osservare  
 **obstinate** s̄vogliato  
 **occur** aver luōgo  
 **occurrence** eveniēnza *f.*  
 **o'clock**: at six ∞ alle sēi  
 **October** ottōbre *m.*  
 **of** di  
 **off** lungi, via [sela a male  
 **offend** offēndere; *be* offended avē-  
 **offer** offrire  
 **officer** ufficiale *m.*

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- often** spesso  
**old** vecchio; **grow** ∼ invecchiare  
**on** su, sur  
**once** una volta; **at** ∼ subito  
**one** un, uno, -a  
**only** *adj.* solo, unico; *adv.* soltanto;  
     **but, only** (*w. acc.*), non . . . che  
**open** *adj.* aperto; *v.* aprire  
**opportunity** occasione *f.*  
**opposite** in faccia a, dirimpetto a  
**or** o, od  
**orange** arancia *f.*  
**orange-tree** arancio *m.*  
**order** ordine *m.*; *v.* ordinare; **to** ∼  
     su misura  
**other** altro  
**ought** dovrei *etc.*  
**our** il nostro, la nostra, *etc.*  
**ourselves** noi stessi; (*refl.*) ci  
**out** fuori; **go** ∼ andar fuori  
**outside (of)** all' infuori (di)  
**over** su, sopra  
**overcoat** soprabito *m.*  
**owe** dovere  
**own** *adj.* proprio; *v.* possedere  
  
**package** pacco *m.*  
**page** pagina *f.*  
**pain** dolore *m.*; *v.* dolere  
**pair** paio (*pl.* paia) *m.*  
**palace** palazzo *m.*  
**papa** babbo *m.*  
**paper** carta *f.*; **news** ∼ giornale *m.*  
**parents** genitori *m. pl.*  
**Paris** Parigi  
**parish-priest** parroco *m.*  
**parlor** salotto *m.*  
**part** parte *f.*  
**pass** passare  
**passenger** passeggero, viaggiatore *m.*  
  
**patience** pazienza *f.*  
**patriot** patriota *m.*  
**pattern** figurino *m.*  
**Paul** Paolo  
**pay**, ∼ **for**, pagare  
**peace** pace *f.*  
**peach** pesca *f.*  
**pear** pera *f.*  
**peasant** contadino, -a [serbatoio  
**pen** penna *f.*; **fountain** ∼ penna a  
**pencil** lapis *m.*  
**people** popolo *m.*; gente *f.*  
**perceive** accorgersi (di)  
**perhaps** forse  
**permit** permettere  
**persecute** perseguire  
**person** persona *f.*  
**Petrarch** Petrarca  
**Philip** Filippo  
**philosophical** filosofico  
**photograph** fotografia *f.*  
**physician** medico *m.*  
**pianist** pianista *c.*  
**picture** quadro *m.*  
**piece** pezzo *m.*; (*money*) moneta *f.*;  
     **tear to** ∼s far a brani; **by the** ∼ a  
     cittimo  
**Piedmont** il Piemonte  
**Piedmontese** piemontese  
**pilgrim** pellegrino *m.*  
**pilgrimage**: **go on** ∼ peregrinare  
**pin** spillo *m.*; *v.* appuntare  
**pity** pietà *f.*; **what a** ∼ peccato!  
**place** luogo, posto *m.*; (*at table*)  
     posata *f.*; *v.* porre  
**plant** pianta *f.*  
**plate** piatto *m.*  
**play** giocare; (*an instrument*) sonare  
**please** per piacere, per favore;  
     *v.* piacere a

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- pleasure piacere *m.*; do a ∞ to far piacere a  
 pleat piega *f.*  
 pocket tasca *f.*  
 poet poeta *m.*  
 point punta *f.*  
 polish lustrare  
 polite educato  
 political politico  
 politician politico *m.*  
 politics politica *f.*  
 poor povero  
 port porto *m.*  
 porter facchino *m.*  
 portrait ritratto *m.*  
 possess possedere; ∞ oneself of agguantare  
 post posta *f.*; *v.* impostare  
 postage-stamp francobollo *m.*  
 postal postale  
 post-card cartolina (*f.*) postale  
 postman postino *m.*  
 poverty povertà *f.*  
 powder polvere *f.*  
 power potere *m.*  
 practice pratica *f.*  
 praise lodare  
 pray *v.* pregare; *adv.* pure  
 precious prezioso  
 prefer preferire  
 prepare preparare  
 president presidente *m.*  
 press stampa *f.*  
 pretense finzione *f.*; make ∞ of far vista di  
 pretty carino, grazioso  
 prevail prevalere  
 prevent impedire  
 primitive primitivo  
 prince principe *m.*  
 princess principessa *f.*  
 prison prigione *f.*, carcere *m.*  
 problem problema *m.*  
 professor professore *m.*  
 promise promessa *f.*  
 property proprietà *f.*  
 proprietor padrone *m.*  
 provided that purchè (*v. subj.*)  
 prudent prudente  
 punish punire  
 pupil scolare *m.*  
 purchase compra *f.*  
 purpose scopo *m.*; on ∞ a posta  
 purr far le fusa  
 purse borsa *f.*  
 put, put on, mēttre  
 queen regina *f.*  
 question domanda *f.*; be a ∞ of trattarsi di  
 quiet quieto, tranquillo  
 rain pioggia *f.*; *v.* piōvere  
 raincoat impermeabile *m.*  
 raise levare, alzare, innalzare  
 rather piuttosto  
 read leggere  
 ready pronto; ∞-made bell' e fatto  
 really veramente  
 reason ragione *f.*  
 rebuild rifare  
 receipts incasso *m.*  
 receive ricēvere  
 recently di recente  
 recommend raccomandare  
 recover *tr.* riavere; *intr.* guarire  
 recruit recluta *f.*  
 red rosso  
 redeem redimere  
 reef scoglio *m.*

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- refuge** rifugio *m.*; **take** ∞ rifugiarsi  
**refuse** rifiutare  
**regard** (*greeting of remembrance*)  
 saluto *m.*  
**regret** deplorare, rincrescere *a*, dis-  
 piacere *a*; **I** ∞ mi rincresco  
**relative** parente *m.*; *adj.* relativo  
**remain** rimanere  
**remainder** resto *m.*  
**remake** rifare  
**remember** ricordarsi *di*  
**renounce** rinunciare *a*  
**repeat** ripetere  
**repent** pentirsi  
**reply** risposta *f.*; *v.* rispondere  
**reproof** rimprovero *m.*  
**reprove** rimproverare  
**republic** repubblica *f.*  
**republican** repubblicano  
**respectable** rispettabile  
**rest** resto, riposo *m.*; *v.* riposarsi  
**result** risultato *m.*  
**resurrection** risorgimento *m.*  
**return** ritorno *m.*; *v.* tornare, ritor-  
 nare  
**Rhine** Reno *m.*  
**ribbon** nastro *m.*  
**rich** ricco *m.*  
**rid oneself** sbarrazzarsi  
**right** destro; **be** ∞ aver ragione  
**rigorous** rigoroso  
**ring** anello *m.*; *v.* sonare  
**rise** levarsi, alzarsi  
**risk** rischio *m.*  
**river** fiume *m.*  
**road** strada *f.*  
**Roman** romano  
**Rome** Roma  
**room** stanza *f.*; posto *m.*  
**roost** appollaiarsi  
**rose** rosa *f.*  
**rough** rozzo  
**row-boat** barca (*f.*) a remi  
**rule** regola *f.*; *v.* reggere  
**ruler** regnante *m.*  
**run** corsa *f.*; *v.* correre; ∞ down  
*adj.* scario  
**sad** triste  
**sadness** tristezza *f.*  
**safe** sicuro  
**safety** sicurezza, salvezza *f.*; in ∞  
 in salvo  
**sail** vela *f.*; **set** ∞ far vela  
**sailor** marinaio *m.*  
**saint** santo *m.*  
**Saint** san, santo  
**saintly** santo  
**saint's-day** onomastico *m.*  
**sale** vendita *f.*  
**same** stesso  
**sample** campione *m.*  
**Saturday** sabato *m.*  
**saucer** piattino (*m.*) da tazza  
**savage** selvaggio *adj.*  
**save** *v.* salvare, (*money*) risparmiare;  
*prep.* tranne  
**Savoy** la Savoia *f.*  
**say** dire  
**says** dice  
**scatter** spargere, diffondere  
**school** scuola *f.*  
**scissors** forbici *f. pl.*  
**scold** sgridare  
**score** ventina *f.*  
**scout** vedetta *f.*  
**scrap** brano *m.*  
**sea** mare *m.*; **at** ∞ in mare; **by the** ∞  
 al mare  
**season** stagione *f.*



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- second** secondo  
**secret** segreto *m.*  
**secretly** di nascosto  
**see** vedere  
**seem** sembrare  
**seen** visto  
**Seine** Senna *f.*  
**seldom** di rado  
**self** *see* myself, himself, etc.  
**sell** vendere  
**send** mandare, inviare, spedire  
**sentinel** sentinella, vedetta *f.*  
**September** settembre *m.*  
**seriously** sul serio  
**servant** servo, -a  
**serve** servire; (*meal*) imbandire  
**service** servizio *m.*  
**set table** apparecchiare  
**seven** sette  
**seventeen** diciassette  
**seventeenth** decimo settimo  
**seventh** settimo  
**seventy** settanta  
**several** parecchi  
**sew** cucire  
**shake** scuotere;  $\infty$  hands with dar  
     la mano a  
**shall I** (*in questions*) devo  
**shame** vergogna *f.*  
**share** parte *f.*  
**she** ella, essa, lei  
**sheep** pecora *f.*  
**sheet** lenzuolo; (*of paper*) foglio *m.*  
**shelf** scaffale *m.*  
**shield** scudo *m.*  
**shoe** scarpa *f.*  
**shoemaker** calzolaio *m.*  
**shoot** tirare  
**shop** bottega *f.*  
**short** corto, breve  
**should** *past fut. or subj.*  
**shoulder** spalla *f.*  
**shout** gridare *m.*; *v.* gridare  
**show** mostrare, dimostrare;  $\infty$  in  
     far passare  
**Sicily** la Sicilia  
**side** parte *f.*; on this  $\infty$  of al di qua  
     di; on that  $\infty$  of al di là di  
**sign** affisso, cartello *m.*; segno *m.*  
**signal** cenno *m.*  
**silence** silenzio *m.*  
**silk** seta *f.*  
**silver** argento *m.*  
**simple** semplice  
**since** (*time*) dacchè; (*cause*) poichè  
**sincere** sincero  
**sing** cantare  
**sip** sorbire  
**sir** Signore *m.*  
**sister** sorella *f.*  
**sister-in-law** cognata *f.*  
**sit** sedere;  $\infty$  down accomodarsi  
**six** sei  
**sixteen** sedici  
**sixteenth** decimo sesto  
**sixth** sesto  
**sixty** sessanta  
**skirt** sottana *f.*  
**sleep** sonno *m.*; *v.* dormire  
**sleepy**: be  $\infty$  aver sonno  
**sleeve** manica *f.*  
**small** piccolo  
**smoke** fumo *m.*; *v.* fumare  
**sneeze** starnutire  
**snow** neve *f.*; *v.* nevicare  
**so** così;  $\infty$  much,  $\infty$  many, tanto,  
     tanti;  $\infty$  that perchè (*w. subj.*)  
**sob** singulto *m.*  
**socialist** socialista *m.*  
**sock** calzino *m.*

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- soft dolce  
 softly piano  
 soil suolo *m.*  
 soldier soldato *m.*  
 solitude solitudine *f.*  
 some *adj.* qualche; *pron.* ne  
 son figlio *m.*  
 son-in-law gēnero *m.*  
 song canzone *f.*  
 soon pręsto, tōsto; as ~ as tōsto che;  
   as ~ as possible quanto prima; no  
   ~er . . . than appena . . . che  
 sorrow dolore *m.*  
 sorrowful afflitto, doloroso  
 sorry dispiacente; be ~ dispiacere  
   a; I am ~ mi dispiace  
 south mezzogiorno  
 southern meridionale  
 Spaniard Spagnuolo *m.*  
 Spanish spagnuolo  
 spark scintilla *f.*  
 speak parlare  
 spectacle spettācolo *m.*  
 spectacles occhiali *m. pl.*  
 speculator speculatore *m.*  
 spend (*time*) passare; (*money*)  
   spēndere  
 spirit spīrito *m.*  
 spool rocchetto *m.*  
 spoon cucchiaino *m.*  
 spot mächia *f.*  
 spread distēndere  
 spring (*season*) primavęra *f.*; (*motive*  
   *power*) mōlla *f.*  
 spy spia *f.*  
 stain mächia *f.*  
 stair scala *f.*; winding ~ scala a  
   chiōcciola  
 state stato *m.*; *v.* dichiarare  
 statesman politico *m.*  
 station stazione *f.*  
 stay restare, rimanere  
 steel acciaio *m.*  
 step passo *m.*  
 Stephen Stęfano  
 still ancora, tuttavia  
 stone piętra *f.*  
 stop fermarsi  
 story stōria *f.*; (*of a house*) piano  
 straight dritto; ~ ahead difilato  
 strange strano  
 stranger stranięre *m.*  
 straw paglia *f.*  
 street via *f.*  
 stretch out pōrgere  
 strike sciōpero *m.*; *v.* colpire  
 struggle lōtta *f.*  
 study stūdio *m.*; *v.* studiare  
 succeed riuscire; *tr.* succędere a  
 suck succhiare  
 suddenly improvvisamente, a un  
   tratto  
 suffer soffrire, patire  
 suffice bastare  
 suitable addatto; be ~ convenire  
 sum sōmma *f.*  
 summer estate *f.*  
 summit cōlmo *m.*  
 sun sōle *m.*  
 Sunday domęnica *f.*  
 superior superiore  
 support sostęgno *m.*  
 supreme supręmo  
 sure sicuro  
 surgeon chirurgo *m.*  
 surprise sorpręsa *f.*; *v.* sorpręndere  
 swarm sciame *m.*; *v.* formicolare  
 swear giurare  
 sweet dolce  
 sweetmeat dolce *m.*; chicca *f.*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- Swiss** svizzero  
**table** t vola *f.*; set the ~ apparecchiare; ~cloth tovaglia *f.*  
**tailor** sarto *m.*  
**take** pr ndere, pigliare; ~ off levarsi; ~ away t gliere; ~ one's way avviarsi; ~ out cavare  
**talent** ingegno *m.*  
**tall** alto  
**task** lavoro *m.*  
**tax** tassa *f.*  
**tea** t  *m.*  
**teach** insegnare  
**teacher** maestro, -a; istitutore, -trice  
**telegram** telegramma, dispaccio *m.*  
**telephone** telefonare  
**tell** dire; raccontare  
**ten** dieci  
**tenth** d cimo  
**terrible** terribile  
**territory** territ rio *m.*  
**t te   t te** a quattr'occhi  
**Thames** Tamigi *m.*  
**than** di, ch , di quel ch   
**thanks** gr zie *f. pl.*  
**that** *dem. pron.* quello; *rel. pron.* ch ; *conj.* ch   
**thaw** sgelare, dighiacciare  
**the** il, la; *pl.* i, gli, le  
**theater** teatro *m.*  
**thee** ti, t   
**their** il loro, la loro, *etc.*  
**them** li, le, loro  
**theme** t ma *m.*  
**themselves** loro stessi; *refl.* si  
**then** allora, dunque  
**thence** indi, ne  
**there** l , l ; ~ is, ~ are, c' , ci sono, (*dem.*) ecco  
**therefore** dunque  
**they** essi, esse  
**thicket** macchia *f.*  
**thimble** ditale *m.*  
**thing** cosa *f.*  
**things** roba *f. collective*  
**think** pensare, (*believe*) credere  
**third** terzo  
**thirst** sete *f.*  
**thirsty**: be ~ aver sete  
**thirteen** tredici  
**thirteenth** d cimo terzo  
**thirty** trenta  
**this** questo  
**thither** l , l   
**Thomas** Tommaso  
**thou** tu  
**though** bench , sebbene  
**thought** pensiero *m.*  
**thousand** mille  
**threat** minaccia *f.*  
**threaten** minacciare  
**three** tre  
**threshold** soglia *f.*  
**throw** gettare, buttare; ~ away buttar via  
**thunder** tuono *m.*; *v.* tonare  
**thunderbolt** fulmine *m.*  
**Thursday** venerd  *m.*  
**thus** cos   
**thy** il tuo, la tua, *etc.*  
**thyself** tu stesso; *refl.* ti  
**Tiber** T vere *m.*  
**ticket** biglietto *m.*; round-trip ~ biglietto d'andata e ritorno; first-class ~ biglietto di prima classe  
**ticket-window** sportello *m.*  
**tight** stretto  
**time** tempo *m.*; (*a time*) volta *f.*; on ~ a tempo; short ~ poco  
**tin** latta *f.*

## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- tiny** mīnimo, piccino  
**tired** stanco; **become** ∞ stancarsi  
**to** a, ad  
**to-day** oggi  
**together** insiēme  
**to-morrow** domani  
**tongs** mōlle *f. pl.*  
**too, too much, troppo**; ∞ many  
 trōppi  
**tooth** dēnte *m.*  
**top** cima *f.*; **on** ∞ of in cima a  
**torture** supplizio *m.*  
**tour** giro *m.*  
**towards** verso  
**tower** tōrre *f.*  
**trade** mestiere; commercio *m.*  
**train** treno *m.*  
**traitor, -ress, traditore, -tōra**  
**travel** viaggiare  
**traveler** viaggiatore *m.*  
**treachery** tradimento *m.*  
**tree** ālbero *m.*  
**tremble** tremare  
**tricolored** tricolore  
**trimming** guarnizione *f.*  
**triple** trīplice, triplo  
**troops** truppe *f. pl.*  
**trousers** calzōni *m. pl.*  
**trunk** baule *m.*; **pack one's** ∞ fare  
 il baule  
**truth** veritā *f.*  
**try** provare, cercare di; ∞ one's  
 best fare di tutto; ∞ on provare  
**Tuesday** martedì *m.*  
**Turk** Turco *m.*  
**turn** voltarsi; ∞ back rivoltare; in  
 ∞ a vicēnda; **be the** ∞ of toccare a  
**Tuscany** la Toscana  
**twelfth** dēcimo secondo  
**twelve** dōdici  
**twentieth** ventēesimo  
**twenty** vēnti  
**twice** due vōlte  
**two** due  
**typewriter** mēcchina (*f.*) da scrivere  
**typical** tīpico  
**tyranny** tirannīa *f.*  
**tyrant** tiranno *m.*  
**ugly** brutto  
**umbrella** ombrellō *m.*  
**uncle** zio *m.*  
**under** sōtto  
**understand** capire, intēndere  
**unequal** ineguale  
**uneven** impari  
**unhappy** infelice  
**union** unitā *f.*  
**unite** unire  
**university** universitā *f.*  
**unless** a meno chē (*w. subj.*)  
**until** fino a  
**up** su; **get** ∞ levarsi  
**upon** su  
**upper** superiore  
**us** ci, noi  
**use** uso *m.*; **make** ∞ of servirsi di;  
 be of ∞ to servire a  
**usual** sōlito; **as** ∞ come al sōlito  
**usually** generalmente, per il sōlito  
**vacation** vacanza *f.*  
**vain**: in ∞ indarno  
**valley** valle *f.*  
**value** pregio *m.*; **be of** ∞ valere  
**vast** vasto  
**veil** velo *m.*  
**Venetian** veneziano  
**Venice** Venēzia  
**very** mōlto

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- view** vista *f.*  
**village** villaggio, paese *m.*  
**vintage** vendemmia *f.*  
**violet** mämmola *f.*  
**virtue** virtù *f.*  
**visit** viſita *f.*; *v.* viſitare
- wager** scommessa *f.*  
**wait, wait for,** aspettare  
**waiter** cameriere *m.*  
**walk** *v.* camminare, andare a piedi  
**walk** passeggiata, giratina *f.*, spasso  
*m.*; **take a** ∞ andare a spasso,  
 fare una passeggiata  
**wall** muro *m.*  
**walnut** noce *f.*  
**wander** peregrinare  
**war** guerra *f.*; **wage** ∞ mover guerra  
**warfare** guerra *f.*; **of** ∞ bellico  
**warlike** bellicoso  
**warm** caldo; **be** ∞ aver caldo  
**wash** lavare; ∞-stand lavamano *m.*  
**watch** orologio *m.*; *v.* guardare,  
 vegliare  
**water** acqua *f.*; *v.* annaffiare  
**wave** onda *f.*  
**way** via, strada *f.*; **lose one's** ∞  
 smarrirsi; **take one's** ∞ avviarsi,  
 recarsi; **on the** ∞ strada facendo  
**we** noi  
**weak** debole, caduco, fiacco  
**weather** tempo *m.*; **it is fine** ∞ fa  
 bel tempo  
**wedding** nozze *f. pl.*  
**Wednesday** mercoledì *m.*  
**week** settimana *f.*  
**weep** piangere  
**welcome** benvenuto; **you're** ∞ niente  
**well** bene; ∞ then ebbene, dunque;  
 ∞ now o or o
- west** ponente *m.*  
**western** occidentale  
**wet** bagnato  
**what** che, quel che  
**whatever** *adj.* qualunque; *pron.*  
 checchè  
**when** quando  
**whenever** qualora (*v. subj.*)  
**where** dove  
**wherever** dovunque (*v. subj.*)  
**whether** se  
**which** che, il quale  
**while** mentre; **be worth** ∞ meritare  
 il conto  
**white** bianco  
**who** *rel.* che; *interr.* chi  
**whom** *rel.* che, cui; *interr.* chi  
**whose** il cui, (di) cui; *interr.* di chi  
**why** perchè  
**wicked** scellerato  
**wide** largo  
**width** larghezza *f.*  
**wife** moglie *f.*  
**will** volontà *f.*; *v.* volere  
**win** vincere  
**wind up** caricare  
**wind** vento *m.*  
**window** finestra *f.*  
**winter** inverno *m.*  
**wise** savio, sapiente  
**wish** volere, desiderare; ∞ well  
 augurare  
**with** con  
**wither** appassire  
**without** senza; **do** ∞ fare a meno  
 di  
**woman** donna *f.*; **married** ∞ signora  
*f.*; **unmarried** ∞ signorina *f.*  
**wood** bosco *m.*; (*material*) legno *m.*  
**wool** lana *f.*



## ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

<p><b>work</b> òpera <i>f.</i>, lavoro <i>m.</i>; <i>v.</i> lavorare</p> <p><b>workman</b> operaio <i>m.</i></p> <p><b>world</b> mondo <i>m.</i></p> <p><b>worse</b> <i>adj.</i> peggiore; <i>adv.</i> peggio</p> <p><b>worst</b> il peggiore; il peggio</p> <p><b>worry</b> <i>tr.</i> dar pensiero a; <i>intr.</i> stare in pensiero, darsi pensiero</p> <p><b>worth</b>: be ~ valere</p> <p><b>would</b> volere; <i>past fut. or subj.</i></p> <p><b>wound</b> ferita <i>f.</i>; <i>v.</i> ferire</p> <p><b>wound up</b> <i>adj.</i> cārico</p> <p><b>write</b> scrivere</p> <p><b>writer</b> scrittore <i>m.</i></p> <p><b>wrong</b>: be ~ avere torto</p>	<p><b>yard</b> corte <i>f.</i></p> <p><b>yawn</b> sbadigliare</p> <p><b>year</b> anno <i>m.</i></p> <p><b>yes</b> sì</p> <p><b>yesterday</b> ieri</p> <p><b>yet</b> ancora, tuttavia</p> <p><b>you</b> voi, tu, Lei; <i>cf.</i> 65, <i>a, b, c</i></p> <p><b>young</b> giōvane</p> <p><b>your</b> il vostro, il tuo, il Suo</p> <p><b>yourself</b> voi stesso, tu stesso, Lei stesso; <i>refl.</i> vi, ti, si</p> <p><b>yourselves</b> voi stessi, Loro stessi; <i>refl.</i> vi, si</p> <p><b>youth</b> gioventù <i>f.</i></p>
--	--



# INDEX

[Numbers refer to sections]

- a**, idioms with, 227, *a*  
**Accent**, graphic, 18-21  
    acute, 21  
    circumflex, 20  
    grave, 19  
    meaning distinguished by, 19, *e*  
**Accent**, tonic, 9-15  
    marks of, in this book, 9  
    meaning distinguished by, 15  
    in truncated words, 33  
    in verbs, 13, *a*  
**Addition** of *d* or *r* for euphony, 39  
**Address**, person in, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*  
**Adjectives**, 82-88  
    agreement, 83  
        with two or more nouns, 83, *b*  
        sg. adj. with pl. n., 83, *c*  
    capitalization of, 88, *a*  
    demonstrative, 86; 190  
    interrogative, 87; 191  
    invariable, 85, *b*  
    irregular, 85, *a*  
    position of, 84  
    prepositions with, 223  
    used substantively, 88  
    with subst. understood, 88, *b*  
**Adverbs**, 89; 212-219  
    comparison of, 115; 116; 117  
    formation of, 89, *a*; 214  
    position of, 212; 216, *a*  
    of affirmation, 215; 230, *b*, 3  
    of manner, 214; 219, *a*; 227  
    of negation, 216  
    of place, 217; 219, *b*  
    of quantity, 89, *b*; 160; 218  
    of time, 219, *c*  
**Age**, 153  
'ago,' 151, *d*  
**alcuno**, 206, *a*  
**'all'**, 160, *c*  
**Alphabet**, 1  
**altro**, 208, *c*, *d*  
**altrui**, 208, *b*  
**andare**, 149  
    idioms with, 149, *b*  
    special uses of, 149, *a*  
'any,' 77; 124; 206, *a*, 1, 2, 3; 208, *c*  
**Apheresis**, 35  
**Apocope**, 37  
**Archaic forms**, 44-49  
**Arithmetical formulae**, 159, *b*  
**Article**, *see* Definite *and* Indefinite  
**Article repeated**, 61  
**Augmentatives**, 228, *a*; 229  
**Auxiliary**  
    agreement of past part. with, 99;  
        104, *c*, 1, 2; 122; 194, *b*  
    avere used as, 68; 101, *b*, *c*; 121  
    'do,' 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*  
    essere used as, 98; 101, *a*, *c*  
    modal auxiliaries, 186  
**avere**, 68; 101; 120; 121  
    idiomatic uses of, 123  
    past part. with, 122  
**'be'**, 96  
**bello**, forms of, 85, *a*  
'both,' 150, *d*; 207, *f*  
**buono**, forms of, 85, *a*  
**'can'**, *see* Modal auxiliaries, *sapere*  
**Capitalization**, 41-43  
    capitals omitted, 42  
    capitals used contrary to English  
        usage, 43  
    of adjectives, 88, *a*  
**Cardinal numerals**, 150  
    'about' with, 158, *a*, 1

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- care, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
- Century, number of, 151, *c*; 157, *c*
- cere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
- che, 114, *a*; 115, *b*, 1, 2, *c*; 169, *i*,  
note 2; 189, *b*; 230, *b*, 2, 3, 4
- ci (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
- ci (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1; 224, *b*
- ciare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
- ciò, 190, *d*
- Close vowels, 3, *a*, *c*, *f*
- co, masculines in, 178, *c*
- Collective nouns, agreement with,  
183
- Collective numerals, 158, *a*  
with special meanings, 158, *b*
- Comparatives, 115  
of equality, 119  
irregular, 117, *a*  
with special meanings, 117, *b*
- Compound nouns, 181; 225
- Compound tenses, 68; 96; 120
- Conjugations, 90, *a*
- Conjunctions, 230
- Conjunctive pronoun objects  
forms, 94  
changes in, 125, *b*  
position, 95, *a*, *b*  
of two objects, 125, *a*  
with dependent inf., 167  
curtailment of inf. before, 95, *b*, 2  
direct becoming indirect, 167, *c*, 2  
initial consonants doubled in,  
100, *b*  
used redundantly, 100, *d*, *e*  
used as subject, 100, *g*  
with compound prep. and verb,  
222, *a*  
with ecco, 100, *a*
- Consonants, 5
- Contraction of prepositions, 75
- d*, addition of, for euphony, 39
- da, idiomatic uses of, 103; 112;  
123, *a*; 139; 162, *c*; 227, *b*
- dare, 131  
idioms with, 131, *a*
- Dates, 150, *c*; 151, *a*, *b*, *c*; 157, *c*
- Definite article  
forms, 70  
their uses, 71; 72
- syntax, 73; 146; 147  
agreement with two nouns, 148  
in dates, 146, *f*; 151  
distributive, 146, *g*  
idiomatic uses, 146, *k*  
omission of, 147  
used for possessive, 107, *c*;  
146, *e*  
with proper names, 146, *c*, *d*, *h*
- Demonstrative adjective, 86; 190
- Demonstrative pronoun, 190
- di, 78; 164, *b*, 1; 174, *b*, 3, *c*, 3; 205,  
*a*; 221, *b*; 227, *c*
- Dialogues  
In un albergo, p. 154  
L' Arrivo, p. 134  
L' Automobile, p. 219  
Dal calzolaio, p. 202  
Dalla modista, p. 245  
Dalla sarta, p. 163  
Dal sarto, p. 188  
Si fanno le compre, p. 250
- Diminutives, 228, *b*; 229
- Diphthongs, 4, *a*, *b*; 53
- dire, 175
- Disjunctive pronoun, 135; 136  
nominative, 65; 135, *a*  
objective, 135, *b*  
uses of, 65, *a*, 1; 136
- 'do,' auxiliary, 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
- dolere, 172
- Double consonants, 5, *b*
- Doublings, special, 5, *b*, 2
- dovere, 188  
special uses of, 187, *c*
- ecco, 100, *a*; 217, *c*
- ed for e, 39
- Elision, 22-28; 52  
in contracted forms, 28
- essere, 96  
used as auxiliary, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
- Exclamations, 191, *a*; 230, *b*, 2; 231
- fare, 163  
idioms with, 163, *b*  
with dependent inf., 163, *a*; 167, *c*
- Fractions, 157, *b*
- 'from,' 227, *d*, 2
- Future, 69; 141

## INDEX

- gare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1  
 Gender, 80; 197-203  
   distinguished by form, 80, *b*; 197  
   distinguished by meaning, 80, *a*;  
   198  
   masculines in *a*, 202  
   in names of animals, 200  
   in nouns of human relationship, 201  
   rank, feminine forms of words  
   denoting, 203  
   two genders, nouns of, 199  
 Genitive, *see* Possessive  
 -gere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*  
 Gerund, English, transl. into Italian,  
 193, *d*  
 Gerundive, Italian, 193, *b*  
 -giare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2  
 gli (hard *g*), 5, *c*  
 grande, forms of, 85, *a*
- 'half,' 157, *b*, 1  
 'have,' 120  
   'have to,' 123, *a*  
 'here,' 126, *a*; 217; 219, *b*  
 'he who,' 190, *c*, 2  
 'however,' 230, *a*
- i*, euphonic, 38  
 -iare, verbs ending in, 110, *b*  
 Idioms, *see* *andare*, *da*, *dare*, etc.,  
   Adverbs, Prepositions, Time,  
   Weather, etc.
- Imperative  
   formation, in irr. verbs, 130, *e*  
   negative, 92, *b*  
   third person of, 92, *a*  
 Impersonal English expressions,  
   translation of, 106, *b*  
 Impersonal verbs, 164  
   with subjunctive, 164, *b*  
   use of *di* with, 164, *b*, 1  
 Indefinite article  
   forms, 58  
   their uses, 59; 60  
   syntax of, 61; 66; 162  
 Indefinite pronouns, 205-210  
   alphabetical list, 205  
   with *di*, 205, *a*  
   negative, 210
- Indicative, *see* Tenses  
 Infinitive, 173; 174  
   government of, 174  
   uses of, 173  
   with *a*, 174, *b*, 1; *c*, 2  
   with *da*, 174, *a*; *c*, 4  
   with *di*, 174, *b*, 3; *c*, 3  
 Inflections, *see* Conjugations  
 Interjections, 231  
 Interrogative adjective, 87; 191  
 Interrogative construction, 62  
 Interrogative pronouns, 191  
 Invariable adjectives, 85, *b*  
 Invariable nouns, 176  
 Inversion, 145; 194, *c*  
 -io, plural of nouns in, 178, *a*, 2  
 Irregular verbs, pp. 261-273  
   formation, 130  
   past absolutes of, 120, *a*  
   principal parts of, 120, *b*; 130  
   regular forms of, 128  
 -issimo, ending, 116, *d*  
 'it,' anticipative subject, 100, *g*, 2  
   in predicate after *essere*, 100, *e*  
   'it is I,' etc., 65, *f*  
 'its,' 107, *c*
- Lei*, in address, 65, *a*, 1; 100, *c*  
 Letters, *see* Alphabet, Consonants,  
   Vowels  
 loro, 125, *a*, 1; 136, *i*, 1
- mai, 191, *b*; 216, *f*, 1  
 'may,' *see* Modal auxiliaries  
 Marks of pronunciation, 2, *a*; 5, *e*; 9  
 Measurements, 155  
 meco, etc., 136, *a*, 1  
 Metathesis, 40  
 Modal auxiliaries, 186; 187  
   in compound tenses, 186, *b*  
   with inf., 186, *d*  
   special uses of, 187  
 Money, 154  
 Moods, *see* Imperative, Indicative,  
   Subjunctive  
 morire, 156  
 Multiplicatives, 159, *a*  
 'must,' *see* Modal auxiliaries  
 'myself,' etc., *see* Reflexives



## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- nascere, past tenses of, 140, *d*, 1  
 ne (adv.), 126; 217, *b*  
 ne (pron.), 107, *c*; 124; 224, *b*  
   for *ci*, 94, *a*, 1  
 'never,' 216, *b*, 1; *f*  
 no for non, 216, *d*  
 non, 216, *a*, *b*, *f*  
   pleonastic, 169, *a*, 1  
   position, 216, *a*  
 'not,' 216  
 Nouns, *see* Gender, Plural  
   compound, 181; 225  
   position as object of dependent  
     infinitive, 167, *c*, 1  
 Number, *see* Plural  
 Numerals, *see* Cardinal, Ordinal
- o, uo**, in verbs, 110, *d*  
 Objects, *see* Conjunctive and Nouns  
 Old forms, *see* Archaic  
 'one,' 106, *b*; 207  
 'only,' 216, *b*  
 Open vowels, 3, *b*, *d*, *g*  
 Ordinal numerals, 157  
   agreement, 157, *a*  
   century numbers, 157, *c*  
   fractions, 157, *b*  
   'half,' 157, *b*, 1  
   order, 157, *d*, *e*  
   uses, 157, *b-d*  
 Orthographical peculiarities of  
   verbs, 110  
 Orthography, *see* Variant forms  
 'other,' 208, *d*  
 'ought,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- parere**, 161  
*Parole bisdruciole*, 13  
*Parole piane*, 10  
*Parole sdruciole*, 12  
*Parole tronche*, 11  
 Participle, past, 194  
   absolute construction, 195  
   agreement, 194, *b*  
   inversion, 194, *c*  
 Participle, present, 193  
   English, transl. into Italian, 102;  
     193, *c*  
   Italian, transl. into English, 193,  
     *a*, *b*
- Partitive, 77; 124  
 Passive, 97  
   English, transl. into Italian, 106, *a*  
   with *andare*, *rimanere*, *venire*, 97,  
     *a*, 1  
 Past absolute, 74; 140, *a*  
   irregular construction of, 120, *a*  
 Past descriptive, 140, *c*  
 Past future, 79; 93; 142  
 Past tenses, *see* Tenses  
 Person in address, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*  
 Personal pronouns, 65  
   *see* Conjunctive, Disjunctive  
**piacere**, 185  
 Pitch in speech, 14  
 Plural of nouns, 67; 176-184  
   in compound nouns, 181  
   defective, 182  
   feminine, 177  
   invariable, 176  
   irregular, 179  
   masculine, 178  
   meaning distinguished by, 182, *d*  
   in proper nouns, 180  
   sg. used for, with parts of body,  
     184  
 Poetic forms, *see* Archaic  
**porre**, 196  
 Possessive with *di*, 78  
 Possessive adjective, 107  
   agreement, 107, *b*  
   definite article omitted, 108  
   definite article used for, 109  
   'its,' 107, *c*  
**potere**, 168; 187, *b*  
 Prepositions, 221-227  
   with adjectives, 223  
   alphabetical lists of, 226  
   compound, 222  
   conjunctive object used with,  
     222, *a*  
   contracted with article, 75  
   idioms with, 227  
   with objects of verbs, 224, *b*  
   repeated with each noun, 76  
   simple, 221, *a*  
     with pronouns, 221, *b*  
 Present indicative, *see* Tenses  
 Principal parts of verbs, 91; 120, *b*;  
   130

# INDEX

- Probability, future of, 141, *a*, 1  
 Pronouns, *see* Conjunctive, Demonstrative, Disjunctive, Indefinite, Interrogative, Relative  
 Pronoun subject omitted, 63, *a*  
 Pronunciation, 2-5  
   close vowels, 3, *a*, *c*, *f*  
   consonant sounds, 5  
   marks, 2, *a*; 5, *e*; 9  
   meaning distinguished by, 3, *e*, *h*;  
     5, *b*, *e*, 4, *d*; 15  
   mispronunciations, 2, *b*  
   open vowels, 3, *b*, *d*, *g*  
   Tuscan peculiarities of, 5, *d*  
   vowel sounds, 2  
   words for practice, 16, 17
- qualche, 206, *c*, 1
- r*, euphonic, 39  
 Reciprocal verbs, 104, *b*  
 Reflexive pronoun, 94, *c*  
   as dative of reference, 105, *b*, 3  
   omitted from dependent inf.,  
     105, *b*, 2  
   for possessive, 105, *c*  
 Reflexive verbs, 104-106  
   with 2d conjunctive object, 127  
   with prepositions, to translate  
     English transitives, 105, *b*, 1  
   uses, 104, *b*; 105  
   special uses, 106
- Regular verbs, 90  
   construction of, 91
- Relative pronoun  
   forms, 114  
   uses, 189
- Rhyme, 55
- rimanere, 129
- s*, pronunciation of, 5, *e*, 1, 2  
*s* impure, 59, *a*, 1  
 santo, forms of, 85, *a*  
 sapere, 132  
   special meanings of, 132, *a*  
 scegliere, 211  
 sè, 136, *i*  
 Semivowels, 4  
 sentire, conjugation of, 111, *a*  
 'shall,' *see* Future, *dovere*  
 'should,' *see* Past future
- si*, *see* Reflexive  
 Singular for plural with parts of  
   body, 184  
 'so' after verbs of thinking etc.,  
   100, *e*, 1; 215, *b*, 1  
 'some,' 'some one,' 77; 124; 206  
 'some more,' 208, *d*, 2  
 Spelling, *see* Variant forms  
 stare, 166  
   idioms with, 166, *b*  
   special meanings of, 166, *a*  
 Subject, inversion of, 145
- Subjunctive  
   in dependent clauses, 169  
   in conditions, 93  
   with *credere*, 137  
   with impersonal verbs, 164, *b*  
   after superlatives, 118  
   after verbs of wishing, 113  
   in independent clauses, 171  
   future for, 169, *i*, note 1  
   sequence of tenses with, 170
- Suffixes, *see* Augmentatives, Diminutives
- Superlative, 116  
   absolute, 116, *d*  
   article omitted, 116, *b*  
   preposition used with, 116, *c*  
   subjunctive with, 118
- Syllabification, 6-8  
 Syllables, division of, at end of line, 8  
 Syncope, 36
- Tenses of the indicative, 139-142  
   compound, 68; 96; 120  
   future, 69; 141  
   past absolute, 74; 140, *a*  
   past descriptive, 140, *c*  
   past future, 79; 93; 142  
   past perfect, 140, *d*  
   present, 139  
   present perfect, 140, *b*  
   second past perfect, 140, *e*  
   sequence of, 143  
 'than,' 115, *b*, *c*, *d*  
 'there,' 217
- Time  
   of day, 152  
   idioms of, 151, *e*; 152, *e*; 160, *d*;  
     219, *c*

## AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- 'to,' 227, *d*, 1  
 Triphthongs, 4, *c*; 53, *a*  
 Truncation, 29-33  
     conditions of, 30  
     irregular, 32  
     poetic, 31, *d*  
     regular, 31, *a*, *b*, *c*  
     titles truncated, 31, *c*  
 Tuscan peculiarities of pronunciation, 5, *d*
- udire, 192  
 uno, 59, *b*; 150, *a*; 207  
 uscire, 204
- valere, 220  
 Variant forms of words, 34-40  
 venire, 138  
     special uses of, 138, *a*  
 Verbs, *see* Regular, Irregular, Tenses  
 agreement of  
     with subject, 144  
     with collectives, 183  
 inversion of subject, 145  
 sequence of tenses, 143; 170
- Versification, 50-57  
     blank verse, 56  
     diphthongs, 53  
     elision, 52  
     lines, 51  
     rhyme, 55  
     strophes, 57  
     syllables, 54  
 vi (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*  
 vi (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1  
 volere, 133  
     special meanings of, 133, *a*;  
         187, *a*  
 Vowels, 2
- Weather, expressions of, 165  
 'what,' rendering of, 190, *a*, 5, *a*;  
     191; 191, *a*  
 'whatever,' 'whoever,' 209, *b*  
 'will,' *see* Future  
 'would,' *see* Past future  
 'you,' 65, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*; 100, *c*  
 z, pronunciation of, 5, *e*, 3, 4



14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED  
**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

ICL

DEC 6 1967

*Ken Sutherland*

JAN 2 1968

JAN 4 '68 - 8 AM

LOAN DEPT  
REC'D LS  
JAN 10 '74 - 2 PM  
JAN 24 1972

SEP 26 1997

LD 21A-60m-2,'67  
(H241s10)476B

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley



U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C054928906

M209968

PC IIII

P4

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

